

HUDOKAI

Written and adapted by

Edgar Duncan
with
Lee Janes

Contribution by Alexandra Stewart

HUDOKAI - A Sci-fi J-RPG

MAIN CAST LIST:

(MAIN) NOVA - The protagonist with shady past.
LIONE BURGESS - Vice-warden and mostly angry.
ALIZA LEGION - Multiple and independent.
KIM SILVER - A robotic girl with humanity.
MAX JUDGE - Angry and out to prove himself.
PHOENIX FOX - A joker fighting for freedom.

#####

CULT OF KAI:

V.LEN - Clockwork man who runs the council.
CYRRIL WAR - Warden of the GP and manipulative.
BEN - Teenage Captain of the GP. Abrupt.
GUY - Grand manipulator with a God complex.
PENNY GREYBACK - Crazy female weapons scientist.
GREG GORY - A show-off born with a poison body.
FOLTIX - Armoured and polite. Greg's friend.
GEIST - Silent. Looks exactly like MAIN.

#####

OTHER NOTABLE CHARACTERS:

VARSH - Observant and curious of everything.
ROKE - Grumpy man born from war and blood.
TOM - Polite protector of Kim. Nav-Tech.
JALFUZZY - Female field scientist. Kicks ass.
KOEL - MAX's father and all-around douchebag.
SMAZ - White Kyote with a stiff upper lip.
PHYLLIS - Close friend and engineer of V.LEN.
SLOPPY SDOCK - Mercenary with a gruff voice. Seen war.

PRONOUNCIATIONS :

Aliza	= Uh-lye-za
Aukaneck	= Or-ka-neck
Drelis	= Drell-Liss
Eif	= Eye-Ff
Elefan	= Elly-fan
Elizabeth	= Ell-zuh-buth
Foltix	= Foal-tix (Foal like Coal)
Francesco	= Fran-chess-ko
Hudokai	= Hood-o-kai
Jalfuzzy	= J-ahl-fuzz-ee
Jubal	= Yu-bah-ll
Kernow-Theta	= Ker-no Fee-ta
Koel	= Koe-ull
Lione	= Lee-own
Lucio	= Loo-cho
Mateus	= Muh-tay-uss
Pikhaul	= Pee-Kahl
Rettam Krad	= Rett-Amm Kradd
Rizumu	= Rizz-oo-moo
Shardae-Rae	= Shard-day-Ray
Shi/Shies	= Shee/Shees
Sparkarlimaters	= Spar-karl-li-mate-ers
Stynx	= Stinks
Ugonih	= Oo-gon-nee
Zed Neutrino	= Zedd-Noo-Tree-No
Zephyr	= Zeff-err

GAME PROGRESSION:

As with every world, when an OPTIONAL CHOICE occurs, UNDERLINED options reveal a + in alignment between GOOD and EVIL. An *ITALICISED option gives a - in alignment*.

HUDOKAI is split into separate worlds with individual stories. The game opens up with the story 'THE NEXUS' part 1, which is one "world" in the game. The game is separated into three episodes, which are shown as "Acts".

ACT 1:

#1 Nexus	Page 4
#2 Spectrox Space Station	Page 49
#3 Biorhythm (Planet Earth 2400)	Page 56
#4 Final Gear (Planet Tri-Alpha)	Page 191
#5 Reality Council	Page 250

ACT 2:

#6 Nexus (Part 2)	Page 258
#7 Chimera (Planet Duskwight)	Page 277
#8 Genesis (Planet Canary)	Page 329
#9 Transcendence Alliance (Planet Yin, Arra, The TA)	Page 464
#10 Galactic War	Page 544

ACT 3:

#11 Prison Capsule	Page 574
#12 Out of Depth (Planet Aquamarine)	Page 579
#13 Sea of Seals (Planet Yarth)	Page 603
#14 Nexus (Part 3)	Page 728

ACT 1

NEXUS VOID (NEXUS PART 1)

BLACK.

The crackling of fire.

FADE TO:

A crash site. Dead bodies scatter a rocky landscape. Pieces of futuristic metal embed the area. A silver haired young adult moans, gets up slowly, then falls back down. Player assumes control of him, who shall be referred to as MAIN.

Player actions are in capitals.

MAIN EXPLORES the area as in-game credits fade in and out on screen. An immense damaged space vessel lies in the ground to the right. Progression won't continue until MAIN INTERACTS with a restless female, alive.

Long red hair, black uniform with shiny cyan, vertical strips down her arms and legs. Piercing eyes. LIONE BURGESS.

LIONE
(Groggy)
Prisoner 30895... This is *your*
fault.

MAIN
...

LIONE
Not much of a talker... fine. Your
actions speak louder than words,
anyway...

MAIN
...

LIONE struggles to her feet.

LIONE
For the attempted murder of law
enforcement, as well as damage of a
prison ship-

CYRRIL
I, Warden Cyrril War, place you,
Lione Burgess, under arrest.

CYRRIL WAR walks into view, cybernetic pistol in hand. MAIN and LIONE turn to the blue suited warden. With a military coat and disposition, CYRRIL produces an electrolysed ring.

MAIN

...

LIONE

Electrocuffs? On... me? With respect, warden, sir, the only one capable of causing this catastrophe is a prisoner - the one standing beside me.

CYRRIL

"Beside you". Of course. An accomplice.

LIONE

What?!

CYRRIL

Know your place, vice-warden! As we speak, reinforcements are on the way.

MAIN, the player, is given three choices of action. Each choice triggers differing conversation and actions. "Good" (Underline) options give a +1 to the alignment bar, viewable in the main menu. "Bad" (Italicised) options give a -1 to the alignment bar. "Neutral" (Normal) is +0.

MAIN

(Grab vice-warden and run)

LIONE

Let go of me, you filthy criminal!

CYRRIL

Criminals always run. I'm sure you're aware that none escape the Arachnivolt.

LIONE

I... am no... criminal!

OR

MAIN

(Grab the vice-warden's blade)

LIONE

How dare you... grab... my weapon!

CYRRIL

And against a warden of the law, too. So you really are an accomplice, standing up for the vice-warden-turned-traitor.

LIONE
He is none of my concern!

CYRRIL
Save your testimony for the
Arachnivolt. None escape its jaws
of justice.

LIONE
Tsk...

CYRRIL
Run. Run! I dare you, run!

OR

MAIN
(Attack the warden)

CYRRIL
*You think striking me will stop
your sentences?*

LIONE
No! He does not represent me!

CYRRIL
*It matters not! Your fates lie with
the Arachnivolt, now.*

MAIN and LIONE RUN from a large robotic spider that gives chase. Should it catch them, the player is launched into a battle in which they must damage the spider and then escape. It will continue chasing them after the battle. Several reinforcement officers get in the way, which form battles.

In-game dialogue:

LIONE
I don't need you fighting my
battles... especially not with that
whacked out ability you have.

MAIN
...

LIONE
Tsk... my life in the hands of a
mute, typical. Here's a hint: Only
rubber can absorb the electrical
energy of our Arachnivolt tank bot.
If its energy is taken, it will
stop, otherwise it will perpetually
repair itself.

Eventually, MAIN encounters a sap tree. Options.

MAIN
(Combust the sap)

LIONE
Smells like burning rubber...

MAIN COLLECTS "Rubber Insulator" item.

OR

MAIN
(Collect the sap)

LIONE
You want to keep that? Fool! Throw
it away on the Arachnivolt. There's
nowhere else to run... we have to
fight it to stay alive...

MAIN COLLECTS "Sticky Sap" item.

MAIN and LIONE must FIGHT the Arachnivolt with new item. This is the first boss fight.

BOSS FIGHT 1: ARACHNIVOLT.

After the fight:

LIONE (CONT'D)
You can thank me for my quick
thinking, later... But don't get me
wrong, criminal, I am grateful for
your help... but you've got me into
some deep dung.

Options:

MAIN
Why are you such a bitch?

LIONE
Excuse me?

MAIN
Well, I mean you're judging me for
something you don't even know is
true and ignoring the things you do
know, like saving your life.

LIONE
So! Your mouth does blab! And what
garbage it spouts, too.

MAIN
You comparing me to a bin? 'Cause I
can recycle your sad state of a
body into something less of a
hindrance right now.

LIONE

The nerve of it! Criminals will always be criminals... and I don't feel any safer with you anymore, 30895.

OR

MAIN

We're in the eye of the storm.

LIONE

Excuse me?

MAIN

That warden will realise we've escaped, eventually... not to mention we don't know where we are.

LIONE

Aha! So you do talk! And quite the thinker, too... *cough*

MAIN

We need to find you a doctor.

LIONE

Since when did a criminal care about a vice-warden? Don't give me that fake kindness.

MAIN

Criminals can reform. Anyone can change.

LIONE

...

MAIN

I don't even remember what I did that imprisoned me... I wish I knew.

LIONE

Shut up. Just... shut up, 30895.

Options after any of the previous two:

MAIN

You have to stop calling me by a prison number.

LIONE

(Preoccupied)

If it wasn't us, then who crashed the ship? I hope the Warden's okay.

MAIN
The name's...

The player inserts the main character's name.

MAIN (CONT'D)
Surname: Nova.

LIONE
I know who you are. Your report
said more than enough to make me
want to part ways with you.

Options:

MAIN
We must stick together!

LIONE
I want to go on my own.

MAIN
The only thing I remember is how to
use my fists - that scares me. You
know more about me than I do. You
know who I am.

LIONE
I know who you was. Tough. You
don't want to know, trust me.

MAIN
Nor will I let you wander off in
your condition. We're staying
together.

LIONE
...Your heart is kinder than your
report makes you out to have been.
Okay... fine. Support me until we
find a doctor. Then, maybe you can
tell me what's up with your weird
ability.

MAIN
The one that freezes enemies? I
honestly don't know.

LIONE
You don't?

MAIN
It's like I can feel the energy
near my body and then absorb it
into me before releasing it at the
enemy, again.
(MORE)

MAIN (CONT'D)

I think it's something to do with
this sphere I have...

LIONE

Hack Hudokai?! That's... the
prison ship's... stasis Hudokai...
cough

MAIN

We'll talk more when we find you
some aid.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

*Fine. Wander off. It's your
funeral.*

LIONE

Like you care.

LIONE leaves the party.

OR

MAIN

I need to stick with you.

LIONE

Stick to the prison... it's where
you ultimately belong for the crime
you committed.

MAIN

You know more about me than I do.

LIONE

You seem to remember how to cause
violence just fine.

MAIN

And that scares me.

LIONE

I... need to find a doctor...
before the warden returns.

MAIN

Doesn't it worry you that he
targeted you for a crime I
apparently committed?

LIONE

...Yes. I... need time to think.
I... *cough* I need to know why the
Hudokai stasis cells disengaged...
and why you are even here.

MAIN

I wonder if there's any connection
between that and the energy sphere
I've been using in combat?

LIONE

That... was the... *cough* Hudokai?
hack No... gotta go.

LIONE leaves the party.

After the options:

MAIN

Looks like there's a town ahead...

MAIN shakily TRAVELS down an alley towards the town. As he
does so, a crimson armoured solider turns to him in the
alley. FOLTIX.

FOLTIX

Yo, we've found the Hudokai, so
there's no need to worry. See ya
back at the station.

He walks off, leaving the player confused. MAIN turns the
corner only to see another MAIN. Pause. He HIDES behind the
same corner. Confusion. The player can clearly see the other
MAIN, called GEIST. MAIN peers out and watches as GEIST
begins to walk off. Pause. Brief thought.

MAIN

I have to find out what's going on.

The player can choose whether MAIN follows GEIST down the
street, or if they want to EXPLORE. GEIST enters a cafe,
eventually. MAIN turns and looks through the window. GEIST
isn't in there. Tense. Suddenly, regardless of what the
player chooses, they are punched in the face and floored by a
stranger. The stranger, Max, quickly pats MAIN's body and
then runs.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Worse things have happened today.

(To Max)

Oi!

MAIN CHASES Max. If LIONE is in the party:

LIONE

If you chase him, you'll... have to
carry me. I can't run...

The player will run at half speed, if so.

MAIN eventually catches up and a quick time event plays to
overpower Max.

Options:

MAIN
What's going on? Why the hell did
you punch me?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
I'm gonna punch you.

MAIN punches Max.

MAIN (CONT'D)
TELL ME!

After the options:

MAX
I punch whoever I feel like.

MAIN
I knockout whoever I feel like.

[LIONE]
[Both of you deserve no mercy!]

MAX
I especially punch mouthy bastards
like you, looking lost in this
world of survival.

[LIONE]
I'll have you arrested if you dare
try it.

[MAX]
There's no point if we're already
prisoners of the Nexus...

MAIN
So what if I *am* lost?

MAX
Then you're new in town.

They relax a bit more.

MAIN
Yeah. Tell me the way out and we'll
call it quits.

MAX
I'll call it quits when I finally
get a phone to do so.

MAIN

You... That's why you floored me
and searched my pockets. Why do you
want a phone so bad?

MAX

You're new. You might have had a
phone or a memory of outside of
town... I've been here so long that
the only thing I remember is
setting fire to my house... I never
forget it. I try to remember more
by sitting on what remains of the
roof, every midnight.

Max looks pained.

MAX (CONT'D)

Fluffing crap, bollocks, scock!

Options:

MAIN

*You won't have a scock if you don't
tell me what I want to know.*

MAX

Did you ever call your dad?

MAIN

What?

MAX

*Did you ever call him to ask how he
was?*

MAIN

*I... honestly don't remember. I...
I don't remember anything before
coming here.*

MAX

*They say those who remember, those
who are the strongest, are the
first to go.*

Max leaves.

OR

MAIN

Look, forget I said anything. I
just wanna know how to leave.

MAX

Why?

MAIN

Didn't you hear me? I'm lost. I need to get home.

MAX

But home's here. Those who don't understand that are arseholes. Arseholes who turn their back on their home... their family... their world.

MAIN

Forget it. I'll survive on my own, thanks.

MAIN walks away, shaking his head. Max leaves. MAIN spots someone walking by and heads towards him.

MAIN (CONT'D)

'Scuse me. Can you tell me the way out of this town?

The person looks horrified.

PERSON

You'll be the next one taken!

He/She runs off.

After the options:

MAIN

What the hell's wrong with this town?!

[LIONE]

Please... help me to a doctor who can treat me.

MAIN EXPLORES the town. If LIONE is in the party, the story won't progress until the player locates the doctor and leaves her in his house.

DR. MCTAVISH

Get out my face, kid, unless you have some money for the injuries. I'm a private doctor, see?

YES/NO option. If YES, all remaining money is taken from the player and their injuries healed. If LIONE is in the party:

[DR. MCTAVISH]

[Hmph. Your girl is heavily damaged.]

[LIONE]

[I'm not his girl... and I'm not goods that can be traded, either!]

[DR. MCTAVISH]
[You'll have to be kept here at mine until you've recovered, missy. The guy will have to collect you later.]

[LIONE]
[You'd best come back, 30895...
hack I need to question you some more... *hack*]

After these scenes:

MAIN
I wonder if there's any transport to get me out of here? I'll try up north of the town.

MAIN eventually finds the train station.

MAIN (CONT'D)
I wonder what's beyond this town...

The player can BOARD the train, but it will take them back to the same train station. All town exits take them back to the town.

MAIN (CONT'D)
That's strange. So I can't leave the town? It's like that messy haired mugger said. I have to find him, otherwise we're stuck here.

A man walks out of the shadows.

MATT
I've been watching you.

MAIN
So I've noticed.

MATT
I'm Matt. I watch all newcomers to the Nexus.

MAIN
What's the Nexus?

MATT
You feel weak from all that's happened, today. It's best you find somewhere to rest, first. Ask me again, tomorrow. Don't look for me. I'll find you.

MATT disappears, quite literally.

MAIN
I hate people telling me what to
do.

Story will not progress until player has LOCATED a hostel to
sleep at. MAIN wakes up in the night to wails and scuffled
sounds.

FOLTIX
He's here, somewhere...

PERSON
Aaaaaaargh!

FOLTIX
No, the one we want has silver
hair. What's in this room?

MAIN
I have to hide!

MAIN is given 10 seconds to choose a hiding place. The
options are:

Wardrobe, Floorboards, Under the bed, Haystack or Behind
Curtains.

MAIN (CONT'D)
(Behind Curtains,
Floorboards)

FOLTIX and GEIST enter the room, killing several people as
they wake up.

FOLTIX
This is the last room. Search!

MAIN must repeatedly press quick time event buttons in order
to maintain their breath control whilst hidden. If not, they
will get noticed. Dialogue occurs at intervals:

GEIST
...

FOLTIX
I don't care. It's my head on the
line if the boss finds out. How was
I supposed to know it wasn't you?

More breath control.

FOLTIX (CONT'D)
I mentioned Hudokai, that's what I
did, Geist! He mustn't know. He
needs eliminating.

More breath control.

FOLTIX (CONT'D)
He isn't here. Fluff! He must've
escaped. All right, Geist, think.
Where would you go if you were him?

FOLTIX and GEIST leave.

OR

MAIN
 (Wardrobe, Under Bed)

FOLTIX
 This is the last room. Search the
 beds!

Quick Time Breath control.

GEIST

...

FOLTIX
 All right. How about we flush him
 out? Destroy the beds and wardrobe.
 Make sure they're no hiding places!

Player must quickly MOVE to either the Curtains or
 Floorboards to keep hiding, otherwise they'll die.

FOLTIX (CONT'D)
 I dread to think if that boy
 already has some Hudokai, thanks to
 me. Geist, he must be eliminated!

More breath control.

FOLTIX (CONT'D)
 He isn't here. The boss is gonna go
 mad! Keep searching the town!

FOLTIX and GEIST leave.

OR

MAIN
 (Haystack, Find no Hiding
 Place)

FOLTIX
 The haystack! Set fire to it. Kill
 all witnesses.

GEIST

...

FOLTIX

*There he is! No silver haired clone
will get away with the Hudokai
info! Exterminate him.*

GAME OVER.

MAIN

No, I can't wait for Matt. I'm not safe. I need to find that messy haired mugger punk right now for answers. He said he liked to stay up at night on a rooftop...

PERSON

Will he heal us of our wounds?
Let's hurry!

MAIN

Um... no. I was talking to myself.

PERSON

And you do that often when people are dying around you?

MAIN

...

Night. MAIN EXPLORES Nexus for MAX. He finds him on a rooftop, alone. He joins him on top of the burnt house.

MAX

I burnt this place. I burnt it down.

MAIN

You can't burn the past... only forget it.

MAX

How can I forget how he looked at me as he left? My dad, I mean. He just left me and mum alone. I hated him. I hated the house he bought us.

MAIN

If it helps, I don't remember my dad. Not yet, anyway. I think I have amnesia.

MAX

So you've come to me for answers? I should ask you some questions, myself, with that prison garb and stuff. Fine, what do you want to know?

Options. All have to be chosen to continue, however:

MAIN
What's Hudokai?

MAX
Budokai?

MAIN
Hudokai.

MAX
I honestly don't know.

AND

MAIN
Why can't I escape this town?

MAX
You're prisoner to the Nexus. It's what everyone calls this town. I don't know why, but there's no fluffing way of leaving. Everyone's trapped in this limbo.

MAIN
And how did you end up here?

MAX
I bombed my house. I didn't just set it alight. But when I set off the charge, a large black hole appeared in the centre of the house. About the size of a small building. It fluffing pulled me and the house through into this place. I've never been able to escape.

AND

MAIN
Why'd you attack me earlier?

MAX
You have no phone, no food, no anything. I have to mug to survive. I thought I made that clear. All I have is my burnt house.

AND

MAIN
I'm being hunted by an armoured killer!

MAX
Foltix?

MAIN
A friend of yours?

MAX
You'd best get out of here, idiot!
Everyone knows Foltix. He's part of
the Town Watch.

MAIN
Sounds friendly for a maliciously
murderous group!

MAX
He's right-hand to the Town Watch
leader, Greg. No one knows what he
looks like. He always keeps hidden
and yet... he always knows what's
going on.

MAIN
And you all let him lead you?

MAX
Well, he watches over us. Sometimes
horrible monsters get sucked into
this town. The Town Watch
exterminates them. They are the
law, here. No one knows Greg's true
motives, though. He has nothing to
gain from this all.

When all options are exhausted, FOLTIX appears out of nowhere and charges at the building at warp speed. He jumps and tackles MAIN. The world spirals away. Darkness. Flashes of light reveal FOULTIX violently attacking MAIN. The darkness fades away.

MAIN, beaten and bruised. He can barely stand. FOLTIX is in front of him.

FOLTIX
Welcome to my world of pain - the
Dark Dimension.

MAIN
Another dimension?!

FOLTIX attacks MAIN once more, forcing him back.

FOLTIX
Hudokai. You know too much. I am
deeply sorry for the slip of my
tongue, though. Really, I am. If I
hadn't confused you with my good
pal, Geist, I wouldn't have to do
this.

MAIN

I don't even know what Hudokai is!

FOLTIX

Liar. Prepare to duel to the death.

Unbeatable fight against FOLTIX. In-battle dialogue:

MAIN

How d'you like that?

FOLTIX

Hudokai! You already have some
Hudokai! Fiend! Let me show you
what Hudokai can really do... and
why we at the Watch are the true
owners!

The attack wipes MAIN out. The fight ends.

FOLTIX attacks MAIN again. Suddenly, FOLTIX is attacked from
behind by Max.

FOLTIX (CONT'D)

Looks like I kidnapped another
cockroach. My bad.

FOLTIX turns to face Max.

MAX

Take me back! I've done nothing to
the Town Watch!

FOLTIX

Hmm. I... won't touch you.

MAX

Huh?

FOLTIX

This complicates things. Of all the
people to bump into... please
forgive me, Max.

MAX

You can't be...

MAIN

You heard him! Take... *hack* us
back!

FOLTIX

Still ticking? It can't be helped.
I must leave. Sorry about this Dark
Dimension business. It's the
furthest I could take you. I must
check on the Hudokai store!

FOLTIX disappears from existence, seemingly. Max looks around, then goes to MAIN.

MAX
Yo, you all right?

Options:

MAIN
(I'm fine)

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
(I've seen better days)

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
*(I'm really fluffing hurt,
you bitch)*

MATT appears out of nowhere.

MATT
He'll be fine, now that I'm here.

MAX
Fluffing hell, who the fluff are you?

MATT
There's no need for such language.

MAIN
Matt...

MATT
We're at the edge of the void.
Foltix lied. We're not in any
dimension.

MAIN
...You came early.

MATT
Nope. It's gone midnight. I kept my
word and here I am. Let's go.

MATT spins around and the world fades back to Max's house.

MAX
How did you take us back?

MATT

It's time. Take Mr. Nova inside
your burnt tent of a place and rest
up. He's bruised, but will heal
with some curative Hudokai.

MAX

Curative Hudokai? What the fluff?

MAIN

Do it...

Max takes MAIN inside, leaving MATT outside alone.

MATT

It's a new day.

They all sleep and recover. Scene fades to Max standing
outside of the house and MATT walking back and forth. MAIN
walks out of the house, slowly.

MAIN

I feel incredible.

MATT

That's the curative Hudokai.

MAX

What the fluff is Hudokai, anyway?

MATT

Today I won't be answering your
questions, but handing you over to
a more experienced fighter of the
Nexus.

MAIN

I can fight just fine, it seems.

MATT

You're as flimsy as a hotdog.

MAX

Do you like hotdogs or something?

MATT

How did you guess?

MAX

Intuition.

MATT

We call him Roke Zephyr. He's a
veteran fighter from a country
cooked by war in a far off
dimension. Say that all in one
breath.

MAIN

Who are you, really?

MATT

I like to see myself as a guardian of the Nexus. I was the very first to be transported here. My task, for now, is to bring you to Roke.

MAIN

I'm not following you.

MATT

You don't have to, dude. But you do have to see Roke, today. If you'd prefer to make your own way there, then I'll see you there.

MAIN

I want answers! I don't want to fight, anymore.

MATT

You fought the highest power and killed millions.

MAIN

!

MATT

I met Lione. She told me your prisoner report. She fears you, dude, but doesn't want to admit it. You're a wanted criminal. You have to fight if you want to survive.

MAIN

I'll... find my own way.

MAIN walks off. Player CONTROLS MAIN across the Nexus. Everywhere is blocked off beyond the main path. MAIN eventually finds a middle aged man with one arm and a red scarf - ROKE. MATT is with him, as is Max and LIONE.

ROKE

Better late than never.

MAIN

I was blatantly guided here.

MATT

I knew you'd see sense!

LIONE

Ah. Nova. Nice of you to show your face after leaving me.

MAIN

Huh. I thought *you* left *me*.

LIONE

I was injured!

MAX

So, why the fluff am I here?

ROKE

Good point. Matt, why are these squirts in my sight?

MATT

They are targets of the Cult of Kai. They have Hudokai.

ROKE

I have one piece of advice for you weaklings: Get out, now.

LIONE

Like I'm going to listen to that when you judged us on appearance.

MAIN

So says the vice-warden.

ROKE

You don't have what it takes, simple as. Battle isn't beautiful, nor is it glorious. It isn't child's play and the playground is a bloodbath. It's death.

MAIN

So maybe I died and was reborn?

ROKE

An epiphany? You blow chunks. Hudokai ain't a laughing matter.

MAX

So what exactly is Hudokai?

LIONE

An energy source in the form of condensed matter. They're rare, but we of the prison ship had a stasis Hudokai implanted to keep prisoners locked in place, frozen in time.

ROKE

Bitch don't know nothing. Hudokai is hell. Condensed Dark Matter from the void - a place between dimensions.

MATT

You might know that place as the Nexus.

MAIN

So we're locked between all dimensions, in the void.

ROKE

And in here lies a bounty of different Hudokai, which those idiots, like Foltix, of the cult want.

MAX

The cult? You mean the Town Watch.

ROKE

I mean what I said, dumbass! They only call themselves the "Town Watch" as a guise. Bastards. They really want the Hudokai, but like us, Greg's groupies are trapped in here.

LIONE

So you're going to teach us how to use the Hudokai against this "Cult of Kai"?

ROKE

No, 'cause you suckas don't got it. And even if I did, it won't solve anything. No one can escape the Nexus void without a ship. The sky's the only escape, but since no one has a ship, it ain't a worry.

MAIN

I came here by ship.

ROKE

You what?

LIONE

Our prison ship crashed here.

ROKE

...

MATT

Best get cracking, Roke. If the cult escape the void and out into the infinite dimensions with the Hudokai, they will start to abuse it.

MAIN

This "cult". I take it there are others on the outside?

MATT

No one knows what's beyond the void. The strong are taken out by the Town Watch and many have lived here too long to remember their past before entering the Nexus.

ROKE

All right, fine. Since no one don't know how to use Hudokai in battle but me, and since I don't wanna see the universes ravaged like my home... I'll teach you freaks how to use the latent power of Hudokai.

MATT

Oh, Rokey, I knew you'd see sense~

ROKE

It's Roke. Roke Zephyr. Don't none o' you forget that! Matt, you owe me.

MATT leaves the area.

ROKE (CONT'D)

Twerp. All right, kids, follow me to my mansion.

ROKE walks off south. Players are given control, once more. Once they reach the mansion, ROKE will charge at the player. Quick Time Event of buttons to shake him off.

ROKE (CONT'D)

Defend yourself if you want to live!

Choices:

MAIN

I don't even have a weapon!

ROKE

Who says you need a weapon to fight?

MAIN

But you have one.

ROKE

Fighting ain't ever fair, kid. It's all about your defence... if you want to live.

OR

MAIN

If we attack as a team, we might survive!

LIONE

I don't much like the idea of working with a criminal again.

ROKE

But maybe [INSERT NAME] has a point?

MAIN

There'll be more targets for him to aim at. You can be my meat shield, Lione.

LIONE

How dare you! I'll show you who will be the dead weight if we team up. Hmph!

MAX

We should defend, at any rate. Otherwise we might not make it - he's serious.

MAIN

All right, weapon or not, here we come!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

I thought this was "training"!

LIONE

Quit whining. There is no training in the real world.

ROKE

Saggy face is right.

LIONE

What did you call me?

ROKE

And she's the only one with a bit of combat training... but nothing will prepare you for me. Best learn how to defend before I squash you!

After options, there will be a BATTLE against ROKE. In battle dialogue:

MAIN

His attacks do some serious damage.
I'd best use the defend option to
take less damage and survive his
onslaught.

ROKE

Defending also heals your health,
or 'HP', by a small percentage.
Your Hudokai is also a powerful
weapon, so powerful that it will
drain its own energy after every
use. I call this 'MP'. It can be
restored when given an ionic charge
or after resting for the night.

MAIN

I think you'd better concentrate on
the battle.

ROKE

Infernal kid ain't gonna tell me
how to fight!

The fight ends regardless of who wins and the scene
continues. Lots of experience. FOLTIX appears.

FOLTIX

Ahh, Roke. I should've known it was
you. I followed the flashes of
Hudokai in the sky.

ROKE

Oh, goody. It's the Town Watch.

LIONE

I thought the strong were removed
from the Nexus?

FOLTIX

If it were up to me, I'd leave them
around. They'd be helpful, but Greg
doesn't want that and I respect his
decision. Besides, Roke is actually
too strong for me to handle. As far
as Greg's concerned, Roke doesn't
exist.

MAIN

Sounds like you do all of his
handywork.

FOLTIX

Greg's a good friend. My best
friend, in fact. He does other
things for our group.

MAX

You don't seem like such a bad guy...

FOLTIX

I like to think I'm not, but... well, I am. I can't deny the things I've done, or am going to do. I can't allow you guys to know what you know.

ROKE

He won't let ya go with your trained strength, either. Not now.

FOLTIX

Oh? So it was this lot using the Hudokai to light up the sky. I see. Then I *definitely* have to take you guys down. Sorry about that.

MAX

I... won't let you!

FOLTIX

Look, I'll leave you be if you just stand aside, Max.

LIONE

What's so special about him?

MAX

He's my dad! I know it!

ROKE

Family means nothing on the battlefield. Trust me.

MAX

And I've been saving these two daggers just for your return, dad... how dare you turn your back on us all! I didn't think you could be in here with me... but I won't forgive you!

FOLTIX

Is that what you think?

ROKE

Hey, kid. Best back him up. After all, I reckon you'll be pleasantly surprised after what I taught you... here, choose a weapon. Quickly!

Options:

MAIN
(Pistol)

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
(Blade)

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
(Explosive)

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
(Boomerang)

After options:

ROKE
Open up the main menu with 'X' or
'ESC' and go to 'Equip' to equip
it. You'd best look after that.
Been with me since the
battlefield...

PLAYER is given control. Equip weapon. MAIN must SPEAK with
FOLTIX in order to engage with a fight with him and continue.
After the fight:

FOLTIX
Such... strength! But how?

MAIN
We were much stronger in that
fight. In such a short amount of
time, too...

FOLTIX
I... must tell Greg!

MAX
Don't you dare, dad. This is
between you and me.

FOLTIX
Time out, time out! I'm not your
father, but I do know how you feel.

MAX
You're... not my dad? No. It's me -
Max Judge! I'm your son. R-right?

FOLTIX removes his helmet. He has the same head as Max.

MAIN
Another Max?

FOLTIX

I'm you from a different dimension.
That's why I didn't want to fight
you.

MAX

W-what? Another me? I almost...
killed myself!

FOLTIX

Stop being so melodramatic. Damn.
That assault really stung.

ROKE

I think it's about time you were
done away with, don't you, Foltix?

FOLTIX

Ugh... You still on... about what I
did to your friend?

ROKE

You didn't have to fight that
battle, but you did. I ain't never
gonna forgive you.

MAIN

People change.

ROKE

Tell that to my dead partner.

FOLTIX

I'm certainly not... the man I
was...

Options:

MAIN

(Let Foltix go)

I'm not going to chase you.

ROKE

What?!

FOLTIX

...

LIONE

From what I understand, Foltix's
hands are stained in the blood of
Roke's entire homeland. Never let a
criminal escape.

MAIN

I don't think Foltix is as bad as
you're all making him out to be. I
think he's a changed man.

FOLTIX

I only want... to do what is right.
It isn't... always the easiest
decision, though...

LIONE

Screw you! A criminal is a
criminal! I'll arrest you and prove
to the Warden I can be trusted!

FOLTIX

...The Warden?

LIONE

As vice-warden, it is my duty!

FOLTIX

...Poor girl. It isn't always fun
following orders...

MAIN

Let him go. All we need to do is
concentrate on repairing that
prison ship to get out of here.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

(Kill Foltix)

But you still follow orders to
kill, otherwise you wouldn't have
attacked us. Maybe you haven't
changed that much, after all.

FOLTIX

I beg you... Just let me go... I
will leave you be like I leave
Roke!

ROKE

Too much blood has been spilt. Now
that there's this little team and a
ship to shape up and get outta here
on, I think it's time to do you in.

FOLTIX

No, wait!

MAIN

Goodbye, Foltix. Let me kill you in
the name of justice.

MAIN kills FOLTIX with his weapon. Silence.

LIONE

Justice can be brutal.

ROKE

*He killed my partner in battle. He
devastated thousands of homelands.
He deserved it.*

After options:

MAX

It felt like a part of me died
inside after that... I wonder what
Greg will do next?

ROKE

Now don't get me wrong, 'cause I
trained you to take on the Cult of
Kai members, but Greg's not your
concern at the minute.

Options:

MAIN

You can't tell me what to do.

ROKE

*I damn well can. Your concern is
fixing up that prison ship and
getting out of here. You can leave
Greg behind!*

OR

MAIN

You're right.

LIONE

Agreeing with someone? You?

MAIN

It's the prison ship. If we can fix
that up, we can get out of here and
leave Greg trapped here, still. He
won't ever be a problem.

After options:

LIONE

I don't know if your tiny brain
even noticed, but the prison ship
was left in no condition to fly.

MAIN

We'll make it work.

ROKE

And I'm guessing you know how it
works, little lady?

(MORE)

ROKE (CONT'D)

Tell me and I'll make sure you get off this forsaken rock 'cause I'm coming with you.

MAX

But you have a mansion here and none of you know what's outside. Why do you want to leave?

LIONE

I know what's out there. There may be very little Hudokai, but it's a lot more interesting than this place.

ROKE

People come to the Nexus after a piece of rare Hudokai is ripped open from an explosion, or mass amount of energy. Loads of us have slipped here and haven't been able to get out. Now you take it from me, when a ship finally appears to get someone out, they'll want to get out!

LIONE

I haven't got a choice. I have to co-operate with a criminal, a brute and someone who has daddy issues.

MAX

Actually, I don't want to leave.

ROKE

You're insane, kid.

MAX

This place has become my home. I don't know why anyone would want to leave their home.

ROKE

Whatever. My partner thought like you did and he was a Death Bringer - one o' those people who are trained to watch over others and sentence them to their deaths when their time has come. He was a Death Bringer and he still died, protecting our home.

MAX

Then maybe I'll wander out there at some point and find my home planet? I'll protect my home from the cult. Right now, my home is here.

ROKE

Bloody kid... You remind me way too much of him... Now, don't you go thinking I've gone all soft, but... I'd like you to have this.

MAX

What's this? A scythe? You Death or something?

ROKE

That's what the Death Bringers wield. Only those trained in their death arts can slice the soul out of a living being, but... I reckon you can have it. It's a weapon. It will help you protect your home.

MAX

This was your partner's, wasn't it? You gay?

ROKE

Shut up and use it, before I change my mind! Lione, where the hell to next?

LIONE

The first thing we're going to do is rendezvous with the Reality Council, once we're out of here.

MAIN

The what?

LIONE

They are an alliance of world leaders. They council the innermost solar system of the galaxy, in three dimensions. Their word is law. We should tell them about the cult.

MAIN

Wait, what about your precious Warden? He's your superior.

LIONE

He'll still be in the Nexus. I want to prove myself to him before I next see him. If we capture a member of the cult as proof that they exist, as well as clear my name... that should do it.

MAIN

Yeah, he blamed you for the take-down of the prison ship.

ROKE

Sounds like a load of manure to me.
I just wanna get this ship running.

LIONE

The engines are critically damaged,
numbskull. We don't even know what
parts we'll need for it to get
running again, let alone the metal
plating for the exterior.

ROKE

Then I'll go and examine the piece
o' junk whilst you do your thing,
twerp. It ain't rocket science.

LIONE

Actually, it kind of is.

ROKE

Whatever. My old man used to be a
mechanic and I used to watch him
when he worked. I know what I'm
looking for. Here, take this old
radio. I used it in the war. Good
for keeping contact across wide
distances. I'll let you know what
we're looking for whilst you do
your waste of time thing.

LIONE

It's not a waste of time if it
helps the believability of our
claim.

MAIN

If I help you get this Greg guy,
will you tell me more about, you
know, me and my life before the
crash? I'm sick of being in the
dark.

LIONE

On your head, be it.

MAIN

Let's ask around and see where this
Greg is situated, then.

ROKE

Yeah, and I'll give you this talkie
radio so we can keep each other
updated on stuff.

Just before PLAYER resumes control, GEIST is seen listening
in to the conversation. He backs away and runs off.

MAIN asks several people of the Nexus where Greg is.

PERSON

1: Who? Didn't he own a bakery?
 2: I don't know where he's living,
 but he knows everything we do...
 3: He can see all, so maybe's he's
 somewhere really high?
 4: The head of the Town Watch? He's
 a scary guy! They say he'll condemn
 anyone who believes in a God!
 5: Greg lives in the Town Watch HQ -
 a tower to the West of the Nexus.

Several people and house interiors have metal plating which has to be found or traded for something they want.

If the characters killed Foltix, they will have obtained a key to the Town Watch HQ from him. If not, GEIST will appear as they enter the HQ area. GEIST will be unlocking the HQ door and proceeding through it with someone tied up and cloaked. When the PLAYER uses the ACTION BUTTON on the door:

MAIN

That fool left the tower key in the door!

LIONE

Seems suspicious, to me...

The PLAYER is then transferred to the bottom floor of the tower. They must work their way up to the top floor of multiple routes and gimmicks. Eventually they reach the top - crawling in the ceiling above.

MATT is in the centre of the room below, clamped into a device. A jolt of electricity illuminates the room and electrocutes Matt. Greg can be heard, but not seen. He is firing the energy out of view.

GREG (O.S.)

Now, I'll ask you one last time,
 Matthew, what happened to poor
 Foltix?

MAX

(In a hushed tone)
 It's Matt!

LIONE

Thank you, captain obvious.

MATT

...

GREG

You know, being the oldest being on
 this sad state of a rock has kept
 you well for perhaps too long.
 (MORE)

GREG (CONT'D)

I respected you, Matthew. Everyone did.

MATT

Nothing's changed!

GREG

Until today. You put a stupid little "Matt plan" into action. You knew I'd notice you assembling that silly squad of kids. Why bother?

MATT

I thought you had all the answers, dawg.

Another electrical charge ravages MATT.

GREG

You knew you couldn't escape Foltix or Geist, otherwise you wouldn't have been dragged here by Mr. Silver Hair himself! So answer me!

MATT

I... Wanted you to see them grow... in strength. They're a threat...

GREG

They're a threat to no one.

MATT

That's not what Foltix experienced...

More electrical torture.

GREG

I wanted to hear it from your own mouth and there we have it! If these reckless kids can damage Hudokai infused armour with just Roke's limited training, I wonder how they'll fair against *me* in 3... 2... 1...

An explosion erupts the rafters where the player characters are. MAIN and LIONE fall to the floor, in front of MATT's device. They land awkwardly. MAIN tries to get up, but is too damaged. Green gas starts to hiss in through the sides of the room.

MATT

Oh man, now look at what you've done... too much curry, I say.
cough

Out of the shadows and into the gas walks a silhouette with one gleaming eye. The gas clears around him as he walks towards the two players. Dark hair, seeming to grey, plaited behind him. A black vest trimmed with gold and trousers of a dark grey. GREG.

GREG

So you're the kids who got lucky
and found out about Hudokai. I've
been keenly expecting you.

MAIN

I figured, from the explosives!
cough

GREG

Foltix was my best friend and you
beat the living crap out of him.
Now, I think it's time I returned
the favour with some interest!

MATT

Aw man, I hate additional charges.

GREG electrocutes them all on the spot using nothing but his hands.

MAIN

The gas isn't affecting... Him! He
must be immune... through Hudokai?

GREG

Wouldn't you like to know?

GREG walks to the top of the room before stopping.

GREG (CONT'D)

Goodnight, tiddly kiddies. I'm off
to fix me a prison ship.

He leaves.

LIONE

How the hell did he know?

MATT

Don't look at me! *hack hack*

MAIN

My body... is losing... use.

MAIN collapses, as does everyone else. Scene returns to Max, alone in the rafters.

MAX

I should go after Greg, but... they
look they'll die without my help.
But...

(MORE)

MAX (CONT'D)
 if they could do that much damage
 to Foltix, my alternate self,
 imagine what they could do to me.
 Oh, fluff it. I need to look for a
 way to save them!

5 minute countdown timer. Player gains control of Max. They must find a way to open the doors to let out the gas and shut down the machinery.

OPTIONS:

Yes to switch off:

MAX (CONT'D)
 Why does Greg have a button for
 poison gas... in his bedroom?

No to switch off:

MAX (CONT'D)
 Yeah. I'll let them all die. Then I
 can live my life in peace in the
 Nexus...

After options and return to the previous room:

MAX (CONT'D)
 Get up! You're not dead, yet.
 There's no way.

MAIN
 Hack ...Ohhhh!

MAX
 'Sup?

Options:

MAIN
 I feel like my head's been
 pummelled by a sledgehammer.

MAIN (CONT'D)
Thanks for taking you sweet time.

MAIN (CONT'D)
I feel like someone's used an
Effron Pistol on my head.

After options:

MAX
 I'm sure it's not that bad. I had
 to navigate some stupid tiles.

LIONE

I've had work dos leave worse hang
overs than this!

MAIN

Don't you start.

ROKE's voice can be heard on the short wave radio talkie.

ROKE (O.S.)

I've analysed this friggen hunk o'
crap and I reckon the throttle, we
need, is in that tower o' Greg's.

LIONE

You're probably right. I'd say
whatever sprayed that gas is
exactly the kind of throttle we
need on the ship. Oh man, my head's
spinning after all.

ROKE

Anyway, you runts bring the part
here and... hey, get off! You
daren't mess with me. Get-

An explosion is heard.

CYRRIL

Lightning Hudokai of the second
level. Just think what the power of
Hudokai can do when it's levelled
up to its maximum potential.

LIONE

Warden, sir! What happened? Were
you attacked? We found Greg, a
member of the Cult of-

CYRRIL

Still alive and a blind fool, to
boot!

LIONE

Blind?

MAIN

Deaf, too. Give it up, Lione, he's
obviously deceiving us. I think...
I remember fully, now...

Cutscene of ship crashing. Shows Warden CYRRIL reconnecting
the ship's engines to the Hudokai power supply, shutting down
the prisons and causing a massive explosion. They crash
through a black hole and into the Nexus.

CYRRIL

The experiment worked. It almost killed us all, but it worked.

LIONE

I-I... looked up to you!

MATT

It's been one of those days when respect is just a hollow hotdog.

CYRRIL

Vice-Warden, I command you to bring the part to me, immediately.

LIONE

Hell no! I don't take orders from some... some crooked warden!

CYRRIL

If you don't come, then no one escapes on this day. Choose.

PLAYER regains control. They'll have to return to the crash site. CYRRIL is waiting.

LIONE

I take it you have the other part?

CYRRIL

Always a bit slow, but always faithful 'till the end.

MAIN

So, it's the Cult you work for?

CYRRIL

Strong words from a weak man.

MAIN

No wonder you want the Hudokai. You want to beef yourself up, with the cult.

CYRRIL

Weak intelligence, too.

LIONE

I think he'll surprise you.

CYRRIL

I think he's scum. Here, *girl*. Be my faithful dog and obey me as your master.

Options:

MAIN

I'm her master, now.

LIONE

Pft! I obey no one, anymore.

CYRRIL

You'll obey the Cult of Kai when I'm through with you.

OR:

MAIN

She is a bit like a dog, isn't she?

LIONE

What did you say?

CYRRIL

Haha, indeed! Certainly as stupid as one to believe I was not in the Cult of Kai.

After options:

LIONE

You're no better than a petty criminal.

CYRRIL

The only criminals here are the pair of you, along with a messy haired cat.

MAX

My purr is as fearsome as a roar.

CYRRIL

But I'm more like a dinosaur.

MAIN

In that you're old?

CYRRIL

A dinosaur amongst ants. Let me pry that engine part from your squashed bodies and escape victorious from this Nexus Void.

BOSS FIGHT 2: CYRRIL WAR (1)

In-fight dialogue:

LIONE

Why do you want this Hudokai, anyway?

CYRRIL

We all, at the cult, have differing reasons. Mine is to simply rule the law, to shape it to my whim and watch the universe controlled by how I want it controlled.

MAIN

Sounds stupid.

CYRRIL

Now, knowing that Hudokai is forged in the void, deep within the Nexus crust and briefly uncovered by the prison ship, I will escape this place and provide the cult with Hudokai delights.

Later in the fight:

LIONE

That-that's the sound of the prison ship engines!

CYRRIL

This isn't *my* doing.

GREG

No, it's mine.

FIGHT ENDS. After the fight:

GREG (CONT'D)

So that's the power of Roke's training?

MAIN

The way I see it, Roke trained us to take you down and there are two targets in my sight, right now.

MAX

Where is Rokey Pokey, anyway?

A burnt figure is dragged into view.

GREG

First degree burns, electrocution, poisoning... the list goes on.

ROKE

(Coughin)

Well... I'm still alive, fools!

CYRRIL

Weak ol' Greg had someone who could actually take Roke down for the first time - me.

MAIN

And I'd say we gave you a good fight.

CYRRIL

No. I was merely toying with you.

LIONE is zapped. MAX and MATT attend to her.

ROKE

(Coughing, spluttering)

No... no amount of unconvered Hudokai can... keep me down, not even any from the monster beneath this town, hidden within the Nexus. But no... no doubt you'll incur his wrath soon enough. You... you and your cult are finished before the might of... Rettam Krad.

CYRRIL

Pah. And since Greg kindly brought another ship part with him, it looks like it's our time to escape.

GREG

What about Foltix?

CYRRIL

What *about* Foltix?

MAIN

Like hell will I let you escape!

LIONE douses herself in the nearby water. GREG disappears inside the ship and MAIN launches himself onto CYRRIL. Quick Time Event button sequences. MAIN and CYRRIL have a fist fight that starts on the ship's landing bay and works its way through the interior. GREG pilots it into the air. LIONE also gets involved.

LIONE

I've attached the throttle and metal plate.

CYRRIL

So kind of you to do my dirty work, vice-warden.

LIONE

From here on out, I do my own dirty work. You idiots could have blown this ship up if I didn't install our parts quick enough.

MAIN

No, he counted on us to do that.
There's no way he'd destroy the
last hope of escape from the Nexus.

CYRRIL

Right you are... now die!

Max eventually grapples CYRRIL and pile-drives him out of
the ship's open window. Together, they fall.

LIONE

Curse that Max!

MAIN

He helped us escape and we barely
even knew him. Plus, he pile-driven
that warden out the window. That's
awesome.

LIONE

The longer we dilly-dally here, the
more likely we'll die with Greg at
the helm.

PLAYER resumes control. They head inside the ship and sneak-
attack Greg. They place him in stasis.

MAIN

Locked in stasis. He's no threat.

LIONE

Stasis only lasts until the energy
source is drained, capeesh?

MAIN

What's a capeesh?

LIONE

Look, stasis doesn't last forever,
is what I'm saying. Lock him in one
of the cells and we can use him to
support our claim when we reach the
Reality Council. You did good,
Nova. I'd even say you've done your
community service.

MAIN

Don't push it.

PRISON SHIP

GRAVITY-NUL BOOSTERS ACTIVE. LIGHT
SPEED REACHED. STASIS HUDOKAI
SYPHONED TO SHIP INTERIOR. WE ARE
NOW FREE TO LEAVE THE VOID.

Cutscene. The ship penetrates the sky and is immediately cast
into space. The Nexus is but a black crack behind them.

Scene cuts back to the ship. LIONE is driving in the cockpit. MAIN stands behind her.

PRISON SHIP (CONT'D)
STASIS TERMINATED BACK TO PRISON
CELLS, ONLY. WE HAVE ESCAPED THE
SINGULARITY.

MAIN
Let's try going back.

LIONE
Are you out of your mind?!

MAIN
Haha, I was just joking. But
seriously, do you think we ever
could?

LIONE
Doubtful. The void is in between
dimensions. Even though we, at the
Galactic Preservation, travel
between the three dimensions that
the Reality Council govern, we've
never been able to stop in the void
between those dimensions, before.

MAIN
So, only there for a split second
and then out again, huh?

LIONE
Precisely. Now shut your trap. I
need concentration if I'm to fly
this rig. Go and explore or
something. Come to me in a minute
when I've done the routine scan and
pinpointed our location.

MAIN
I'll take Greg to a stasis cell.

SPECTROX SPACESTATION

PLAYER is given control and can explore inside the prison ship. The ship rumbles and a warning siren blares after taking Greg to his cell. Story continues when PLAYER speaks with LIONE.

PRISON SHIP

WARNING! WARNING! FUEL RESOURCES
LIMITED. SPARKARLIMATERS REQUIRED
WITH COMBUST HUDOKAI. WARNING!

MAIN

What did you break, now?!

LIONE

Don't get fluffy with me, Nova!
Turning on the equipment must have
used the last of the ship's energy.

MAIN

Fantastic. I'm freed only to die.

LIONE

We all die at some point, but if
you talk like that again, I'll make
it sooner rather than later. Best
save your oxygen.

MAIN

So you have a plan?

LIONE

These prison ships run on
Sparkarlimater energy. It lasts a
long time and gives thru-

Options:

MAIN

I don't care how it runs! Are we
gonna fix this or what?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

What's that out the window?

After options:

LIONE

Don't interrupt me! I was saying
most space crafts use it, so if we
find, say, a derelict space craft,
then we can... borrow their energy.

MAIN

So you do break rules, after all. I was gonna say there's some sort of ship out the window.

LIONE

Exactly! I saw the derelict. That's my plan. We'll land there to refuel.

PLAYERS land on the derelict.

LIONE (CONT'D)

We'll keep looking until we find some Sparkarlimaters. They're contained in small glass cubes.

PLAYER resumes control. They explore. Eerie. Eventually they'll find a lab.

MAIN

This space station feels unstable. We'd best hur- wait. What's that?

A suit of nifty looking armour stands in the middle of the lab. When the action key is pressed on it:

LIONE

Looks like scrap metal.

MAIN

Looks like armour made from awesome, to me.

LIONE

You're not going to try it on, are you?

(Beat)

You're serious, aren't you?

MAIN

It's about time I got out of these prisoner clothes and into something a little more... me.

LIONE

Well... at least it looks sturdy.

More exploration leads the PLAYER to the engine room, where they find an alien trapped under some rubble, as well as some Sparkarlimaters.

LIONE (CONT'D)

He looks dead.

MAIN

Could be a she.

LIONE
Definitely a "Shi".

MAIN
Is that... an alien race or a
gender? I'm so confused.

LIONE
On second thoughts, no Shi is *that*
ugly.

Options:

MAIN
You are.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
We should help him.

After options:

SHI
Ungh...

The PLAYER can either choose to help the alien, or head
straight for the Sparkarlimaters behind the alien, SHI.

If SHI is helped, first:

SHI (CONT'D)
...S-stay away from me!

Options:

MAIN
A thank you would have been nice.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Calm down.

After options:

SHI
W-why haven't you bar stewards
killed me, yet?! I'm not being
fooled by some... some fluffing
Gears!

MAIN
Gears? What happened?

SHI

Oh... you... the girl. You have the Galactic Preservation logo... you're not Gears, are you?

LIONE

No.

SHI

Hmm... we... were attacked by our own creations... just...

LIONE

The slightest impact will shatter this ship. We're getting out of here, NOW.

SHI

I'll need support... and I'm not leaving without my Sparks.

MAIN

Sparks?

LIONE

Short name for Sparkarlimaters. Just get a couple of cubes.

If Sparkarlimaters is picked first, by-pass the previous SHI scene.

PLAYER picks up Sparkarlimaters. There is a gun shot, then explosion. The ship quakes before stopping.

SHI

You're here for my research, aren't you?

LIONE

So you're alive and packing, after all!

SHI

You're going to... to steal my Sparks. You fluffwits! You... you were gonna leave me to die!

MAIN

You have some serious issues.

SHI shoots one of the engines. A massive explosion. The ship quakes violently.

SHI

This research space station is now too unstable... I'm taking you down with me!

LIONE cuts him down.

LIONE
Damnit! We have approximately 5
minutes until this rig crumbles and
we loose all air.

MAIN
Time to run.

5 minutes countdown timer. Eventually the PLAYER reaches the
ship and they fly off.

LIONE
I'm glad I know some mild
mechanics, otherwise we'd be dead,
right now.

MAIN
So, we've refuelled. Where next?

LIONE
I'll make a scan in the cock pit.
Come to me when you're ready.

Story continues when PLAYED speaks with LIONE.

LIONE (CONT'D)
You'll never believe this.

MAIN
Try me.

LIONE
The scanner states our position is
in Galaxy 1 of the Reality
Council's domain.

MAIN
Totally unbelievable. I-can't-
believe-it-so-much-that-my-brain-
just-exploded.

LIONE
Be serious. The unbelievable part
was that something else appeared on
the scanner.

MAIN
A planet?

LIONE
Two, in fact. But it's not that. It
showed that this prison ship and
all within it are covered in Void
Stuff.

MAIN

"Void Stuff"? Whoever came up with that name was probably as lazy as those Nexus townsfolk.

LIONE

I'm not sure of the details, exactly, but Void Stuff is made of Dark Matter, like Hudokai. I think it can take us back to the Void whenever we please, now that we've been there once.

MAIN

Just as well Cyrril never escaped. He would have brought all of his cult lackeys in there with him.

LIONE

If we wanted to, we could head back to the Nexus.

PRISON SHIP

WHEN YOU RETURN TO THE NEXUS, I WILL ACTIVATE THE STASIS HUDOKAI TO FREEZE YOU ALL IN TIME.

MAIN

...

PRISON SHIP

IT WILL BE AS IF YOUR TRIP IS INSTANTANEOUS WHEN WE REACH THE BLACK HOLE'S SINGULARITY TO ENTER THE NEXUS VOID.

I recommend heading straight forward to one of those two planets; Earth 2400 and Tri-Alpha.

MAIN

I recommend we just head straight to the Reality Council, like you said.

LIONE

The council has a shield up for those who aren't members of the council or haven't authorisation to enter the premises. Since the Warden isn't with us, we need to find a way take down the ionic shield.

MAIN

And then we can enter?

LIONE

And then we need to battle our way
past the surrounding asteroid belt
within. The council is well
protected.

MAIN

So, we need a big ol' weapon.

LIONE

It's a hassle, but if we head to
those two planets, I'm sure we can
find the two things that we need.

PLAYER is given control of the ship in space and can name it.

PRISON SHIP

PRISON SHIP ONLINE. GALACTIC MAP
ACTIVATED. PRESS 'A' KEY TO BRING
UP GALAXY #1 MAP WHEN IN SPACE.
VICE-WARDEN LIONE BURGESS
ACKNOWLEDGED AS DESIGNATED MEMBER
OF THE GALACTIC PRESERVATION LAW
FORCE. REGISTERED AS NEW USER. AS A
NEW USER OF THIS SHIP, OFFICIAL
GUIDELINES STATE A NEW NAME IS
REQUIRED FOR THIS VESSEL. NEW NAME
ACCEPTED. WELCOME ABOARD.

PLAYER can either head to Earth 2400 (Biorhythm) or Tri-Alpha
(Final Gear). Other planets are optional and non-story
related.

BIORHYTHM (PLANET EARTH 2400)

A white padded cell. Alone, shrunk in the corner sits one young woman. More of a girl than a lady in appearance, she sports a small pair of glasses and tangled mahogany hair. Her clothing is plain and prisoner-esque. ALIZA LEGION.

ALIZA (V.O.)

We don't know why we're here.

Padded walls. Black bars. A life sentence for the life we tried to live. If only we tried to live that life together. If only we weren't separate. Were things better back when we were first here? It feels just like last time. Can someone tell us what the world is like, now? We sure as Darkness don't know. Darkness. It entangles our mind and slowly snuffs out the only fragments of life we do know. Aukaneck. Bullet. Opping. Darkness sucks them into the void but leaves the pain we felt, the pain we still feel. It hurts... We shed a lonely tear. We are many, but we are lonely. We are not complete. Not without Razz. We close our eyes as the darkness takes over our mind. The memories run wild in their watercolour fragments, washing into our vision. When we open our eyes, we know we'll be in the exact same place. We know we'll be watching what happened one month before now, but...

We don't know why we're here.

BLAKE (O.S.)

And that's all you need to know.

ALIZA appears to have a conversation with herself. BLAKE is a voice within her head. On screen, he is represented by a physical persona next to his text boxes.

BLAKE (CONT'D)

You're not escaping, dimwit. We've tried this many times. You know you're going to fail.

ALIZA

I've tried many times, Blake, **you've** just sat there and watched. If you had half a mind to join Rizumu and I, perhaps we'd have more success!

The door opens. A blonde bushy bearded man walks in, all smiles and rays of white light behind him, through the door. Doctor JOZU.

JOZU

I en always love that no sund. It en reminds me en of walken on no snow.

BLAKE

You know, I always think he's faking that kindness.

JOZU

Heyo. I en managed to sneek a no joobly from the no canteen, just for yu en.

JOZU passes ALIZA a tiny bottle of orange fruit juice - a joobly. She excitedly rubs it against her cheek.

JOZU (CONT'D)

I en thurh that mirht excite yu en, no Rizumu, I en wanted to see joy in yu en one last time.

BLAKE

I fluffing knew it!

RIZUMU is also a voice within ALIZA's head and is represented by her own picture persona when she talks. Italics for thought to one another.

RIZUMU

What do you mean, daddy Jozu?

JOZU

I en ayn't yur en daddy, no Rizumu.

Beat.

JOZU (CONT'D)

Aliza.

ALIZA

Yeah?

JOZU

Aliza, I en want yu en to understand somethen. Yu en, no Blake and no Rizumu... Yu've en been put forward for no oppen.

ALIZA

No opping?

JOZU

No. Opping.

JOZU's eyes begin to glisten.

JOZU (CONT'D)
I'm en sorry.

FADE OUT.

The scene shifts to the Prison Ship landing nearby, outside of an asylum building - the same one containing ALIZA. MAIN (or, MR. NOVA) and LIONE step out and onto a ruined street. Dilapidated structures mimicking buildings pepper the place. A greenish atmosphere intoxicates the dull environment.

MAIN
A new planet... I'm not sure
whether to be excited or bored.
(Sniffing)
Did you fart?

[KIM]
[What is a "fart"? I have no
concept of such a thing.]

LIONE
That's probably your own body
odour, Nova. You haven't showered
or eaten since escaping the Nexus.

MAIN
...Well, that doesn't explain the
green, gassy atmosphere!

[KIM]
[I'm picking up readings of nuclear
energy and high levels of waste.]

LIONE
This is planet Earth, 2400. The
gaseous atmosphere was caused by a
lot of past nuclear reactors, in
these parts. Look, it isn't
important. We're here to pick up a
Reality Council official.

MAIN
And then we alert him or her about
the Cult of Kai?

LIONE
And she'll get us into the Reality
Council, itself, to alert the
others. Her name is Malka. She's
the president of this planet. Most
world leaders are Reality Council
members, but Galaxy 1 is infamous
for having surprisingly few members
at all. Hence, why we're on this
planet.

MAIN

And this president so happens to hang around a broken town?

LIONE

She visits Land's End Asylum at regular intervals. It's best we intercept her there, rather than her place of leadership. Too many guards and officials to deal with.

MAIN

All right. Let's find her.

PLAYER resumes control. Eventually, they find themselves within the asylum. Someone stops them.

VERO

I en trust ye en are heer to visit a payshent?

MAIN

What?

LIONE

You dolt, the language here is slightly more evolved from the English you and I speak. It's ahead of many other worlds in all three galaxies of the Reality Council's governing.

[KIM]

[My databanks reveal Earth was where the English language originated from, before spreading to other planets. The inhabitants still understand the more basic English of other worlds.]

VERO

Yu en will need no visitor's ID cards to visit a payshent.

LIONE

They put 'en's after saying a first, second or third person word, like 'I', 'You', or even 'She'. They say 'no' before nouns and complicated spellings have been reduced to simpler ones.

MAIN

I don't care, I just want to understand them!

LIONE
 Keep your silver hair on, I'll
 activate the Prison Ship
 translator. Here, hook this over
 your ear.

PLAYER RECEIVES ENGLISH TRANSLATOR.

VERO
 I am Vero, representative of Land's
 End Asylum. Now, are you visiting
 or not? If not, I will have to kick
 you off the premises.

MAIN
 At last, you speak sense!

LIONE
 We are visiting, yes.

VERO
 Here, take these IDs and get out of
 my sight. You've made me late for
 my appointment.

VERO leaves and the PLAYER is allowed to explore the grounds.
 MAIN and LIONE find the "Opping Room". A voice is heard on a
 loudspeaker. VERO.

VERO (CONT'D)
 Doctor Conesus Jozu, should you
 halt any longer, you will be
 removed from your position and
 condemned to the Facility Act 2559,
 lawful act 129.

MAIN, [KIM] and LIONE hide.

JOZU
 I can't proceed.

VERO
 Then you are to be ejected from
 your occupation and subjected to
 the removal programme.

JOZU
 If that's to be my fate, so be it.
 It was all right until opping
 began. I don't want to be a part of
 this programme if it means the
 decay of life. I'm no murderer.

VERO
 Take Dr. Jozu to be downgraded.

JOZU is taken away by men in coats. ALIZA immediately tries
 to sprint towards the exit. She is stopped by a figure.

Dark shades cover his eyes. His suit is a deep, yet dirty, red with a black, tieless shirt. Short, but straight, leather-colour fur spreads his face and fists. A long muzzle sprouts from his face, rather like a dog. VERO.

VERO (CONT'D)

I would not advise it.

He electrocutes ALIZA to the floor and then throws her to the wall.

VERO (CONT'D)

Volts triggered by evaporated steam
and static friction. Volts to
punish your body into submission.
Yet, volts cannot kill you.

MAIN

(Whispering)

Malka obviously isn't here.

LIONE

(Whispering)

Is this place a prison or a
scientific research centre?!

[KIM]

(Whispering)

[Both. I don't like it here...]

VERO

I am telling you this so that you
know that opping will not kill you.
This operation is for Malka's sake,
not yours. Either you position
yourself into the machine, or I
will force your insane self in
there.

LIONE

(Whispering)

No, let's stick around. He
mentioned Malka and I suspect if
she's behind this, she'll visit
shortly to see how this proceeds.

ALIZA is electrocuted once more and thrown to the ground.

VERO

So, you are Aliza Legion. I should
not be surprised by that display of
disobedience, although I had hoped
you would have grown comfortably

accustom to Land's End Asylum. It
is, after all, your home.

BLAKE's voice comes from ALIZA's mouth, having taken control of her body.

BLAKE
How fluffing dare you! Can't you
tell when I've fronted?

ALIZA (O.S.)
*I was kind of hoping you'd tell him
how we don't see this as a true
home, Blake.*

BLAKE (O.S.)
You may not, but I do.

VERO
Oh, that is correct. You have
"Multiple Personality Disorder",
which is why you were even
subjected to this asylum, in the
first instance.

BLAKE
Don't patronise me. I'm not a naive
idiot who doesn't know that the
world thinks him mad, or rather *her*
since I'm in a female body, because
he has three people sharing one
form. Don't you dare act as if I'm
as thick as fluff.

ALIZA (O.S.)
You're feisty, today.

BLAKE (O.S.)
Shut up.

VERO simply steps aside. A second figure walks into the room. Her blonde hair is immensely long, matted and curled. She, too, has fur where human skin should be - ginger. Positioned at the end of a short muzzle is her button nose, followed by whiskers. MALKA.

MALKA
Am I to assume that this foul-
mouthed fluff is the one who has
"Multiplicity"?

VERO
Multiplicity, indeed, Malka. The
girl is the one to be opped.

LIONE
(Whisper)
That's her. That's Malka.

MALKA

The woman, Vero. She is twenty-three.

(Beat)

Well, I'm watching!

ALIZA is thrown into the machine that stands in front of them. VERO walks to one of the computers. A click. A whir. A crackle. Electricity and steam fill the room, from the machine. Then a crack. An explosion. Fire seizes the room and everyone within is knocked down. The machine is in pieces. A large gaping hole spreads across one of the walls. MAIN, (KIM) and LIONE are knocked down. ALIZA stands up, now free.

ALIZA

Scock, scock, scock! Blake?

(Beat)

Rizumu?!

(Beat. Whispering)

Jozu?

A white-furred anthropomorphic being steps in from the hole. Icy blue eyes. Long muzzle. Paws. Unbuttoned blue coat, long sleeves, gold buttons. The coat's tail flaps gently in the cool breeze, revealing a fluffy white tail. AUKANECK.

MALKA's voice is suddenly heard on the loudspeaker.

MALKA

All personnel to the opsole machine! There has been critical damage to the device!

MAIN, [KIM] and LIONE stir.

AUKANECK

Aukaneck Wolfe.

ALIZA

Aliza Legion.

AUKANECK appears to grab ALIZA and runs out of the gaping hole. MALKA runs after them with several guards and asylum members.

MAIN

Urrgh...

LIONE

So this is what an Effron Pistol feels like.

[KIM]

[The president is getting away.]

MAIN

Where did president Malka go?

LIONE

After her! She must have gone after that Aliza girl. We *must* catch Malka before she returns to her Greyhouse base. We won't be able to speak with her, there.

MAIN

No offence, but she's a bit of a bitch.

LIONE

Well, she's the only bitch we have.

MAIN

I beg to differ...

PLAYER resumes control. MAIN, [KIM] and LIONE fight through crowds of guards until they catch up with AUKANECK and ALIZA.

BODYGUARD

As the president's bodyguards, you are under Lawful Act 231 to come with us!

BODYGUARD 2

And Lawful Act 9174 says any act of disobedience means we can apply force until you do follow the law.

LIONE

Excuse us, but where is the president right now?

One of the BODYGUARDS turns around and fires a bullet just past LIONE.

BODYGUARD

Back away, ma'am! We are dealing with important business!

MAIN

Like... chasing some poor girl into the streets with gun-holding bodyguards?

BODYGUARD

He knows about the opping!

ALIZA

Please, stay back! I don't need your help!

BODYGUARD 2

Lawful Act 626 states information of national security must be kept secret by all members of the public.

BODYGUARD
 You will come with us to prepare
 for 'De-Neo'. Memory erasure.

They engage in combat. After the battle:

LIONE
 Government forces. Pah!

MAIN
 You gonna thank us?

AUKANECK
 I only speak when I feel it
 necessary.

ALIZA
 (To Aukaneck)
 You found it necessary enough to
 rescue me. So why not speak?

More BODYGUARDS appear, too many to take on, behind MAIN,
 [KIM] and LIONE, forcing them up onto the platform with ALIZA
 and AUKANECK.

AUKANECK
 I suggest if you want to live, you
 raise your arms now.

[KIM]
 [Rescue approaches.]

LIONE
 But... We need to speak with the
 president!

AUKANECK
 Ladies, gentlemen and monufor,
 please don't be angry, but do tell
 Malka that the blizzard will
 silence the bread.

A sound is heard and a flying train rattles above them,
 whizzing past.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
 I hope you have a fine day.

He raises his arm, along with ALIZA, only to be hooked onto
 the bottom of the train and whisked away. MAIN, [KIM] and
 LIONE do the same, avoiding the gunfire of the BODYGUARDS.
 They are grabbed into the train from underneath.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
 (To Aliza)
 It wasn't you I came for, but I'm
 glad you were there to rescue.

Lots of people swarm the group, most wearing blue coats. Eloquent silver snakes weave across the train carriage's navy blue carpet. Blue curtain drapes. Smooth, black seats. In the centre of the carriage is a glass table.

Choices:

MAIN

Wow, who let in the black parade?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We mean you no harm.

After choices:

RERTA

Who are you? Who's the girl?

A grizzly bear walks towards the group. Crimson corduroy jacket, worn open. Light cream fur, covering a somewhat rounded belly to an otherwise chiselled chest. The remainder of the figure's body; his neck, hands, feet and stubby but powerful legs, are all of a deep burgundy. Small muzzle, large face. GROGSAM.

GROGSAM

There ain't no reason besides one in why she's here. If she ain't a multiple, she ain't nothing. As for the rest o' these scum...

MAIN

Hey, I won't have anyone compare me to Lione.

LIONE

You're no better than vermin, Nova!

GROGSAM

Give me one good reason why I shouldn't dismount you from this aerotrain.

Choices:

MAIN

Because I'm hungry and I smell food.

GROGSAM

Good news. I'm a bear. And I smell some good meat right in front of me.

OR

MAIN

Because we helped this girl and
that wolf.

GROGSAM

You helped Aukaneck? That guy don't
need help from no one.

MAIN

So he needs help from someone.

GROGSAM

Ain't what I said!

MAIN

It's exactly what you said.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Because we need to speak with the
president.

GROGSAM

Then we'd better chuck you off.

After choices:

LIONE

Smooth.

[KIM]

[I sense hostility from the
grizzly.]

GROGSAM

Wanna give me another good reason
to throw you off, or are you done?

ALIZA

Reason? There's no such thing as a
"good" reason. Was there a good
reason to lock me up for as long as
I can remember? Was there a good
reason for the asylum to silence my
dear brother and sister? Was there
a good reason to even bring me
aboard this train, in the first
place? So I'll give you a "good"
reason - my reason. I want to live.

GROGSAM

Ahahaha! All right, you've got
spunk. You can stay and "live".

MAIN

What about us?

LIONE
You had to ask.

ALIZA
I vouch for them, too. They helped
Aukaneck and I by taking down some
bodyguards.

GROGSAM
So... you can handle yourselves.
I'll tell ya what. Fight for us,
the greatest rebellion in the world
- Jubal.

MAIN
What are you rebelling against?

GROGSAM
Yes or no's the answer.

[KIM]
[I feel it will lead us back to
Malka if we stick with them.]

Choices:

Yes. MAIN

OR

No. *MAIN (CONT'D)*

GROGSAM
Too bad. I've decided and ya
stayin' here with me.

After options:

GROGSAM (CONT'D)
Head to the buffet carriage, sit
down and shut up. The meeting's
gonna start, now that Aukaneck's
here, and you've just been invited.

GROGSAM walks off to the next carriage, with the rest of the
group.

LIONE
Thanks for that, Aliza.

ALIZA
I thought I'd return the favo- hang
on, how do you know my name?

MAIN

We saw you back at the asylum. We saw the entire incident.

[KIM]

[I am learning to feel, and what I felt from you was pain. I felt pain.]

ALIZA

But did you understand the "incident"? I don't think so. How could you? You don't know what "Multiple Personality Disorder" is, or rather, "Multiplicicity". Did you ever have someone so close taken away from you?

LIONE

...Yes.

MAIN

I may not know much about the current world, but I think we've all had someone we've lost, at some point.

[KIM]

Tom...

ALIZA

And who are you people, so experienced in this world that I'm evidently not?

MAIN

People call me Nova. This is Lione.

[ALIZA]

[And what about the girl?]

[KIM]

[I was a number, now I'm Kim.]

ALIZA storms off. PLAYER resumes control. The story continues when the PLAYER heads to the buffet carriage and sits down. AUKANECK sits opposite ALIZA. GROGSAM sits at the table's end.

GROGSAM

You're all here for one reason and one reason alone - to rebel against the use of the radioactive waste left behind by those idiotic human ancestors.

(Beat)

Many of you are newbies to Jubal, so lemme make things clear.

(MORE)

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

As those returning know, despite the fact you all have boulders for brains, nuclear power plants provided energy many years ago. After a while, toxic waste which couldn't be... uh...

RERTA

Disposed.

GROGSAM

Yeah, dethposed. In time, America 'came to be the dumping ground for

this toxic waste after some scocky war broke out with China in some time way before I began to live. Many nukes backfired and the country 'came ir- ir...

RERTA

Irradiated, sir.

GROGSAM

Yeah, irradiated. Lots of people from America ran from their country to survive. Those who didn't make it, in time, were stranded. We gotta say thanks, sometime. Had it not been for that scocky toxic waste, before being moved to America, us animals like myself wouldn't have evolved into what we are, today. Sped us up, it did. But that ain't the point.

(Beat)

The point is to take down the president.

JUBAL MEMBER

There's no way we can take down the president! She's the most powerful person on the planet!

GROGSAM

Bullcock. She's the most powerful person in auth- au...

RERTA

Authority.

GROGSAM

Yeah, athorty. We en ain't the athorty. We're against the athorty. They ain't got no rule over us.

MAIN

What does that mean for Jubal?

JUBAL MEMBER

It's about time we en fought!

RERTA

What do we do first?

GROGSAM

One at a time, maggots! You ain't listening to some ol' windbag - you're listening to Grogsam Zeliath, the greatest bear who ever challenged the athorty!

The room explodes with cheering and applause at that.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

Aukaneck.

Aukaneck stands and places something on the table; an ovular canister with a large pipe in juts out of it.

AUKANECK

This is a vibrolator. It was created to vibrate the molecules of an object until separation. It also produces a particular gas containing a vibrolicule to aid this process. These vibrolicules produce enough energy to create blue static.

GROGSAM

As some of you know, I sent Aukaneck out to nab this little dishy at the same time the president made her visit to Land's End Asylum. Dr. Jozu made sure we knew of this girl's opping before it was made.

ALIZA stands up.

ALIZA

(Desperately)

Jozu! What do you know of the doctor?

GROGSAM

Aukaneck, what do you know of the girl?

ALIZA

Jozu was the only person I could ever find solace in, at the asylum! If you know something about him, then I, too, must know!

GROGSAM

Feh, have it your way. Jozu was our insider at the asylum. He offered his assi- ass...

RERTA

Assistance.

GROGSAM

Yeah, arse stance.

RERTA

Please, sir, if you're going to say it, say it-

GROGSAM

You will shut your gob until you're seen fit to lead this rebellion!

Silence.

ALIZA

What will you use the vibrolator for?

GROGSAM

Ain't you got eyes?

(Beat)

Nevermind - you ain't got laser treatment, just those old scocky glasses.

MAIN

Old?

GROGSAM

Tell 'em, Aukaneck.

AUKANECK

Blue static is full of something called an ionic charge. This charge is present in all electricity, as was once used by humans several hundreds of years ago to power their technology. The only comparable thing we have, today, are smoke lights which have a faint charge of ordinary static - enough to light the glass it is contained within. What stopped electricity being used was the eventual lack of fossil fuels, such as coal and oil, to power things in such vast amounts.

LIONE

(To MAIN)

They prefer to use a type of steam as a power source, on this planet, basically.

GROGSAM

That bitch, Malka, wants to use toxic waste to replace our now steam powered stuff, since there ain't anything else strong enough to replace that elecaltristy them no humans had years back, beyond the smoke lights we now have. Doing that will destroy living creatures as we know 'em. When us animals muta- mute...

RERTA

Mutated, sir.

GROGSAM

Yeah, mootated. When we did that, loads of us died from some of the effects of that radioation stuff from the waste. Yeah, there are us around now that had our great grandmas and grandpas survive and come out for the better, but it changed our en entire animal race. It killed loads.

MAIN

I think we've deviated from the point. What's the vibrolator for?

AUKANECK

Which is where this vibrolator comes in. It produces static in its gas. The static can power machinery, whilst the gas is what is used to separate organic matter from another's consciousness. Jubal's base is out of the way for many reasons. One of which is because the mountain banks have something deadly left inside from hundreds of years back, once powered by dominant electricity. It was buried after a volcanic eruption way back before us animals evolved. We want that deadly device. With it, we'll have power enough to destroy any new nuclear power plants formed from president Malka, along with her nuclear waste to power such dreadful energy outputs.

(MORE)

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

Embedded in the mountain is an old mining machine, created for the purpose of sucking out hot steam from the lava that once existed inside the rock, which they probably used to power the town and forge all manners of equipment. The lava was directed elsewhere after the eruption and the steam stopped, rendering the machine and power useless. With the vibrolator placed into that device, we have static steam enough to not only power the machine and give us energy, but also use the vibrolicles to separate the natural mountain rock. With that rock open, we then have access to the mechanical weapon that dwells deep inside.

AUKANECK sits back down.

GROGSAM

Any questions?

Pause. Options:

MAIN

How did you know where to find the vibrolator?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Vibrolator sounds a bit like... vibrator. Why?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Can we have the weapon for our prison ship?

After options:

GROGSAM

Shut your face! Aukaneck, here, was able to find the vibrolator because he has Malka's chip frequ- free... frequency.

RERTA

How's that even possible?

GROGSAM

Let's just say Aukaneck has a bit of a past with her, eh?
(MORE)

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

We were then able to track her frequency on the radar. We knew she'd be off to the asylum at some point, given her interest in what happened when she was separated from her other self, so when she moved away from the Grey House, we also made our move.

MAIN

So, what if this weapon doesn't exist? What then?

GROGSAM

Nah, it exists. Ice Fjord 'came a mining town after it lost its fishing rights way back. Some o' them miners are still with us, back at base. They've confirmed it.

LIONE

I wouldn't say that's solid evidence.

GROGSAM

It gives hope solid enough to live for, arse!'

The carriage is now darker, from the sunset.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

Lights, do you think I'm a Darkness bat?

Several small candles ignite, turning the carriage into a haven of glowing light.

ALIZA

Grogam?

JUBAL MEMBER

"Sir".

ALIZA

Grogam, you mentioned Malka had been "separated from her other self". What did you mean by that?

GROGSAM

I ain't saying nothing. Since Aukaneck so happened to save you from the asylum, when he went to get the vibrolator, I'm leaving you under his care. It's up to him to tell you.

MAIN

Something doesn't hold right...

Snow can be seen out the window.

GROGSAM

Looks like we are almost at Ice Fjord.

AUKANECK

Ísafjörður.

ALIZA

Ísafjörður?

RERTA

It's where our base of operation is located.

GROGSAM

Rerta, shut up. I ain't hearing your long words. It don't make you smart, it makes you sound like you're looking down on us.

(Beat)

This meeting is ove-

A jolt shakes the carriage. The lights flicker.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

Rerta.

RERTA sneaks to the carriage door. He opens it and goes in. PLAYER resumes control. In the next carriage, dead bodies are seen everywhere. GROGSAM enters. Silence.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

All right, you're in luck. You got a chance to prove yourselves. We've got a murderer on the loose. Don't surprise me - we always got people out to get us.

MAIN

What, so we're expendable?

GROGSAM

Yeah. Expandable.

MAIN

We'll handle this in no time.

MAIN explores the carriages of dead people. Eerie. Eventually the PLAYER comes to a carriage with a figure in. The silhouette escapes out the window. The train jolts to a stop.

[KIM]

[Should I be scared?]

LIONE

I think we should all be scared.

Ísafjörður. Night. Black mountains covered in tainted white flour surround them as everyone steps off the train. Nestled beneath the wall of mountainous rock are houses made from the same material.

GROGSAM

Aukaneck, you dolt, take the girl
to get warmed up!

AUKANECK

I should also chase after the
murderer.

GROGSAM

The girl-

ALIZA

Aliza.

GROGSAM

Yeah, Aliza. Take her to one of the
huts; she ain't gonna get shelter
and warm clothes out here.

MAIN

What about us?

GROGSAM

Do I look like a hotel? Aukaneck
looks after the girl, you look
after yourselves!

PLAYER resumes control. MAIN explores the town of Ísafjörður/ Ice Fjord until eventually resting at the Inn. Screams of people dying. MAIN wakes up in the night. Lione [and Kim] remains asleep. Story continues when PLAYER speaks with a figure outside of AUKANECK's hut.

MAIN

Are you all right?

JUBAL MEMBER

Must... deliver... message.

AUKANECK opens his front door.

JUBAL MEMBER (CONT'D)

It... wants... Rizumu.

The JUBAL MEMBER falls to the floor, dead. ALIZA appears at the door.

ALIZA

Rizumu?!

AUKANECK

Best come inside.

The scene continues inside AUKANECK's hut.

MAIN

I don't think we had a chance to
say hi to each other, yet. The
surname's Nova.

AUKANECK

Aukaneck.

ALIZA

But what about Rizumu?!

AUKANECK

No. Go after him and you will die.

ALIZA

Rizumu is a *her*! I have to know if
she's still around. I have to know
where she is!

AUKANECK

I didn't mean Rizumu.

MAIN spots something in the window and heads over. ALIZA
turns around, too. A figure smiles at the window, half
crazed. Wild, shoulder-length white hair, dried blood
spatters his face, vivid pale eyes. Bare feet. A deeply dirty
leather vest. Dark grey shirt. An odd black shoulder pad
strapped on his left shoulder and a pair of brown trousers
with one leg ripped off up to the knee. RAZZ.

MAIN and ALIZA look at one another, without saying anything.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

I'm going to get fish.

MAIN

At this time of night?

AUKANECK

Midnight fish.

AUKANECK leaves.

MAIN

He's gone.

ALIZA

Who are you?

MAIN

I don't know, myself.

ALIZA

You drop in from wherever, weird
armour on and you just accept all
this. Who are you, *really*?

MAIN

I came here from space. Long story short, we're after the president.

ALIZA

What I mean is... can I trust you?

MAIN

You're not planning on going out into the blizzard, are you? That window peeper is a prime culprit for both that messenger's state and his message, but the snow will keep his cover.

ALIZA

Aukaneck will kill me, but that's the plan. He won't go, but I think a second person would really help.

MAIN

Oh, so I'm coming with you?

ALIZA

Rizumu is my little sister. I thought she was dead until now. Sure, she was in my head, but now I'm not so sure... I have to find out. Come with me and we can find out together.

MAIN

Fine, but saggy face stays in her bed. She annoys me.

PLAYER resumes control. Dark blizzard conditions. MAIN and ALIZA cross the tundra, until eventually finding the side of a mountain range. A cave glows red light. They enter and are immediately rendered unconscious by the shadowed figure of RAZZ.

FADE TO BLACK.

RAZZ (O.S.)

She was such a good girl... such a good girl... Ahahaha!

FADE IN:

MAIN and ALIZA are both tied up. A glowing red cavern surrounds them.

RAZZ (CONT'D)

Hello, pretties.

ALIZA

Who are you?

RAZZ
(Chuckling)
I am you.

MAIN
Cut the riddles.

ALIZA
I want to know who you are and what
you know of Rizumu.

RAZZ
Pretty girl, but stupid... yes,
yes. I really am you. Really...
really... Your twenty-first
birthday - that dippy doctor made
you a cake so foul that you
pretended to enjoy the large chunk
you ate right in front of him, its
vile taste seizing your mouth and
your mind. Ha!

ALIZA
The cake was sweet.

RAZZ
The cake was putrid.

ALIZA
If you really are me, then tell me
something of Blake.

Pause.

RAZZ
He's a cynical bastard who thinks
he's a clever boy, hoo ha! He
fancied one day finding his voice
in operatic singing, like some fat
curly hair in Venice. Blake made
himself known for as long as you
remember, that silly boy. He should
have skulked in the shadows, like I
did... smart me...

ALIZA
There's nothing wrong with Blake!

RAZZ
But the facts are true, hm?

MAIN
I reckon he has you, there...

ALIZA
(To RAZZ)
What do you mean "skulked in the
shadows"?

RAZZ

I mean what I said... you don't know! I know, though. I'm smart, yes, smart... people with Multiple Personality Disorder, or Multiplicity, or Dissociative Identity Disorder - call it what you will, have more alters than they know about. Oh yes, yes. Blake and Rizumu were alters that made themselves known, but I didn't. I stayed lurking in the shadows in your mind, foolish girl, growing sick of the twee harmony you all lived by. I relished the anguish, I craved the pain. I wanted to be free so, so badly. Beautiful, wonderful fortune! That machine, back in the asylum, that delicious machine caused us to split. Our minds became our own! We got our own bodies. My wonderful body became flesh and power, skin and muscle, mine to control! So, when I was sucked from your mind, I found myself flowing through the air, growing stronger and with exhilaration until I fell into a mass of greasy metal. Ooooooh yes, I don't think those lab idiots figured out where the alters would go after their opping operation, ha, but to land outside was fantastic on the soul. *Freedom.*

MAIN

That means... Blake and Rizumu are alive, Aliza.

RAZZ

Oh, the look on your face! Super Nova is right, though. Been listening I have, I have... I know your secrets, boys and girls! Oho, go on - ask me another!

ALIZA

What of Rizumu?

RAZZ

That one's boring. Ask me something like my name or why I'm doing this.

ALIZA

You sent that poor Jubal member out to the hut and he mentioned Rizumu. I want to know where she is! I swear, if anything's happened to h-

RAZZ jumps on ALIZA.

RAZZ

You'll swear what?

(Beat)

As I thought, yes, you'll swear nothing. Rizumu is quite safe in my hold, after all, dear child. It was tempting to slice her up, oh ho, but her screaming was obnoxious and those filthy bodyguards were nearby.

AUKANECK appears at the cave entrance, behind RAZZ. He is unaware of AUKANECK's entry. MAIN and ALIZA notice, but say nothing.

MAIN

Ask him who he is.

ALIZA

Who are you and why, just why, are you doing this?

RAZZ

That's more like it. You know how to keep ol' Razz satisfied after so many years of doing the opposite. Yes. The name's Razz, shmuck. And as for the reason why, hm? It's because of *him*!

QUICK TIME EVENT. Press buttons to help AUKANECK get the edge in a fight against RAZZ. Eventually he pins RAZZ to the floor.

AUKANECK

(Growling)

Tell her!

RAZZ

Haha, what's to tell? I only want you here because of that vibrolator, ohoho. I want to activate that machine, I do, I do. I figured you'd bring it and all, being such an *animal*. The purpose? Oh, stupid mutt, it's simply *anarchy*!

AUKANECK

Fine, *I'll* tell her.

RAZZ knocks AUKANECK down and runs towards a stove-like machine behind the tied up ALIZA and MAIN. Whirring noises. Clunking.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

He took the vibrolator.

RAZZ emerges and runs to the cave entrance.

RAZZ

I've decided, Aliza girl, I'm not going to kill Rizumu. Oh no. I love the thought of blood spewing around and anarchy toppling the world, but I'm not going to kill her. I'm smart, I am. I'm the dark side that you repressed, but I'm not stupid. We're not done talking. When you seek her out, I'll be waiting, keeping her alive for our next meeting.

RAZZ disappears into the dark blizzard. There is a long pause.

ALIZA

I'm sorry.

AUKANECK

I wouldn't normally fight. I am a slave to my species. And what about you? You led her here.

ALIZA

He didn't lead me. I led him.

Choices:

MAIN

I'm sorry, too...

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Too right.

After options:

AUKANECK

I should cut you down.

ALIZA

Were you watching us when we left?

AUKANECK

I heard you leave, as I thought you would. I could have arrived immediately, but I chose not to. If you ignore me, then I ignore you. I couldn't leave you for too long, however;

(MORE)

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

I knew it was dangerous and my suffering heart wouldn't allow you to come to great harm. Not when I sympathise with you. So I followed your chip frequency on the radar that Jubal developed. There was little hope, otherwise, in finding you in January - the height of the snowy winter, here.

MAIN and ALIZA are freed from their bindings.

MAIN

Ah. That means we can be tracked by people at the asylum, too.

AUKANECK

We will have to deactivate your chip in the morning. For now, we can only watch as our operation starts a day earlier than expected.

MAIN, ALIZA and AUKANECK exit the cave. Shadowed rock begins to crumble away, revealing the fighting light which has penetrated it in battle. The fjord wall splits into two giant halves. Jubal members are alerted noise and come to investigate.

GROGSAM

Why in Malka's name did you put the vibrolator in the machine at this time of night.

MAIN

The train attacker activated it early, but I doubt he will return.

GROGSAM

Bloody hound! He made enough trouble for us! Well, at least the town has always lasting energy, now.

A mining machine is revealed from the two split mountain halves, as well as a much, much,

much larger device which looks absolutely menacing in comparison. It looks like a rather large cannon.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

What the Darkness is that meant to be?

AUKANECK

We have just unearthed our ultimate weapon.

FADE TO BLACK.

MAIN, [KIM] and LIONE are sitting on their Inn beds, awake the next morning.

MAIN

And that's what happened.

LIONE

This planet has some interesting tech. Even though it's ahead of other planets, it's steps behind with their steam machinery.

MAIN

So you reckon we can use that cannon, ourselves?

[KIM]

You don't need a cannon for that barrier, if that's what you're thinking. I'm more than enough.

LIONE

Well, it could be good for space rock and enemy ships, but you're being hopeful, Nova. This is Jubal's weapon, now.

MAIN

Yeah, I guess, but now that we've helped them out, they owe us. We may be temporary Jubal members, but we still need to see the president. I don't know about you, but I don't think rebelling against her is the best way to persuade her to come with us.

LIONE

...I'm working on that.

[KIM]

Why not help that Aliza girl? Being a victim of circumstance isn't pleasant...

PLAYER resumes control. When they speak with AUKANECK:

AUKANECK

She's asleep. She has a frequency chip in her hand. To take it out, I need some things.
(MORE)

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
 She's not safe, here. Get them for
 me whilst I stand guard.

CHOICES:

MAIN
What's in it for me?

AUKANECK
*I'll give you a Jubal Jacket for
 free.*

PLAYER receives a free Jubal Jacket.

OR:

MAIN
Anything to get going.

After options:

AUKANECK
 I need a CLAMP, a MAGNET and a
 NEEDLE.

After PLAYER finds all three items and returns:

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
 Now I can make the device to remove
 Aliza's frequency chip. Come in.

Everyone heads inside. AUKANECK has the clamp around ALIZA's
 hand, as she wakes up.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
 (To Aliza)
 Your hand will be temporarily numb.

MAIN
 (To Aliza)
 That's to take out the chip.

AUKANECK
 It's mainly used for putting
 frequency chips into people's
 hands, but with the correct
 knowledge of the interior magnet,
 it also disables those same chips
 that everybody has.

LIONE
 The Reality Council outlawed
 chipping. President Malka sets this
 planet's individual law along the
 Council's. She's breaking Council
 law!

AUKANECK

Those at the asylum are chipped to have tabs kept on them. All of Earth have them to pinpoint their location and have in-built IDs.

[KIM]

People aren't robots.

MAIN

I'm glad I don't have a chip.

AUKANECK

Only two places in the world have a device which is able to pick up the frequency in those chips. The first is obviously Jubal, built from the knowledge Crystal had from her initial host, rest her soul.

(Beat)

I will come back to her, in a minute. The second device is in the Grey House, located at the centre of the city.

ALIZA

Which city?

AUKANECK

The only city. Lightce.

LIONE

The Grey House is the president's headquarters. President Malka. She leads the city, she leads the continent, she leads the world.

ALIZA

I did wonder what a president was... but why was she at the asylum if she's the world leader? I... have too many questions!

AUKANECK

The chip's out. I'll meet you all at the water's edge.

PLAYER resumes control. AUKANECK is at the water's edge. Story continues when PLAYER interacts with him.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

Take your clothes off.

CHOICES:

MAIN

With pleasure, sailor.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Are you fluffing serious?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
I could do with a wash.

ALIZA
Darkness, no!

AUKANECK
We must wash ourselves before the
hard day's work ahead.

MAIN
And what would that be?

AUKANECK
Uncovering the weapon from the
rocks.

MAIN
And then can we have it?

AUKANECK
I don't answer stupid questions.

AUKANECK removes his coat, to reveal a very fluffy white fur coat. MAIN, ALIZA and LIONE stifle laughter. [KIM keeps her cool.]

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
Please, it's my species' winter coat. I can't help it. If you stop laughing, I'll answer those burning questions you no doubt have.

MAIN
Even stupid ones?

AUKANECK
You aren't getting that cannon.

ALIZA
What about clothes?

AUKANECK
Now that the village has more power beyond the small boilers, they will be dried in a matter of minutes once you're back on land.

Pause.

ALIZA
Who was Crystal?

Pause.

AUKANECK
The opsole machine was first used on its creator, Dr. Lewis Glass, who offered himself up as a test subject. Dr. Glass worked for president Malka, whom instructed him to make such a machine, apparently, as well as the chip frequency system and the means to track them. The opping was a success, giving birth to Crystal. Following from her separation, she fled to the other side of England, the country where the asylum is based. She chanced across some of Jubal's men and with her sharp intelligence, she joined the rebellion. With her knowledge of Dr. Glass and how he created the radar device, she built one for Jubal, also.

LIONE
Despite being against the law, these chips could work in Aliza's favour.

AUKANECK
No. The chips won't have been replicated. We can't use the radar to find Aliza's alters.

A splash is heard.

[KIM]
Fish.

AUKANECK
Aliza.

ALIZA
Aukaneck.

AUKANECK
I lost my temper on your friend, last night, because he didn't tell you something deeply important. I know he knew. Crystal knew, too. The alters, from the host, all know.

(Beat)
Aliza, in time, Crystal died.
(MORE)

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

She grew weaker and weaker over the month she was with Jubal. When she separated from Dr. Glass, apparently another also separated from him and ran off. He no doubt died, too, as did the doctor, because the opping split their life span into a third. One third for each person. The doctor was already getting on in years, so the separation literally killed all three of them.

Silence.

LIONE

The average living age is 98, in Galaxy 1. With Blake, Rizumu and Razz... that means it's been split into a quarter.

[KIM]

Have a heart, Lione...

[LIONE]

She needs to know the truth.

ALIZA

I'm 23.

MAIN

That means... less than a year left to live.

ALIZA

Death before a proper life. No. I want a proper life before death.

(Beat)

Aukaneck, I'm going to search for my other selves; my family. If the world gets in my way, then let it get in my way. I'll climb every barrier. I'll traverse every tundra. I'll even go through Darkness and back. Nothing will stop me from saving the lives of Razz, Rizumu, Blake and Aliza; me. Our lives. Somehow, just somehow, we will reunite as one and live a full life in bodily harmony; a biological rhythm, a biorhythm. And then, and only then, will we be allowed to die.

AUKANECK leaves. PLAYER resumes control until confronting GROGSAM in the town centre.

AUKANECK
(To GROGSAM)
Aliza wants to leave.

GROGSAM
Well, I knew this was comin', so I
had the balloon made ready.

MAIN
What's going on?

GROGSAM
Well, we're letting Aliza go. As a
member of Jubal, now, anything she
does reflects on us. Same for you
lot.

ALIZA
And... you're okay with me going?

GROGSAM
Give 'em Darkness!

ALIZA
This is all so sudden...

RERTA
I've been fixing up the old steam
motor on the balloon for weeks. I
figured it would make a great way
of concealment in the skies rather
than risking those security checks
on the no aerotrain, but then sir
informed me that you'd be needing
it, late last night. I... kind of
wanted the balloon, myself.

GROGSAM
You can have it all you want when
them fools are done.

AUKANECK
You have my word that when we
return her, you'll get full
piloting privileges. IF we return
her!

ALIZA
Hang on. You don't intend to come
with me, do you?

LIONE
Well, we sure as fluff don't.

Options:

MAIN

That's right. If Jubal are going to fight the president, then our best bet is to stay here, with the majority.

GROGSAM

Fluff that! You idiots are going with them.

LIONE

We don't take orders from a bear.

GROGSAM

You sure as fluff do! As members of Jubal, I'm in charge of you and I give orders for you to accompany these lost souls.

MAIN

And what if we refuse?

GROGSAM

Funnily enough, that fish Aukaneck gave you earlier was drugged. Either way, you're gonna fall asleep and you'll be on board that balloon.

AUKANECK

The more of us, the better. It will ensure our safety.

MAIN

You could have just asked!

AUKANECK

You would have refused. I am a good judge of character.

OR

MAIN

Actually, we do. Going with Aliza would bring us closer to the president.

LIONE

No it doesn't!

MAIN

Well, maybe not, but I kind of what to explore the planet. Being cooped away takes its toll on you.

ALIZA

I understand that.

[KIM]

And maybe I can train my strength
and knowledge out in Lightce, just
like you promised Dunkan!

[MAIN]

Even Kim's getting excited.

[KIM]

Eeeeeeeeeeeeeee!

[MAIN]

You see?

GROGSAM

As members of Jubal, having
separate smaller groups around is
helpful to me. Get intelliJamence
on Malka or whatever.

After options:

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

I wish you the best o' luck!

The balloon rises into the sky.

ALIZA

So, why decide to come on a quest
that is more my concern than your
own, Aukaneck?

AUKANECK

GrogSam, sir, entrusted me with the
task to look after you.

ALIZA

You don't expect me to believe
that?

AUKANECK

No, but it's the only answer I'll
be willing to give.

MAIN

Where do we plan to take this
balloon, first?

ALIZA

Venice.

FADE TO BLACK.

PLAYER resumes control, in a hot air balloon on a world map.
They can EXPLORE the world to find all sorts of collectibles
or level up. Eventually, they will have to land in the mini-
map's highlighted dot.

AUKANECK

I assume we're heading to "Venice"
to locate one of your alters.

ALIZA

Blake. He always wanted to be an
operatic singer. It's the only
place I think he'd go.

AUKANECK

Venice is gone.

MAIN

What?

AUKANECK

That's to say, it still exists, but
it's now a sector to this huge
metropolis, called Lightce.

ALIZA

So, what's the sector o-

AUKANECK

"Venice" is Sector 6, as far as I'm
aware.

Venice. A glory of old buildings greet the players in midday
sunlight. The city of Sector 6 literally glows a golden brown
whilst the large canals reflect a golden green in a blaze of
rich colour. The same great glass domes are woven into the
ancient city's design, as if to place the modern with the
old, whilst towers of curved stone vines twist their way to
the sky. Arches of building rooftops are full of as much life
as the streets and canals.

MAIN

Why land here? Shouldn't we just
scout the skies for the nearest
opera house and land there?

AUKANECK

We'd draw too much attention.
Here's inconspicuous.

MAIN

Look at you, using all the fancy,
fluffy words.

LIONE

I can't tell if you're swearing at
him or commenting on the fact he's
an anthropomorphic snow wolf.

[KIM]

But he's so furry! The diversity of
alien life is to be expected.

AUKANECK

"Alien"?

ALIZA

We have to find out where the opera houses are, first, and then head to the most well-known one. It's the only place I can think of Blake going.

AUKANECK

No, first we need to get some money. You attached our balloon's chain to a powerful magnet. I've only seen a couple of them before, so I'm not quite sure on how they work specifically, but I do know that we need to activate one of the other magnets by paying, otherwise we'll be prosecuted for stealing - someone else paid for that magnet to work, so they could moor their boat.

MAIN

(Sarcastically)

Great. We'll have a look around and see if we can raise some funds.

PLAYER resumes control. To raise money, they can do a variety of tasks from speaking with NPCs: DELIVERY, SELLING MASKS, CARD GAMES, TRANSLATING ENGLISH TO NEW ENGLISH and TAKING PEOPLE TO A LOCATION THEY'RE LOOKING FOR. 1000 Chronoss is needed to pay and continue.

LIONE

That handles the extortionate mooring fee. Now, if you don't mind, I'd like to explore the sector.

MAIN

I wouldn't mind getting away from you, for a bit. A big city, a young man... yeah, I think it's time to hit the town.

LIONE

Contact me via our radios if you find something. Here, Aliza, take one. I'm off.

LIONE leaves the party.

MAIN

(To himself)

I'd say she's more "on"...

ALIZA
 Typical. My first human
 companionship outside the asylum
 and he belittles women!

Options:

MAIN
That's not what I meant...

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)
*Get in the kitchen and make me a
 sandwich, before I belittle you,
 again!*

After options:

ALIZA
 I'M going to look for an opera
 house. Find me when feel like
 apologising.

ALIZA leaves the party.

[KIM]
 Nova, can I stay with you?

[MAIN]
 You don't wanna explore?

[KIM]
 I do, but I'd feel safer with you.
 I don't want a scenario where
 you're taken away just because I
 wasn't with you.

[MAIN]
 ...So you wanna look after *me*?

[KIM]
 And analyse you. You're no Tom and
 I haven't deduced whether I can
 trust you enough, yet!

[MAIN]
 Kids these days!

PLAYER gets the choice of who to explore the city with,
 first; LIONE, ALIZA or MAIN [and KIM]. Either way, all
 scenarios will eventually be played out. PLAYER has a choice
 of their order of play.

SCENARIO 1

ALIZA EXPLORES the rooftop market.

ALIZA

I noticed Nova's crew could adapt their language to both Old English and New. They must have a spaceman translator. I'll just have to make do with my Old English. I hope I don't stick out. I'll ask around.

There are varying responses from NPCS:

NPC 1

What an interesten accent yu en have.

OR

NPC 2

Old English? Yu're en set in the no past. Get lost.

OR

NPC 3

There isn't one neer here, but if yu en go on a no vaporetto, yu'll en find one soon.

OR

NPC 4

We're en relatively new here, also. The only one we en know of is the great no Fenix Theeta. Now be on yur en way.

Eventually, the PLAYER will INTERACT with the mask stall.

TRADER

Wuld yu en like a no mask come carnivale?

ALIZA

Carnivale?

(To herself)

I hope he doesn't notice I'm not from around here.

TRADER

I en can see yu en aren't from arund dees parts.

ALIZA

(To herself)

Curses!

TRADER

So lemme give yu en some advisall;
carnivale is the greetest time o'
da yeer! True, it ayn't for anoder
cuple o' months, but it's word
getten a no mask now before
everyone goes ut for one at da same
time.

Choices:

ALIIZA

No, no, I'm fine, thanks.

OR

ALIZA

They look pretty. O-okay.

After options:

TRADER

Are yu en shore abut dat? They're
only 20 esperants each.

One of the people, observing, answers her. He is a short, scruffy mid-teen with a warm smile. Atop his head is a dated flat-cap covering what looks like dark hair that hadn't been cut or combed in a long time. A grey jacket sits on his torso, full of bulky pocket after pocket. The jacket is open, revealing a torso of belts that lead down to his black trousers, which has holes in them. Flat shoes of a colour which had long faded from them. BUDGIE.

BUDGIE

I'll en getcha one, sweetheert.

Brief pause.

TRADER

Theif! THEIF!

BUDGIE

Oh. Well. Reedy to run, no lass?

PLAYER runs through the crowd, AVOIDING rooftop security. They come to a bridge.

ALIZA

(Out of breath)
What the Darkness do you think
you're doing, Mr... Mr..?!

BUDGIE

The name's no Budgie.

ALIZA

BUDGIE?! Sounds funny. Bouncy.

BUDGIE

I en saw ya en smile! My en no ma gave me the name. Said it was 'cause she wanted me to be a no singer, when I en grew up. I en ayn't interested in that malarkey. If she en wanted me to be a no singer, she'd en have chosen a better no bird!

ALIZA

Oh, I suppose you're not TOO bad. I'm Aliza.

BUDGIE

'So, what brens yu en to Sector 6? Yu're obviously an utsider.

ALIZA

Ahem I'm looking for someone. I don't suppose you know them, actually?

BUDGIE

Yeesh, he's en me - tall, dark and handsome, awaiting yu're eternal love.

ALIZA

Pardon?

BUDGIE

Nevermind, lass, nevermind. Who's the missen one?

ALIZA

He should have curly hair and is probably wearing some sort of sharp suit. I don't really know much else at this stage, but his name's Blake.

BUDGIE

Well, what do yu en say I en tells ya en after I en show yu en arund for a bit?

ALIZA

I'd really just lik-

BUDGIE

Go on - I en bet yu en ayn't even seen the no undersector, yet.

ALIZA

I... no. I haven't explored properly since being free. This "undersector" sounds fun.

(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

All right, I want to see this undersector.

BUDGIE

And so yu en shall, sweetheart.
Call the no water lift elevator and
we'll en get in.

A giant brass pipe stands at the end of the bridge. Its width was perhaps the length of the entire train carriage where the Jubal meeting was held, whilst length-wise it extends vertically downwards. In the pipe is transparent glass with a cylindrical container, large enough for dozens of people to stand in. This is the water lift.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

Come on, into the no tank.

ALIZA and BUDGIE travel down into the undersector.

Muddy coloured pipe walls. Pale spheres of glass glow light into the tunnel, whilst the floor is metal meshing. Underneath the meshing is shallow water.

ALIZA

We're under the Sector 6 canals.

BUDGIE

Welcome to the no undersector!

PLAYER resumes control. When they reach the grand hall and on the small plank covering the shallow water, story continues:

ALIZA

It's an interesting contrast to the... uppersector, I guess you'd call it.

BUDGIE

Yeesh, yu en culd say that. After all, we en ayn't so well off compared to a lot o' those up there. 'S wine we're en down here in the first place, 'cause the no president don't want none of us en clogging up what she'd en call "a fine, pretty no city". I en don't mind. A lot of us en don't - it's cheeper to make a liven and we're all a tirtly bonded community.

(Beat)

Can I en ask, miss, where yu're accent is from?

ALIZA

I read a lot of old books. It comes from them.

BUDGIE

And yu're en ma didn't teech yu en-

ALIZA

She was dead soon after I was born.
I never learnt from her.

BUDGIE

Mmm. Anyhow, I en want to give yu
en somethen. I en ayn't got much,
but I en ayn't letten someone as
pretty as yu en dissapeer into the
no city and never be seen by my en
no eyes, again. Drop by Room 231.

BUDGIE runs off. PLAYER controls ALIZA to said room. A small
smoky sphere, hangs above an opaque door.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

Ta-da!

ALIZA

You're abode, I take it?

BUDGIE

"My abode" yu en say! Yu en sund
weyrd usen that old language.

ALIZA

Well, your en house?

BUDGIE

Stick to yer old English! Yu en can
come in for a minute if yu en want.
There ayn't no ma or pa to bug me
en.

ALIZA

I'll wait out here, if that's okay
with you... en?

BUDGIE

Tsk, girls.

BUDGIE goes inside, then re-emerges.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

I en noticed yu en have an old-
fashioned com - a radio. Keeps
people in contact, like yu en and
me en. Here's my no number.

ALIZA

"214 66 937"?

BUDGIE

Put that in and we en can talk. I
also have something else for you...

BUDGIE walks forward and kisses ALIZA.

ALIZA
What are you doing?!

BUDGIE
Oh well, maybe yu en ayn't reedy
for a no kiss, yet, but I'm not
taken no for an anser. I'll call yu
en, sweetcheeks.

ALIZA
Ready? The only thing I'm about
ready for is that information you
said you had on Blake.

BUDGIE
I en said I MIRHT know.

ALIZA looks particularly annoyed.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)
It just so happens, thurh, that I
en do know a bit, but no more than
everyone else. I en was hopen to
give yu a tur above grund, but the
no sun's bund to be setten, by now.
Then yu'd en be able to see some of
the middle level and-

ALIZA
I can explore elsewhere, myself,
thank you.

BUDGIE
Maybe tomorrow, then?

ALIZA
(Sarcastically)
Maybe.

ALIZA storms off. BUDGIE is left alone for a while.

BUDGIE
Scock! I en forgot to ask for her
en number!

SCENARIO 1 ENDS.

SCENARIO 2.

MAIN [and KIM] skulk down Bistro Street.

MAIN
Oh man... I'm so hungry...

[KIM]

The last thing we ate was that fish, three days ago.

CARNIVALE HOST

(To a big crowd)

Are you hungry? Fatigued? Want a spiced broth of spaghetti, meatballs that melt in your mouth and a sauce peppered to perfection?

MAIN

That guy. I want to eat him.

CARNIVALE HOST

Then our first prize is just for you! In half an hour, Carnivale festivities will start and all you have to do is show me that you have the best Carnivale costume to win a free meal at my restaurant; The Hungry Botana!

[KIM]

Your salivation has been answered.

MAIN

My salvation of salivation! I have half an hour to piece together the best costume this city's ever seen. It won't take much - a pinch of robes here, a theft of feathers there, and that meal is as good as mine!

[KIM]

As good as *ours*, you mean...

PLAYER has to look around for items to put together as a costume. ROBES can be found from the pub, in the toilets. FEATHERS must be won from a card game by the river. If no mask, then the MASK must be found in a bin. CURLY SHOES are to be won from thugs battled in an alley and MANACLE by persuading an NPC through a variety of *good* options.

CARNIVALE HOST

...And we have our winner! In third place, Mr. Matragano! In second place, Ms. Paccini! And in first place... Mr. Nova! What curly shoes he has! And look at those feathers! You win a pasta meal large enough for two at my very own restaurant.

MAIN

Good, 'cause I may need one that large just to appease me.

[KIM]
Don't forget me, Nova...

[MAIN]
Oh, all right. I'll save some for
my favourite girl in the whole
galaxy.

[KIM]
You mean that? Aww, thank you!

[MAIN]
Well... it's either you or saggy
face...

SCENARIO 2 ENDS.

SCENARIO 3.

LIONE enters an elaborate church. Several people are in a
line, with a priest in front of them.

LIONE
I've come to sign up for the
Carnivale Enforcers.

PRIEST
Excellent. We now have enough to
get prepared. You know what to do,
right?

LIONE
I'm to take out any of the mobster
family members that try to pick on
poor civilians during Carnivale. I
know. I'm well acquainted with the
law.

PRIEST
You'll go in groups of three out
into the crowds. If you spot any
trouble, break it up. I've set this
scheme up because the Lord is
compassionate and I am his
messenger. He doesn't like seeing
the good suffer, but the Devil
makes him work hard. Therefore,
it's up to you Carnivale Enforcers
to stop criminal activity.

LIONE
It sounds like the Carnivale pre-
festivities are starting.

PRIEST
Lee and Cassia, you are left to go
with... with...

LIONE

Lione.

PRIEST

Here's something to help. It grants the user a latent ability from within - Ice. Use it well and give it back to me after the festivities.

LIONE

Hudokai?

PRIEST

Report back to me in an hour's time.

LEE and CASSIA are two non-playable characters that join LIONE. The PLAYER is sent into the crowds, outside. There are several incidents going on in which they must resolve through battling the criminals. The PLAYER now has ICE HUDOKAI. After all have been dealt with:

An explosion is heard.

LIONE

It came from the East.

LIONE heads east into the fountain square, where several people lay dead. A note is attached to one of them.

LIONE (CONT'D)

Those who think they can control Don Lucio's plans should prepare to be controlled by HIM. No one takes down my men and gets away with it.

(Beat)

Does he mean us?!

Floods of people in black enter the fountain area.

LUCIO'S MEN

There they are! Get them!

LEE

Looks like we'll have to take 'em out, buddies. Every one of them.

LIONE

It's time for the law to handle this!

After all of the battles are over:

LUCIO'S MEN

The Don will be most displeased...

LIONE

I have to report back to the church.

Upon arrival:

PRIEST

I trust you didn't have to use that sphere too much.

LIONE

There was an incident. An explosion East. I had to deal with a lot of violent thugs. The Hudokai was useful.

PRIEST

Hudokai?

LIONE

The sphere.

PRIEST

Hmm. The church aids those who need it and I see you are a worthy bunch to uphold the law of justice. We have no need of violence, ourselves. Keep that "Hudokai". It will aid you more than the church.

LEE

All right. Who gets first dibbs?

SCENARIO 3 ENDS.

After all the scenarios, the story reconvenes on the bridge. It is now dark. Lights shimmer a pale blue. MAIN, LIONE, ALIZA [and KIM] are now all in one location on the bridge.

LIONE

We should have allocated a rendezvous for Aukaneck.

ALIZA

Shh. Do you hear that?

MAIN

Footsteps.

They look over the side of the bridge. AUKANECK. He shuffles out of the shadows and into the light of a lamppost. He turns, checking to see if anyone's following him, then continues forward.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Let's follow him.

PLAYER follows AUKANECK via the rooftops, keeping him in sight. Eventually, they reach some barrels.

A podgy body steps out into the pale light and stops. A dark cape drapes from their back. Same dark wide brimmed hat. Bony cheeks and a broad chin sharply push out of his or her dirty red skin. Two pairs of eyes carefully examine the path, the bottom pair white and the top pair black. Vertically striped shirt - black with dark blue, thin stripes, covered by a black vest littered with golden curls. Black trousers with the same golden curls. One dark boot is much longer than the other; one golden laced up to his knee whilst the other low-topped and black laced. DON LUCIO.

He or she turns towards the canal and listens. AUKANECK draws a small pen-like item.

ALIZA
(Whispered)
Is that a weapon? Is Aukaneck
planning to attack that guy?!

ALIZA kicks a barrel towards AUKANECK, from the rooftop to the ground, shocking everyone.

DON LUCIO
Curse you!

DON LUCIO runs off into the night. AUKANECK starts to run, but ALIZA jumps upon him, from the roof.

MAIN
You could've chosen an easier
descent path!

AUKANECK
You...

ALIZA
You're a wolf in sheep's clothing,
is that it?

AUKANECK
NAIVE, BRAINDEAD MORON! I aid you
and you repay me with THIS?

ALIZA
I never asked for you to help me,
WOLFY, but you came along, anyway,
waltzing off and then ready to kill
at the first sign of nightfall!

AUKANECK
WALTZING? My every intention has
always been to help you. HELP YOU!
And now you've lost the only chance-
I just can't believe your idiocy
when it comes to-

ALIZA

TRUST? How can I even begin to trust people with my heart? All I've known is deceit and the asylum's use of me, how- I just can't- HOW?!

MAIN and company end up on the ground, at long last.

MAIN

Looks like this is getting quite heated...

LIONE

...Reminds you of a certain pair, doesn't it?

AUKANECK

What on earth have I shown you, these past few days? Lies? LIES! Pah! I understand the suffering you've been through, little one. I understand it all! I took pity- How dare you talk to me about distrust!

ALIZA

What do you mean? In fact, I bet you won't even give me a clear enough response with that! You only ever talk when you feel the need to!

AUKANECK

Spiteful girl! I've told you everything YOU'VE wanted to know, so far! The only thing I can't tell you is- is...

There is a pause.

LIONE

I'm willing to bet Aliza has never been in a proper argument, before.

There is a long pause.

MAIN

I-is... Aukaneck crying?

ALIZA looks hurt. She slowly approaches AUKANECK and hugs him.

[KIM]

[What is she doing? Sharing body warmth? Analysing... "hug" terminology confirmed. I don't understand the concept.]

AUKANECK

It's my fault, really, I shouldn't have left you on the rooftops, when I did.

Pause.

ALIZA

I AM thankful that you broke me out of the asylum, that you saved me from Razz and that you came along with me to find my alters. I am thankful, very much so. However, what was I to do when you went off on your own, across Sector 6? You just left me there with these space folk. If you went off to find out something about Blake, then we should have done so all together.

LIONE

(Whispered)

Hypocrite.

AUKANECK

I suppose you're right, this IS your task, after all, any involvement of mine is purely to help you. I just want you to know that.

ALIZA

So why leave me?

AUKANECK

I lost you within the crowd of people but decided to carry on. I felt you would slow me down. So I spent the afternoon hunting down Lucio Castello after someone tipped me off that ger now owns all three theatre houses in Sector 6. The more I learnt, though, the more I disliked this mysterious character.

(Beat)

Ger owns them all because ger paid off the previous owners, illegally. Lucio is infamous around Sector 6 and has bought gis way to the top, out of Malka's reach. Ger practically rules Sector 6.

MAIN

Ger? Gis? What?

LIONE

The... rare third gender.

MAIN

Third gender?!

ALIZA

If Malka's the president and, from what I understand, president's are in charge of everything, then how is Lucio ruling this place?

AUKANECK

The people of Sector 6 call gom Don Lucio. Ger's a crime lord. What crime lords do is work illegally with a business or trade, usually in drugs or something in high demand that's outlawed. There are a lot of people who have turned against the authority in order to make such a living, thinking the world has far too many laws in its current day and age, such as crime lords and sky pirates.

LIONE

Earth is notorious for having many more laws on it than most other planets. The Galactic Preservation - the law run by the Reality Council, enforce their own laws, but individual planets are free to add additional laws on top of those. These are set out by the world leader. In this case, Malka.

AUKANECK

After gaining a vast amount of wealth, crime lords often take over other businesses by buying them out. They make more money by doing this, money which gets them everything and anything they want. Don Lucio has bought out the theatre houses, from what I heard, meaning ger gets all the money made from them.

MAIN

Opera houses... Theatre Houses... they're the same thing, aren't they?

AUKANECK

Yes.

ALIZA

(Whispered)

That was Don Lucio, wasn't it?

Silence.

AUKANECK

My aim, after finally tracking gom down and following gom, was to rob gom. Ger has plenty of money going for gom, so I stealthily followed gom until ger located a rootzle - a money machine in the wall. I needed gis pin number to access that currency; esperants. It ordinarily takes a handprint for DNA code, thereafter, but thanks to Jubal I have a penjut.

MAIN

NOT a weapon.

AUKANECK walks to a small machine in the wall.

AUKANECK

The point's magnet messes with machinery, as you saw when I deactivated that frequency chip within your hand.

MAIN

I'm sorry, I still can't get over "third gender". How do you expect me to follow everything else?

AUKANECK

I don't know my history, but a long time ago, a race from the planet Mars made themselves known to us.

[KIM]

[That's my home planet! Where Tom is...]

AUKANECK

Some of them split off and wanted to live in peace with the planet's inhabitants. The ones that remained here became the third gender, being able to breed with humans of both genders, alike. Not us anthros, though. We call the Martian gender "monufor".

MAIN

Too much talky, not enough let's go somewhere.

AUKANECK

It was a stroke of luck, however, that you distracted Lucio and only after I saw gom input gis required pin. We will need money to pay for a place to stay for the night. With money to pay for tickets into such grand theatre houses, we should be able to find your alter if he is here. Since esperants are electronic, I've taken 4800 esperants from Lucio's account. Any more and he'll suspect something. That's 3000 Chronoss. To him, that's nothing.

MAIN

You know, you could have chosen any other person to take money from.

AUKANECK

Indeed, but Lucio was necessary because of the information I was planning to get out of gom. As you all no doubt thought my penjut was a weapon, I would have also held Lucio at penjut point from behind, pretending it was a gun. I was going to ask what ger knew about new people singing at the theatre houses. Ger undoubtedly has specialist information on your alter.

ALIZA

Everyone. Blake is the one we're looking for. I'm unsure in what he looks like, but I'm guessing he has curly, dark hair. It's always what we thought he would have.

MAIN

All right. We need to move. If that Lucio guy saw any one of our faces, he could be sending men here right now. I say we head back to the balloon.

PLAYER heads back to the balloon. It isn't there.

MAIN (CONT'D)

W-where's the balloon?!

Pause.

LIONE

Stolen.

FADE TO BLACK.

The PLAYER wakes up in a hotel room with the others. There is a long pause before ALIZA speaks, in the darkness.

ALIZA

I met someone yesterday whilst we were separated. He is a resident of the city and seems to know his way around. I have his radio number, so we're able to contact him.

AUKANECK

Who is he?

ALIZA

Budgie.

They sleep the rest of the night off. MAIN wakes to find only himself in bed. Everyone else is having breakfast. Story progresses when PLAYER talks with ALIZA.

MAIN

So, what's the plan?

ALIZA

Shh!

(On her radio)

So, Budgie, will you do it?

BUDGIE

Anything for you, lass. Meet me at the residential district. I made something for you. See you then.

ALIZA

(To everyone)

We're to head North, to the residential district. I assume it doesn't matter when we leave, he'll be there somewhere.

AUKANECK

I'll bring some food items with us.

MAIN

Let's move out.

Residential District. BUDGIE is standing there outside of one of the houses converted into a small bakery. Story continues when PLAYER interacts with him.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Oh man, this guy smells like a yak took a leak on him.

ALIZA
This guy's Budgie.

Choices:

MAIN
...Sorry. Didn't mean it.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
And then the yak took a dump on him.

After choices:

BUDGIE
Hey! Who's this joker?

ALIZA
He's Mr. Nova.

BUDGIE
Well, whatever. I knew you couldn't get rid o' wee Budgie, could ya? And who's this?

ALIZA
This is Aukaneck, a companion of mine helping me find Blake.

BUDGIE
You never told me that you had a friend. I thought you was alone.

LIONE
I get the feeling he doesn't like anthros like Aukaneck...

AUKANECK
Hmph.

BUDGIE
I ain't helping if this bow wow joins us.

AUKANECK
A scruffy kid devoid of intelligent thought to escort us? This must be Budgie.

BUDGIE
How dare you!

ALIZA
Budgie, I called you so you could help us. Aukaneck is just my companion. He's here to help, too.
(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

Right now, I need your help, since
he CAN'T help, this time.

BUDGIE

Alright, lass, I'll ignore dog-
breath face, for now.

MAIN

Hey, sounds like my pet name for
you, Lione.

LIONE

Shut your face.

BUDGIE

So the red-head's Lione? Well, I
don't mind me some double-girl
action!

MAIN

I'd wager he's just jealous of
Aukaneck, not anthros.

LIONE

How much do you want to bet?

PLAYER can choose out of 50 Chronoss, 100 Chronoss or 300
Chronoss.

ALIZA

Our hot air balloon has been taken
somewhere without our knowledge,
and since we neither know the city
or who did such a thing, I was
hoping you would be able to
enlighten us.

BUDGIE

Don't you go mixing in that old
religious scock.

LIONE

(To MAIN)

Evolution has mostly come into
acceptance, as had an amalgamation
of many religions. The option of
almighty Gods and terms such as
"enlighten" have long since passed
and replaced by other theories.
Most, on this planet, believe in
"Darkness".

ALIZA

Sorry.

BUDGIE

Ain't nothing to worry about.

(Pause)

(MORE)

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

So, did you do anything that could have gotten it taken? You annoy someone, do something against the law?

LIONE

Hardly! I AM the law.

MAIN

Not here, you're not. You're just as much a criminal as we are.

BUDGIE

What's that meant to mean?

ALIZA

We left the balloon on someone else's metal mushroom.

BUDGIE

Hahaha! You mean the mooring winch. Yeah, I see. Your balloon is probably at the Castello Island Impound.

AUKANECK

Sector 6 is just Sector 6.

BUDGIE

Yeah, it don't mean the name of the impound has changed since back when Sector 6 was Venice and divided into six sestiere, savage.

LIONE

I win the bet. Cough up, Nova.

Player loses however much they bet.

ALIZA

This may be a bit much to ask, but could you take us there? We don't know the city too well-

BUDGIE

That's right, you're outsiders! Alright, Aliza, but on one condition.

[KIM]

Can we trust him? He's looking at you scarily, Aliza!

Pause.

BUDGIE

A dance.

MAIN

A dance?

ALIZA

A dance.

AUKANECK turns away, angrily.

MAIN

What's up with him? Unless... hang on, a dance? Does that mean Budgie likes Aliza? Lione, you owe me my bet money.

LIONE

A dance proves nothing.

Choices:

MAIN

We'll see...

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You hag.

LIONE

What did you call me?

After choices:

BUDGIE

Haha! Meet me just south of Sector 6 Bridge. There's a gondola depot. I have an idea.

BUDGIE walks off. PLAYER is left to explore until finding him at the gondola depot. Leaf-like gondolas scatter the canal depot.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

Gondolas. They're used to navigate the waterways across the city. They're slow and pointless. For the tourists, mostly. I know you want to try one, though.

ALIZA

Oh, but I'm no tourist.

BUDGIE

I think you ARE.

BUDGIE speaks with the smoking gondolier.

MAIN

Man, the air's so tense between Aliza and Aukaneck. Maybe I can relieve some of it.

Choices:

MAIN (CONT'D)

So. Wolves are fluffy.

AUKANECK

If you are insinuating specieal dislike, then I may have to comment on your disgustingly hairy skin and ridiculous nose.

ALIZA

Me... too?

OR

MAIN

Malka and Blake. Connection?

AUKANECK

Doubtful.

MAIN

Then why am I here, really?

ALIZA

I'd like to believe that in helping me, you're helping yourself reach your goal, too.

OR

MAIN

We all miss someone.

ALIZA

Blake... Rizumu... Jozu...

AUKANECK

Yes. I believe that is something we can all agree on. It's best not to worry, but support each other to ensure a better future.

ALIZA

Thanks, Aukaneck...

After choices:

BUDGIE

Come on, lass, it's okay to come on board, now.

MAIN

So we're just the forgotten group
of extras, now?

BUDGIE

Oh yeah... and you all come on,
too.

ALIZA excitedly boards the gondola.

GONDOLIER

You guys want to head down the
canal?

Normally, there are choices on locations to go across the
city.

BUDGIE

Nah, up, to the old Cannaregio
border on Canal Grande and then up
one of the waterways to the
vaporetti. I know it's outside your
usual route of just crossing the
canal or going up and down the
waterway, but there's extra pay in
if you do.

(To Aliza)

I trust your friend has money?

100 Chronoss is taken away from the PLAYER. Scene switches to
everyone on the gondola, side-view.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

Welcome to Canal Grande!

LIONE

I've been thinking. Not that I
doubt your decision, Aliza, but do
you think it was right to follow
Blake, first? We could have helped
you take back Rizumu first,
instead.

ALIZA

...I have often wondered that,
myself. Blake's more likely to
handle himself better outside of my
body. He's as old as me and just as
experienced. Rizumu's the younger
one. I've begun to doubt my
decision more and more...

LIONE

Children have a way of surviving.
Rizumu's just a child, from what I
understand. But without someone to
aid her, she won't survive.

MAIN
(Sarcastically)
What a nice bout of confidence for
the girl.

ALIZA
Razz said he wouldn't kill her.
This means he'll technically look
after her, but I guess it doesn't
mean he won't HARM her... I made my
decision. I must deal with the
consequences.

BUDGIE
Canal Grande is the jugular vein of
Sector 6. Without it, the city
would die.

They pass barges of food and trade.

LIONE
A canal market, huh?

BUDGIE
The canal market is normally where
I steal some of my meals from.

LIONE
A thief! I should have you
arrested!

MAIN
Give it a rest, saggy dog face.

BUDGIE
Is it so wrong to steal bread in
order to survive? No. Without it,
many of us would die, especially in
the undersector.

LIONE
...No. I guess not.

MAIN
You okay?

LIONE
Yeah, just... leave me alone.

ALIZA
I hope you intend to share that
bagged items of food goods,
Aukaneck.

AUKANECK

Yes. Budgerigar gets nothing,
however, for I took just enough
food for our group and no more.
He'll get nothing and like it.

BUDGIE

I've already eaten this morning. I
need no pity from wolf face.

Choices:

MAIN

Nice sausage, eh?

ALIZA

Tastes peppered and delicious!

OR

MAIN

Tasty cardboard, eh?

AUKANECK

*That "cardboard" is peppered
sausage. You're simply a fussy
eater.*

After choices:

LIONE

I couldn't help but notice the
stolen sausage in Budgie's mouth.

MAIN

(Sniggers)
Yeah.

LIONE

You're such a child.

BUDGIE

Good sausage, ain't it?

AUKANECK

Yes, it tastes like cooked
budgerigar.

ALIZA

(Whispering)
You aren't going to steal anything
more from Aukaneck, Budgie.

BUDGIE

(Whispering)
Only if get something out of it.

ALIZA
(Whispering)
What do you have in mind?

BUDGIE
A kiss.

ALIZA
A kiss?

BUDGIE
A kiss. Just like the one from the
undersector, only this time you
kiss back.

ALIZA
Oh. So THAT was a kiss? Fine.

PLAYER receives BREAD and SAUSAGE.

Pause. They pass a cathedral.

BUDGIE
There's one of them no churches
from old times.

GONDOLIER
That was one of the last churches
made in the world. Those devout to
their religion built it after the
conversion of other churches in
that era.

BUDGIE
Some people still go there, I
heard, but most have moved on from
any form of Christianity. They're
clinging to a dying faith.

GONDOLIER
True, but faith is still faith,
young one. Belief is worth clinging
on to.

BUDGIE
What about you?

GONDOLIER
I am one of the few, yes. Although,
there are others around Sector 6
that believe Christ is our saviour
and will save us once more. Sector
6 has always been embedded with
Christianity. No one can stamp it
out forever.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Why would the gondolier embrace
another belief when other ones have
more substantial evidence to
believe in?

(Out loud)

Belief's always something worth
clinging on to, even when about to
give up. I clung on to the dream
that I would one day escape the
asylum and I did,

just as I cling on to the belief
that I will find Blake, Rizumu and
Razz.

MAIN

And I believe the past is the past.
It's up to us to fight for the
future we want, despite how dark
the road ahead is.

ALIZA

Darkness exists just as much as a
God does.

GONDOLIER

I considered that at one point,
when times were tough and the rise
in water level scared off tourists,
but it wasn't what ma and pa wanted
me to believe in. I didn't turn my
back on them and I didn't turn my
back on Christ. Just when I started
to believe whole heartedly, again,
Christ showed me the light, whereas
Darkness never could.

BUDGIE

Some say my ma used to believe in
what you do, and she DIED
believing. I turned my back on that
and here I am LIVING.

GONDOLIER

What does that say for you?

ALIZA

So, you prefer to believe that
Jesus was the son of God and that
he led everyone to the righteous
path and died for everyone's sins?

(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

Even though you know of Darkness
and that it is the void that all
comes from and all returns to, that
Darkness alone is what guides our
instincts and everything else is
merely influence from another, you
choose to believe in Christ?

GONDOLIER

Darkness is nothing.

ALIZA

As is God.

GONDOLIER

God is everything.

ALIZA

And yet can't be proved.

GONDOLIER

And neither can Darkness.

MAIN

I've been to the void. Trust me,
there's not much there.

[KIM]

[Belief is nothing but false hope,
but we all choose to stick with our
own values. It keeps us living.]

LIONE

This conversation's going nowhere.
Both religions as are valid as each
other.

ALIZA

Dr. Jozu used to tell me a poem.
"Matter great and matter small
returns to matter dark in all."

GONDOLIER

How do you figure that?

ALIZA

Since we're born from the Darkness,
live in darkness and when we die,
we return to Darkness; which is
beyond our reach in this dimension.
It is the void between existences
where nothing exists. But there
can't be nothing, there's always
something. That something is
Darkness.

MAIN

That something is a little town,
actually.

LIONE

Hmm, that makes me wonder if
there's any connection between
Darkness and Dark Matter... the
stuff Hudokai is made of.

GONDOLIER

Darkness is just like heaven and
hell - no one can prove of their
existence, but we believe there is
something, none-the-less.

MAIN

...

Scene shifts to PLAYER being able to control the gondola
through the canals. Story continues when PLAYER goes through
an alley to the EAST.

MAIN (CONT'D)

I spot a poster. Looks interesting!

POSTER

LA FENICE (FENIX) THEETA PRESENTS:

LAGOON OF LIFE

Feeturen the operatic riveten voice
of Blake Castello, Sector 6's new
talent!

Feel the waves of sorrow clutch yur
en no heert,

Feel the wash of joy seize yur en
no soul,

Feel the water of life invigorate
yur en no mind,

Feel the voice titillate yur en
senses!

TONIRHT AND EVERY NIRHT AT 6PM TO
8PM

Curtesy of the no Castello family.

BUDGIE

What do your eyes see?

AUKANECK

Blake.

BUDGIE
I didn't ask you, wolf face.

ALIZA
(Excitedly)
The one I've been looking for, he's here. He's at the Phoenix Theatre, just as I was hoping!

BUDGIE
I see where this is going and my reply is yeah, but only on one condition. A date.

ALIZA
A date?

BUDGIE
A date.

AUKANECK
A date!

BUDGIE
A date.

ALIZA
(In thought)
A fruity date will be easy to find on the market stalls.

AUKANECK
This simply gets worse and worse.

ALIZA
You don't think I can do it? Fine, then. A date it is!

MAIN
There's no denying it, now. Lione, give me my bet money.

LIONE
Scock.

PLAYER receives their money back.

MAIN
And the money you actually owe me.

PLAYER receives the amount they bet.

GONDOLIER
You guys are coming to an end of the trip after I turn this corner.

They turn the corner and are let off.

AUKANECK

The ocean?

BUDGIE

That's where we're headin'. That's
Castello Island, across the waves.

The gondolier moores the gondola up on a metal mushroom.

GONDOLIER

They used to call it Island of San
Michele, or even more apt, Island
of the Dead, since it used to be
used as one big graveyard before
the practice of burning bodies
became mandatory.

BUDGIE

Yeah, it still has the graves of
those left there, though, even if
they're a couple of hundred years
old now, at least. Other parts of
that island are used as a prison,
or the impound we're going to.

GONDOLIER

Creepy place, that. You'll need a
vaporetto to get there - one of
those large sea boats.

PLAYER can explore. Story continues when they talk with a
vaporetto owner.

VAPORETTI

You want to head to Murano or-

BUDGIE

Castello Island.

VAPORETTI

But no one goes to Castello Island,
anymore.

BUDGIE

It's the impound we want, there.

VAPORETTI

Since barely anyone goes there and
you're so few in number, it will
cost you extra.

BUDGIE

(To ALIZA)

I trust your friends still have
money?

PLAYER pays VAPORETTI 300 Chronoss to pass.

MAIN

I feel robbed.

Everyone boards the VAPORETTO and journeys across the sea.

ALIZA

The island's called Castello island. I'm assuming there's some relation to Lucio Castello and Blake Castello?

BUDGIE

No, not really. Castello's just an old name for one of the sestiere Sector 6 used to have. It used to be split into six sections, or something like that. Lots of us locals still use some of those names to let others know where things are and such. We called those sections sestiere; Santa Croce, Dorsoduro, San Polo, San Marco, Cannaregio and Castello. Castello Island is just a leftover name from that time. Some have it as a surname, too. I ain't sure who this Lucio Castello fella is, though.

ALIZA

(In thought)

I guess people don't know Don Lucio by his full name as readily as they do his criminal name...

BUDGIE

I'm looking forward to that date, sweetcheeks.

ALIZA

It will be fruity.

BUDGIE

You're making me drool!

They arrive at the island. Grave stones. Moss. Fog. PLAYERS can explore this little section before entering a tiny wooden double-doored building marked 'Impound'. A large metal fence shoots out from either side of its wooden frame, encasing the impound grounds. A clock ticks inside the small hut. A hallway is made of two counters either-side.

PLAYER enters a yard full of scrap and impounded goods. The balloon awaits them. An agent drops down from the sky and onto AUKANECK. The wolf lies unconscious.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

What in Darkness...?

AGENT

(Over com radio)

The wolf has been needled. I shall have him by your feet within the hour, Don.

ALIZA

(Growling)

No, you won't.

AGENT

Perhaps you'll have an example tonight, after all, Don.

MAIN

That's one of the Don's agents!

ALIZA

I know! I'm not stupid! You better not have sold us out to Don Lucio, Budgie!

BUDGIE

What do you take me for?!

ALIZA

Was it money he promised you?

BUDGIE

Money?

ALIZA

Yes! Was it? How much? Oh, you're just like the rest!

ALIZA rushes to AUKANECK. MAIN heads towards the AGENT.

MAIN

I've got this.

AGENT

No one move.

ALIZA

Jozu had once taught me that sometimes we find friends that become our own family through bonding, as comrades. He called them "nakama". Aukaneck certainly feels like that, to me, and you hurt him!

AGENT

This needle is coated with poison enough to knock you out. Don't move.

MAIN
Sounds like a threat.

FOUR other AGENTS sneak out of the shadows and head towards them.

AGENT
Wait. I'll handle the wolf. You deal with these two, or at least the girl. I don't want them hindering the Don's assignment to us. When you're done, bring their beaten bodies to the Don for tonight's performance. He will be delighted to have at least one "example".

The AGENTS advance. The AGENT with blonde hair takes AUKANECK away. BUDGIE backs down, scared.

ALIZA
You fluffing traitor, Budgie!

MAIN and LIONE fight two AGENTS. In fight dialogue:

MAIN
Oh? Since when did you get some shiny new Hudokai?

LIONE
When I felt the need to "cool" down the situations you get us into.

MAIN
I'd rather heat them up, thanks.

If KIM is in the party, she fights an AGENT alone. ALIZA fights one AGENT on her own, too. After defeating him, the other three rush to her and beat her up.

AGENT #2
Now, as long as we don't kill you, we can beat you up in any way we like.

BUDGIE rushes in and helps. They fight the four AGENTS. After the fight, the AGENTS get back up.

MAIN
These guys are resilient! Fighting's not always the best solution. We'll use the balloon to fly away and chase Aukaneck!

BUDGIE runs to the balloon.

ALIZA

If we're to escape, turn the steam
wheel under the lantern! Push the
piston in!

The balloon floats off. MAIN, LIONE [and KIM] jump into the
basket. ALIZA jumps onto the vibrating machine below the
basket.

BUDGIE

If we don't pick up speed, they'll-

ALIZA

I know!

BUDGIE

You want help, lass?

BUDGIE pulls ALIZA into the basket and the balloon flies off.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

Don't I get my kiss, now, for...
you know, helping out?

ALIZA

You have caused anarchy with your
idiocy!

BUDGIE

What?

ALIZA

"What?" You tell me! Ratting out
our location to Don Lucio, oh very
clever! Probably through the com
radio while "talking" to the
gondolier and waiting for us to
board, no less!

MAIN

Here we go, again.

ALIZA

You be quiet, spaceman!

BUDGIE

You're blaming me for that? I ain't
even touched my com radio since
meating up with you. Plus, Don
Lucio and his agents terrify me.

ALIZA

Oh, what scock and bull.

BUDGIE

They do! You saw me back there! I
couldn't do anything.
(MORE)

BUDGIE (CONT'D)

It's best to just obey the Don and his goons when passing them. Safer that way. Their hold on the city scares me.

ALIZA

Well, who do you suppose knew that the Don was after Aukaneck and knew of our location?

MAIN

The gondolier.

LIONE

He had spoken on his com radio just after Budgie had told him take us to Castello Island. Such a slow vehicle gave the agents plenty of time to reach the impound before us.

MAIN

In fact, it was rather worrying that the gondolier knew the Don was after Aukaneck. Who knows how many others in Sector 6 support the Don?

BUDGIE

It's all right, Aliza.

ALIZA

I'll make it up to you with that date.

LIONE

There he is, below! He's taken the vaporetto we travelled on.

ALIZA

Take the controls! I'm going down.

MAIN

And so's that agent with the blonde hair.

MAIN and ALIZA jump onto the vaporetto roof. Quick Time Events to dodge bullets. They descend on the AGENT.

AGENT

No one messes with Don Lucio and gets away with it! Prepare yourselves!

BOSS FIGHT 3: AGENT RUFUS

Battle against the AGENT with MAIN and ALIZA. After the fight, he lies unconscious.

ALIZA
We're not safe, here!

MAIN
I don't know how to control one of
these sea buses! Let's get out of
here before we crash.

ALIZA
Help me with Aukaneck.

They hop aboard the lowered balloon with AUKANECK's
unconscious body. There is a crash as the vaporetto crashes.

MAIN
Phew. We made it. I don't know
about you lot, but I'm about ready
for a drink after that madness.

ALIZA
I call Cafe Canal.

PLAYER lands at the landing bay.

ALIZA (CONT'D)
I'll go on ahead. Aukaneck needs to
walk off his grogginess. Just look
for me and you'll find the cafe.

ALIZA, AUKANECK and BUDGIE leave. Story continues when they
go to Cafe Canal and talk to ALIZA.

ALIZA (CONT'D)
Why? You knew of Blake's induction
into the theatre and, like most
that live here in Sector 6, knew
that Blake was Don Lucio's new
favourite in his rise to stardom.
You'd bitten your lip when I asked
you back when we first met.

BUDGIE
I didn't want you to worry your
little heart out knowing he
belonged to the Don.

They all sit around a table. AUKANECK has a tyganara drink.

BUDGIE (CONT'D)
(Whispering)
You know, we could just have our
date, right now. We need something
to wind down after the day's
horror.

MAIN
So we get here just to be told we
have to leave, again?
(MORE)

MAIN (CONT'D)

I can't help but feel used since
being in this city.

ALIZA

Sorry. I am indebted to all of you
for helping me out so much.

BUDGIE

Just that I'm getting a date out of
it as a reward!

ALIZA

I don't have the fruit for you,
yet, Budgie

BUDGIE

(Chuckling)

No, a date. You and me, a table for
two, drinks together and all that
date stuff that comes with it.

ALIZA

What we're doing now, you mean?

BUDGIE

Yeah, exactly! I ain't gonna lie,
Aliza, I think you and I could
work. A kiss?

ALIZA

A kiss.

They kiss.

MAIN

Spare me from the mush. Blake's
poster said he was performing at
6pm. I'll meet you outside the
Phoenix Theatre just before then.

BUDGIE

It's in the old San Marco district.

ALIZA

Thank you again, Nova.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when PLAYER heads to
the Phoenix Theatre.

Low steps lead up to a pair of immense double doors, adorned
with a blazing curvaceous bird. A pair of white pillars stand
either side of the staircase's top, holding up a wide balcony
above, shadowing shelter below. Three burning red flags.
Dirty white walls. Great glass windows. Two statues stand
above the balcony, one missing an arm and their head, the
other looking relatively new; Don Lucio. Golden writing curls
at the top of the building, a fiery bird in the middle, "La
Fenice Theeta".

Two AGENTS stand at the front door.

ALIZA (CONT'D)
No tickets. What are we going to do?

Choices:

MAIN
We're going to sneak in.

BUDGIE
N-no way!

AUKANECK
By the balcony.

BUDGIE
You're both crazy!

ALIZA
Actually, I was going to suggest using our masks.

AUKANECK
I'm going through the balcony. I can't enter in my state and with no mask of my own.

LIONE
We don't all have fancy masks and Carnivale costumes.

AUKANECK
The flags would be of use to all of us. We steal them. We wear them. We sneak in.

MAIN
Nice. I'll head up there and help out.

ALIZA
Make sure you're not seen when you're up there, though.

AUKANECK
We'll find a way to the balcony through the rooftops. Let's scout the area.

OR:

MAIN
We're going to bust in.

BUDGIE
N-no way!

AUKANECK

Through the main entrance?

MAIN

I don't see any other way.

AUKANECK

I was hoping this would come in use. This is a "volatile package". It's essentially a gift-wrapped explosion.

MAIN

Good. I'll dress up in my award-winning Carnivale Costume...

LIONE

How the he-

[KIM]

[Don't ask.]

MAIN

...And then pretend to be in a group of other dressed up guest. Then, once in, I'll make an explosion with that package, causing a distraction. You all run in.

AUKANECK

There's no need to dress up if we're going to "bust in". We will fight the agents and continue ripping our way in.

MAIN

(Sighing)

I'll never get to use my Carnivale costume.

After options:

BUDGIE

Y-you can't! You... you'll be found out!

ALIZA

WE won't be. Not if we go about this carefully.

PLAYER resumes control. Depending on their option, the PLAYER will either climb to the rooftops and reach the flags or fight the AGENTS. Either way, after the option, one of the AGENTS will say:

AGENT
You here for Blake?

If Option 1:

MAIN
Yeah.

AGENT
Stop messing back there. If you
finished smoking, then get in
before the show starts. Stupid
dancers.

If Option 2:

MAIN
Yeah, and to beat you guys up!

They fight.

After Options:

A red carpet hallway, trailing off in both left and right directions. White walls. Brown double-doors ahead. Either side of the doors are a set of signs, one pointing to the right saying "backstage" and one pointing left saying "balconies".

If PLAYER went with Option 1, they will go through the double-doors:

MAIN (CONT'D)
Hm. Maybe we should... just sit and
wait back here until we spot Blake.

AUKANECK
Why wait behind after our onslaught
at the entrance?

MAIN
This hall is full of people. We
stand no chance if they attack in
support of the Don.

LIONE
And THEY stand no chance if they
get involved with an attack from
both sides. Many innocents would
die. I won't allow that.

If PLAYER went with Option 2:

MAIN
The doors are already locked!

AGENT

Wait, you need to head right.

BUDGIE

(Whispered)

We can't head backstage!

MAIN

(Whispered)

I know, but what else can we do?

They head to the backstage dressing room.

BUDGIE

There's a ROUTINE?!

ALIZA

It certainly looks like it.

BLAKE

All right dancers, tonight the Don wants you to go out there and break a leg or two. Not literally, like two nights ago, but metaphorically. For those who don't even know what metaphorically means, I suggest you just leave right now.

Two dancers head for the door.

BLAKE (CONT'D)

You really can be a bunch of idiots, sometimes. I meant that in sarcastic humour. So anyway, if you mess up, then it means I look bad. So even if you don't do this right for the Don, do it right for ME.

ALIZA rushes forward and into the crowd of dancers.

MAIN

Surely not... Blake?

Everyone is shooed past the curtain and into the crowd.

ALIZA

I saw him. I saw him and I lost him. We'll wait here until we see him again. We have to.

MAIN

Well, at least if we sit here we'll keep a low profile until then.

Five incredible white and gold frames horizontally lie across either side of the huge hall. Small, vertical, golden pillars support their structure at yard intervals, illuminated by golden light.

An amazing light ball of light balls hangs from the middle of the gold patterned ceiling, with some form of metal holding all the balls together in a circular shape. A crimson carpet with crimson seats cover the floor. At the front of the theatre hall sits a raised stage beneath a waterfall of black curtain. Tied above it is an additional orange curtain, already raised for the performance.

DON LUCIO walks onto stage.

DON LUCIO

Good evening and welcome to my
Phoenix Theatre!

There is cheering.

MAIN

Don Lucio. Things are going to get
tricky.

DON LUCIO

Thank you, thank you. I needn't
remind you of my eternal love for
this city and its people. Ever
since my inception into the
theatre, I gave it just as much
love as I do my people, wanting to
give you all a treat every night. I
even offer upcoming stars a chance
at fame, such as our very own
Blake, who then became part of my
family; the Castello family. I look
after all my children as they look
after me. But every so now and
again my children slip up, or my
people decide they would rise
against me or my city. Sometimes
they fail time and time again.

DANCER

This means...

DON LUCIO

So, I have an "example".

AUKANECK

I don't like the tense atmosphere,
suddenly.

The BLONDE AGENT is lowered by rope from the curtains.

DON LUCIO

Rufus came back to me empty handed,
around midday. His instructions
were to capture a wolf menace which
had tried to attack me after last
night's performance. Now, I want
this white wolf captured.

(MORE)

DON LUCIO (CONT'D)

An enemy of the Don is an enemy of the city. So I implore you all that if you see such a savage foe, you are to capture him and bring him to me, otherwise...

LUCIO pulls out a sword.

MAIN

Is that... a sword?

LUCIO stabs the BLONDE AGENT, RUFUS, with his sword.

ALIZA

No. No! That's horrifying. I can't watch, anymore! This is worse than Razz's slaughter on the aerotrain.

AUKANECK

Aliza's really shaken up...

DON LUCIO

And so, without further ado, I give you Blake Castello and the Lagoon of Life!

The lights dim and one silver light shines above stage.

Loud footsteps echo around the opera house as a figure mounts the stage, his dark grey coat trailing behind his calves and his large black shoulder pad covering his right shoulder. A frilly white shirt clearly visible with his earthy brown sash covering his waist. The same black trousers with golden curls adorn his legs as they do DON LUCIO, along with smart black shoes. Dark curly hair. BLAKE.

BLAKE

(Singing)

Sweet, yet bitter, water of strife,

O, can you heal a mortal's life?

Sector 6 requests your presence,

Two households feud without penance,

Swords spit sparks but this king's crying,

Citizens of his life dying,

Give those dead a second chance,

Give those who live a severed lance.

Someone dressed in blue rushes on stage with a mask on.

DANCER

Hey, you're on next. Quick, get on stage!

MAIN

W-what?!

DANCER

Just get up there!

PLAYER must go on stage and follow QTEs to stay in time on stage.

BLAKE

(Singing)

Migliaccio's household versus

Dao Mu Nu's household curses,

Dons of rising crime lord virtues;

Drugs, the theatre, raping virgins,

Fighting street wars in cold
Darkness,

Bloodied ballet from old Harkness,

Clarity of Lake Lunar,

Give me life for the future.

The DANCERS get up and push ALIZA along the central aisle down to the stage.

ALIZA

EEP.

BLAKE

There must be unison! Thus, I
invite the feuding families to a
dance that will intertwine hearts
and both mourn and celebrate young
Francesco's death.

The PLAYER turns to ALIZA. They must follow the steps given to them by the DANCER. The stage is flooded with DANCERS.

BLAKE (CONT'D)

(Singing)

A funeral for un

And a rebirth for deux,

Two families unite in lagoon,

The dancing of the heart

(MORE)

BLAKE (CONT'D)

And the distance apart

Breeds hatred and darkened thoughts
unto.

ALIZA trips. A couple of audience members chuckle.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Silly girl, keep going and don't
let something so ridiculous break
your morale!

BUDGIE

(Whispering)

Don't worry, lass. I'll lead.

ALIZA

(Whispering)

I did promise you a dance, didn't
I?

BUDGIE

A dance?

ALIZA

A dance.

QTEs with ALIZA and BUDGIE. The "dead" body in blue gets up.
It's AUKANECK. He sings the next verse.

AUKANECK

(Singing)

Sir Blake, your life's forfeit

From splitting of alters,

A third of your lifespan is what's
left,

Aliza's here to seek

Of union she'll speak,

Family united stops your deaths!

BLAKE is alarmed, but continues.

DANCER

Is that how it went...?

DON LUCIO

(To AGENTS)

The show must go on. Dispose of
that blasted wolf! There are kids
in the audience. Make his death
"family friendly".

BLAKE
 (Singing)
 Be neither chan nor kun;
 You stand on equal feet,
 Spread your phoenix wings
 throughout the mire,
 Don't sink to depths below,
 Don't put on petty shows,
 Soar with talons linked is my
 desire!

AGENTS swarm the stage and replace the DANCERS.

AGENT
 (Singing)
 A gatecrasher has been spotted,
 Let us eliminate him within the
 time allotted!

BLAKE
 Urgh, that was terrible
 improvisation... and singing.

AUKANECK
 Here they come.

The have an on-stage battle with all the agents. Eventually, AUKANECK grabs ALIZA and dances with her, unconscious bodies all over the stage.

An AGENT and DON LUCIO stare in horror from their balcony.

AGENT
 Unconscious is "family friendly",
 right?

DON LUCIO
 How much do you value your life?

ALIZA
 I didn't know you could dance.

AUKANECK
 There's a lot you don't know about
 me.

An explosion rips the ceiling of the theatre apart. Everyone runs screaming. Debris falls everywhere. A girl with a purple scarf and black, wild hair descends by a steam-powered jet-pack.

PIRATE GIRL

Bad evening, gentlemen, and welcome
to the greatest show the Phoenix
has ever had!

DON LUCIO

How dare she desecrate my theatre!
Destroy the girl!!!

PIRATE GIRL

Let me show you the finale, then,
spoil sport.

MAIN

Blake! We must grab him and run,
NOW!

ALIZA approaches the groggy BLAKE, still on stage.

BLAKE

Unnggh...

ALIZA

Blake. Blake, it's me, Aliza.

BLAKE

Not now, Aliza!

ALIZA

(In thought)
He must've just thought he was in
my headspace.

BUDGIE

A-Aliza... Please don't... wait up
for me...

BUDGIE's legs are crushed under debris.

ALIZA

Oh no, Budgie...

MAIN

You all right?

LIONE

Stupid question, Nova.

ALIZA

You're...

BUDGIE

Yeah, yeah. I'm... fine.

(Pause)

Listen... I can't move my legs...

ALIZA
(Whispering)
You'll live.

LIONE
Aliza, I don't think-

ALIZA
You may not be able to walk again,
but you'll live, Budgie.

BUDGIE
You still... don't know much...
about the world... So just leave
me... I'll be fine... focus on
Blake.

DON LUCIO
Are you all USELESS?! KILL HER!

AGENTS struggle against the PIRATE GIRL, now in possession of
BLAKE.

MAIN
You're not taking him!

PIRATE GIRL
Oh, I am.

The PIRATE GIRL blasts up and through the ceiling, AGENTS
shooting away at her.

LIONE
There's no doubt about it. She's a
sky pirate.

MAIN
We're going after him!

ALIZA
Hang in there, Blake, just hang in
there!

They run out of the theatre.

AUKANECK
We must head for the balloon if we
are to reach the sky pirate's ship.

MAIN
First, I think we should stock up
on useful items and equipment.

AUKANECK
Time is of the essence!

The PLAYER has 5 minutes to explore the city, buy any last
items and reach the balloon.

If 5 minutes are up:

AUKANECK (CONT'D)
The sky pirate ship! It's... Taking
off!

ALIZA
Blake! Now we'll never know where
he is. All is lost.

GAME OVER.

When PLAYER reaches the balloon within the time limit:

AUKANECK
Where's the budgerigar?

There is a pause.

Choices:

MAIN
I don't think he'll ever walk
again.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
He's dead.

ALIZA
*No... he's just incapacitated
enough to disable further travel
with us.*

After options:

AUKANECK
I see. Let's waste no more time.

They get in the basket and the balloon rises.

MAIN
Did we pack this much luggage?

They reach the flying sky pirate ship.

PIRATE GIRL
State your business!

ALIZA
My brother. You have kidnapped my
brother. I want him back.

PIRATE
Strong-tongued but weak thought.

PIRATE GIRL

Those who speak their mind get
killed.

ALIZA

S-so tell me, who was it that spoke
their mind and kidnapped Blake?

PIRATE

Captain Baretto's, of course.

The PIRATES, aborad the sky pirate ship, separate down the middle to reveal a single figure. A black nose sits dryly at the end of a muzzle. Smoky grey fur covers his face and the one hand he has. A crop of messy hair sits atop his head, black and wild. He has one brown eye whilst the other is covered in a black eye patch; a scar sliding down the right side of his head from top to bottom, across his eye. His chest of fur shows through a lengthy brown coat. All of his clothes look tattered and well-worn, including his patched up trousers of a light grey colour. One brown hand emerges from his left sleeve, the other sleeve empty and armless, dangling in the wind. CAPTAIN BARETTO.

LIONE

I... think it would be safe to
pretend to be at their mercy. We
are now their prisoners.

Choices:

MAIN

Okay.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

No. We're going to fight!

PIRATE GIRL

Stop them scurvy demons!

PLAYER is given control and can explore the ship, fighting the pirate crew. Eventually, they will be captured by the pirate girl.

After Options:

Everyone is tied up and presented in front of Captain Baretto.

ALIZA

You have my brother and we want him
back. Bring him out.

PIRATE GIRL

Who sent you?

Choices:

MAIN
We sent ourselves.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Jubal sent us.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Don Lucio sent us.

After Choices:

PIRATE GIRL
The captain doesn't welcome any of
the Dons' families on board.

ALIZA
I don't belong to any family but
Blake's.

PIRATE GIRL
He's a Castello.

MAIN
No, he's just been branded by Don
Lucio.

ALIZA
He's a Legion, like me.

CAPTAIN BARETTO nods and the PIRATE GIRL walks into the
cabin.

MAIN
(In a hushed voice)
Why isn't the captain speaking?

AUKANECK
(Also hushed)
He appears to have a large scar
across his throat. I don't think he
can speak at all.

The PIRATE GIRL returns with BLAKE.

ALIZA
Blake!

BLAKE
Fluff me!

PIRATE GIRL
This girl says-

BLAKE

This "girl"'s name is Aliza and I'm certain she is a woman and not younger than YOU.

BLAKE is thrown to the floor with the others.

PIRATE GIRL

You adults always think you know better. So tell us then, she says you en have another surname than Castello. What is it?

BLAKE

Legion, my sister and I share the name Legion.

ALIZA

Which is why we're leaving together.

CAPTAIN BARETTO gets out of his chair and kicks ALIZA backwards. The crew cheers. BARETTO produces a small knife and cuts through the air. He then looks at BLAKE.

MAIN

A tiny knife to cut the air with. Cute. If that's the best weapon he has, I don't think we've got any problem taking the captain down.

ALIZA

(Squeaking)

No.

MAIN

No?

LIONE

The knife's not for us. It's for him. For Blake.

AUKANECK

(Grunts)

ALIZA

He's going to take Blake's voice!

BLAKE

You're scocking me. There's absolutely no way I'd let you do that to me! Here, Aliza, take your weapons and cut yourselves free!

BLAKE throws them at the PLAYER.

MAIN

All right, we're free. Let's get this party started!

The PLAYER is able to explore the ship, again, and fight off the pirate crew. Eventually, they are captured.

PIRATE GIRL

We're nice guys really. We're doing you a favour whilst with us; the captain never kills a crewmate like the Don does when they fail him. You'll be silent, but kept safe from Malka, still.

BLAKE

Son of a- You know, you sky pirates are nothing but Darkness. You and the Don aren't that far apart, yet you are. You both spite the abundance of planet laws from Malka and choose to live lawless lives of your own. Yet, the Don gives people a chance, makes a family of those he trusts, looks after his city when the Aqua Alter occurs. He gave me a home and a life to lead; the one I always wanted. Then you bastards decide to crash in, take me away from all of that and rip away the thing I committed myself to after a life of only being able to think about such luxuries; my voice!

The PIRATE GIRL turns her back on BLAKE.

PIRATE

He ain't no crewmate of ours.

CAPTAIN BARETTO draws his knife and takes a few small steps towards BLAKE. He then LEAPS on BLAKE. ALIZA shuffles towards them before falling over.

ALIZA

Blake...

BLAKE

ALIZA! Aliza... help... me!

AUKANECK

Darkness!

AUKANECK tries to head towards BARETTO, but is beaten to a pulp by the PIRATES. Pause.

LIONE

He's dead.

ALIZA starts to cry.

ALIZA
(Sobbing)
Bring... him back...

MAIN
What's even more disgusting is
Blake's throat being held in
Baretto's hand.

VERO
I trust you know of Lawful Act 14?

VERO appears from the shadows. All PIRATES hold guns up to him.

VERO (CONT'D)
Do not choke me with such folly.
You all are the villains, here; you
destroyed part of a national
treasure, the Phoenix Theatre.
Regardless of not in whether or not
it belonged to a criminal,
president Malka decided to leave
such a relic and city in Luccio's
capable hands. Lawful Act 14
declares "the damage of another's
property condemns the one who
damaged it to a fine, Baretto.

PIRATE GIRL
We don't deal with the law.

VERO
And look - a reunion. Volts can
harm a person, but not kill them,
don't make me have to use force. To
not pay any Esperants means exile.

PIRATE GIRL
How did you even get on board?

VERO
Oh, the aerotrain is most useful. I
whizzed to Sector 6 as soon as the
president and I heard word that a
certain white wolf and his female
accomplice had been sighted with
some rogues. Upon my arrival I am
informed of the balloon they were
seen to be travelling in just
earlier this day. We have leads all
over the world and have been
looking for this bunch for a few
days, now. I eventually found their
balloon upon searching and waited
for them to return, this evening.
(MORE)

VERO (CONT'D)

However, upon your attack of the Phoenix, I decided to stow away in their balloon in order to have a chat with you and... help you out.

MAIN

I knew we had too much luggage!

PIRATE GIRL

And how do you, a government dog, plan to help us out? We enjoy our fun without your interference.

VERO

Lawful act 101; "any criminal may be excused of their most recent crime if they hand over another wanted criminal to the government, in which their most recent crime is passed onto the one handed over."

BARETTO jumps and gives the okay signal.

VERO (CONT'D)

Very well, your crime of damaging the Phoenix Theatre has been passed on to this despicable girl and the white wolf, who are already under charge for attacking the president.

VERO turns to ALIZA and the PLAYER.

VERO (CONT'D)

With two charges, you do not get a chance to pay the fine for the damage. You all go straight to exile.

MAIN

That's a sentence! It's like being condemned to a large prison.

VERO

A very LARGE prison. Exile in the irradiated land of America.

FADE TO BLACK.

PLAYER awakens in a brown, irradiated land, full of deathly green fog.

AUKANECK

Two days. You were out for that entire duration.

MAIN

Gas? Where's Lione?

AUKANECK

We were all separated on this continent. I found you. They're probably dead, by now.

MAIN

I doubt that, somehow. I'm gonna go find them. It's impossible odds, but... it's better than waiting around for death. You coming?

AUKANECK

...

MAIN

I'll take that as a no, then.

AUKANECK

Wait. I've been feeding you Ash Berries to keep you alive. The berries counteract the poisonous atmosphere for a short while. If you're to stay alive, you'll need to search and consume them at regular intervals.

MAIN

I'll keep that in mind.

AUKANECK

I think you're a dead man walking, but if you do return, make sure it's with everyone. Now... leave me to my thoughts...

PLAYER resumes control. They will have to collect ASH BERRIES in various locations before their on-going poison and timer kills them. Eventually, they find one of the other characters. The order the PLAYER finds them is down to where ever they search, first.

When LIONE:

MAIN

Saggy face!

LIONE

Don't make me arrest you for insulting an officer of the law.

MAIN

Aren't you glad to see me?

LIONE

...

MAIN

Look, we need to get everyone back to Aukaneck. He's waiting for us.

When ALIZA:

ALIZA

Nova! You're alive!

MAIN

Likewise. So you've figured out the berries, too?

ALIZA

Only from hunger, though.

MAIN

Come with me and we'll find the others. Aukaneck's alive and waiting for us to the East.

When KIM:

MAIN (CONT'D)

How's my little girl?

KIM

Nova... is that you?

MAIN

You're burning up.

KIM

I... haven't had the strength... to find more berries. Tom would shake... his head if he... saw me.

MAIN goes over to a bush and picks her a berry.

MAIN

Here, take this.

KIM

Thank you. Where's fluffy?

MAIN

Aukaneck's alive, don't worry. He's waiting for us. We've just got to find everyone and head back there.

KIM

I think... I'm strong enough to walk, again. Let's go.

When PLAYER gets back to AUKANECK's camp:

MAIN

Honey, we're home.

AUKANECK

I never expected you to return.

ALIZA

Aukaneck... I'm... happy to see you, again. Really.

MAIN

I'm guessing that means we now need supplies for at least 4 people.

AUKANECK

We need wood, mushrooms, blankets, flint and meat for a good camp for the night. I'll come with you and help search for the necessary items.

PLAYER must find WOOD, MUSHROOMS, BLANKETS and FLINT around. MEAT can only be found by fighting the NANNAROTH behemoth to the very WEST of the map.

AUKANECK (CONT'D)

That sorts out the meat. When we have everything, head back to my campsite.

When back, everyone sits around the small lake nearby and around the fire they have created.

ALIZA

I would understand if we were simply taken to Malka and judged accordingly, but we weren't.

AUKANECK

...

LIONE

They'll still come for us. I don't think it's over.

ALIZA

No, they left us here to die.

AUKANECK

Pessimism will get you killed.

ALIZA

I'm already dead.

MAIN

Weren't YOU pessimistic about finding the others, wolfy?

Pause.

AUKANECK

When we set out to find your
alters, Aliza, you had hope.
Despite all the odds, you had that
and it spurred you on. Now what do
you have?

ALIZA

I lost everything...

MAIN

I think if that were true, you
would have committed suicide.

Pause.

ALIZA

...I have you. All of you.

AUKANECK

(Voice cracking)

And do I spur you on?

ALIZA

...Yes. You spur me to live. I feel
with you with me, I can still find
Rizumu.

A melted human covered in rusted armour, holding a pipe,
stands metres away from them.

MAIN

W-what the?

AUKANECK

Run.

MAIN

Where?!

AUKANECK

To the dilapidated building on the
other side of the lake! We can't
take these guys. They're much
stronger than the others!

PLAYER runs to the broken house.

ALIZA

Let's hide in the cupboard!

AUKANECK

Are you mad?!

MAIN

I don't see any other place!

They climb in. QTEs for breath control. Gunshots make the creature run away. They jump out.

AUKANECK

That was the damage of Malka's toxic waste.

ALIZA

And that's why Jubal's against the president.

MAIN

Great to know America is the dumping ground for toxic waste.

ALIZA

I don't see any benefit in toxic waste power. You mentioned nuclear power created it, years back, but I simply don't understand why the people of the past just didn't stick to alternative means like the steam we use now.

AUKANECK

Time. Nuclear power was the easy way out and humans only thought about the then and there. If they thought more about the future and beyond their individual lives, I don't think this would have occurred. Steam power is more work and time consuming to make machinery for and activate. This was a problem back when coal and other fossil fuels were around and still remains a problem in our heated water systems to make steam. It takes time to for the machinery to vibrate enough to heat up. When it does, it creates steam from the heated water, but it isn't immediate like the continuous energy from nuclear power. The toxic waste, left over, can be used in a similar way, with similar properties. That wasn't possible back then, but it is now.

MAIN

The people from the past sound small-minded.

LIONE

What a small-minded thing to say.

ALIZA

That creature... that will happen
to us if we remain here.

[KIM]

Can anyone else hear shouting?

Shouting and gunshots are heard. MAIN and AUKANECK head to the broken window. MALKA and a battalion of bodyguards march towards the location. The melted human creature runs towards MALKA, only to be shot to ribbons by the bodyguards.

MALKA

Keep moving! I'm set to transmit
across the globe at 7:00pm Grey
House time on the last day of
February, so we need to find some
quickly!

AUKANECK

Toxic waste.

ALIZA

No doubt she wants to show it off
and try and prove of its power
efficiency first-hand to the world.

MAIN

They're heading this way.

Choices:

MAIN (CONT'D)

We can take 'em!

AUKANECK

That would be suicide.

LIONE

*I agree. It's best to find a place
to hide.*

OR:

MAIN

We have to hide.

LIONE

I don't fancy being shot to ribbons
like that creature.

ALIZA

What makes you think she'll shoot
us?

AUKANECK

Trust me, she most certainly will.

After options:

ALIZA

How about back in the cupboard?

[KIM]

Statistics state we have a 98%
 chance of failure in choosing the
 cupboard.

LIONE

Don't be stupid, Aliza, it may have
 worked on that creature, but not on
 an intelligent being like Malka.

BLAKE

(In thought)

Come on, Aliza, think! Your life's
 on the line and I don't want to die
 a second time.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Blake?!

AUKANECK

In here. These floorboards are
 loose.

BLAKE

(In thought)

I've fronted. It looks like I'm in
 charge for now. I'll explain in a
 minute, Aliza.

Everyone leaps into the hole made by the floorboards.

MALKA

Find them.

BLAKE

(In thought)

She knows we're here.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Don't be daft, she means the toxic
 waste. It's fantastic to hear your
 voice, again.

BLAKE

(In thought)

Thanks.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Oh, Blake, I've missed you ever so
 much! I thought you were dead.

(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

I thought I was going to die.
Just... how? I mean, how did you
even find your way back to me?

BLAKE

(In thought)

Listen, I don't really want to
re-live that memory of Barreto, so
I'm going to bypass that fluffing
piece of scock and go on to say
that I really don't know. The only
thing I can suggest is that when my
body died, I returned back to your
body.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Does that mean... I have to kill...
Oh, you miss your body...

BLAKE

(In thought)

Yeah, no scock, Sherlock.

ALIZA

(In thought)

I'm ever so sorry...

BLAKE

(In thought)

Don't worry about it... it got
rather lonely without you or Rizumu
there, anyway. It was fun, but I
really missed you girls.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Since you're back, and I missed you
ever so much, you now can share my
thoughts and of the adventure from
the asylum up to now.

BLAKE

(In thought)

There's a point, wolf face never
said anything about an alter dying
effecting one of the others in
their mortality. You should have
questioned him about that. Instead,
you worried yourself to death.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Oh, shut up, you.

AUKANECK

The floorboards!

The floorboards are removed and MALKA stands over them.

MALKA

Well, well, Vero wasn't lying, after all. He said he had taken Fang and the girl to near the house for me to find upon this toxic waste trip. I never expected to find you both so soon, however.

MAIN

(To himself)

Who's Fang? Hmm, none of them have spotted me, yet. I'll keep to the shadows.

BLAKE

Fluff.

MALKA

Oh, yeah you are.

BODYGUARD

We found the waste, president, ma'am, under the floorboards!

MALKA

Take three. Bind these fools and bring them with us.

BODYGUARD

But ma'am.

MALKA

Don't worry. They are coming with us to be shot in an appropriate place. Take them to Hennigan Wall.

They are all carried out, apart from MAIN, who none of MALKA's men have spotted. They leave.

CHOICES:

MAIN

I have to find and stop them! I don't like the idea of getting this far only for everyone to die around me.

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)

I could watch them get shot. That'd be fun. I hate saggy face, wolfy annoys me and don't get me started on bossy yellow coat. Then, I'd finally be free to do what I want. I've gotta find them.

AFTER CHOICES:

MAIN (CONT'D)

She said they're going to Hennigan Wall. That's where I'll go.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they find HENNIGAN WALL. MALKA marches AUKANECK, ALIZA, LIONE [and KIM] in a line towards the large wall.

LIONE

This is a flagrant violation of the Galactic Preservation!

MALKA

Ah, so that uniform's not just for show. As a world leader to the Reality Council, killing you would imprison me.

LIONE

Damn right! Release me at-

MALKA

So, I'll let you watch your comrades shot in front of you. It's the least I can do for going against me. THEN I'll untie you.

[KIM]

Now would be a good time to forget about asking her to the council with us.

BLAKE

This is fluffing torture!

MALKA

Torture? You know nothing of the word, nor its meaning.

ALIZA

(In thought)
Yes we do!

BLAKE

Are you scocking m-

MALKA

TORTURE is when you are faced to endure every no day looking for your alter. You don't know where they are, but they know where you are. You struggle to find them, but they struggle to stay away. You want a treaty, but they choose to attack you.

(MORE)

MALKA (CONT'D)

TORTURE is knowing you are going to die if you don't reunite with your alter. The existence of everyday life is tarnished by the impending doom you face should you not find them in time. You desperately try to recreate the event that split you apart, only for the girl to escape from the asylum and find the opping machine in a state beyond repair. Then you discover it was another attack on you.

TORTURE is when you find your alter at long last, unable to escape, only to then have to take their life away from them. Have you any idea how that feels? To kill, who is essentially, your only brother, someone you grew up with, someone you despise, just to stay alive. To stay alive means to be with one another in putrid existence, but at least it means you are fluffing alive.

THAT is torture.

ALIZA

Am I not in the same position? At some point... I'll have to kill Rizumu, my... little sister...

BLAKE

(In thought)

She said something far more important.

They all stop at the wall.

MALKA

How does it feel to look into the eyes you once stared out of, Fang?

AUKANECK

My name's Aukaneck.

MAIN

So that's why Aukaneck had knowledge of Malka's frequency chip signal. It's no wonder he wanted to look after Aliza. If I'm to bust in, I'd better do it now.

CHOICES:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Here goes! If I can find my way to
that old gattling gun on the rocks,
I'll be laughing.

PLAYER resumes control. Scene continues when they reach the gattling gun.

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)

I'll sit tight and watch.

After Choices:

MALKA

Nothing more to say? How predictable.

ALIZA

Aukaneck... you're Malka's alter?

AUKANECK

Yes. I have something to say.

When you finally decided it was time to separate us, I felt ambivalent. Why, how could I not miss the very person I had grown up? You know I despised you, though. You hated me, too. You made that perfectly clear with the opping. I can't even begin to tell you the freedom I enjoyed in my own body, away from your own. So, when Jubal took me in and I was told the story of Crystal and how this separation cut our life span in half, I was in a state of perpetual agony. I was condemned before I even began to live! I knew you were after me. With your frequency chip code being in your own body, I was able to track you and stay away. There was no way I'd give up my own life to let you live longer and carry out your selfish plans. Toxic waste as an energy source? You're insane, Malka. The mutation it would cause would be disastrous for the planet.

MALKA

That's all you have to say?

AUKANECK

...

MALKA
Bodyguards, take aim.

If PLAYER chose OPTION 2, previously:

PLAYER will enter a Tactics Style battle system with the machine gun, aiming from the cliff side. When either side is defeated, the scene continues.

MALKA (CONT'D)
Guards, immobilise him with the dynamagmite.

MAIN
Dyno-what?

There is a large explosion as a BODYGUARD throws the dynamagmite onto the cliff side. MAIN falls over, weakened.

MALKA
There's plenty more bodyguards where they came from.

More BODYGUARDS appear.

MALKA (CONT'D)
Prepare the firing squad. Take aim!

After Option 2 scenario:

LIONE
I... can't watch!

BLAKE
Fluff!

MALKA
Fire!

Gunfire. Flashes. Doctor Jozu. Aukaneck deciding to help her. Sector 6. The scene returns to normal.

MALKA (CONT'D)
Ceasefire.

The camera moves to show AUKANECK standing in front of ALIZA. There is a pause.

ALIZA
NO!

If Option 1 was chosen:

MAIN
AUKANECK!

BODYGUARD
Ma'am, we've found an intruder.

MALKA
Keep him there.

MAIN
Scock.

After Option 1:

AUKANECK falls over, dead.

LIONE
He's dead...

MALKA
Fang's gone to a better place,
child; me.

ALIZA
(Sobbing)
Aukaneck's gone.

MALKA
Aukaneck. The name he chose for
himself once we separated. A stupid
name.

ALIZA
(Sobbing, angry)
Shut up.

MALKA
Fluffing weakling.
(To her BODYGUARDS)
Fine, since Fang decided to save
her, let her live in perpetual
agony, like I endured, until the
day she dies. Take her back to the
asylum and imprison her in the very
cell she grew up in. As for the
silver-haired fool on the rocks,
declare him mentally unstable.

If KIM is in the party:

[KIM]
He saved my life, too...

[MALKA]
Lock her with them, too.

The Asylum.

ALIZA
We didn't know why we were there.
Padded walls. Black bars.
(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

A life sentence for the life we tried to live. If only we tried to live that life together, Aukaneck and I. If only my alters and I weren't separate. Were things better back when we were first here, when Dr. Jozu looked after us? It felt just like last time. Could someone tell us what the world was like, now, a month on from incarceration? We sure as Darkness didn't know. Darkness. It entangled our mind and slowly snuffed out the only fragments of life we did know. Aukaneck. Bullet. Opping. Darkness sucked them into the void but left behind the pain we couldn't stop feeling. It hurt... We let go of a lonely tear, having held it back. There were almost no more tears to cry. We had drained the lake of their source. Blake and I rolled over in our cell, in silence. We may have been together, but we were lonely. We weren't "complete" without Rizumu. Neither were we whole without Razz. I could do nothing but close our eyes as the cell's darkness took over our mind. The memories ran wild in their watercolour fragments, washing into our vision and reliving the memories. We knew that when we opened our eyes, we would be in the exact same place. We knew we'd be watching what happened one month before now, but... We didn't know why we were there. Not really. Malka could have chosen to continue shooting us, but chose not to upon the wolf's protection. The cycle of memories had whirled over and over in our mind and neither of us could come up with any other answer beyond her having some form of respect over Aukaneck's wishes.

BLAKE

(In thought)

He'll be with Malka, by now.

JOZU enters the cell, mutated.

JOZU

Heyo. I managed to sneak a joobly from the canteen, just for you.

ALIZA

Dr. Jozu?

JOZU

Heyo sweetie, you got to eat,
otherwise who will there be for me
to take care of?

ALIZA hugs JOZU.

JOZU (CONT'D)

Aww, how am I meant to keep
straight faced if you go and throw
yourself on me?

ALIZA

Your face...

JOZU

Listen, since finding out you were
back here, I wanted to see you
like old times, but I wasn't
allowed. Vero calls the shots at
this facility. So, here I am,
having bribed your usual lunch
attendant, ignoring the rules.

ALIZA

You were downgraded... and this is
the result of that process.

JOZU

This asylum is half a research and
experiment facility of the
president's. It's only part asylum
because of the research aspects
involved, and is called one to hide
its additional purposes. So I was
experimented on with...

ALIZA

Toxic waste.

BLAKE

(In thought)

Is an energy source worth risking
the transformation of millions of
people for the running of a
smoother and cheaper future?

ALIZA

(In thought)

I don't think so, but Malka
certainly seems to.

JOZU

Also, I've been contacted by Jubal. You know I'm an informant for them, so I told them that you were back here. It angered Groggsam that you didn't give Malka Darkness, but he was really worried about you and the wolf, in particular. No one knows what's happened to Aukaneck, though.

ALIZA

Aukaneck is dead.

JOZU

Ah.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Jozu left the door open. We could escape.

BLAKE

(In thought)

No, you've got a frequency chip that stops you from leaving the room, Aliza. Use your brain!

ALIZA

Actually, I am; Aukaneck deactivated it back in Ice Fjord.

JOZU

Now, I can't take you out from the room otherwise I would. You know the heat my chip burns into my hand if I try. It would kill me.

ALIZA

My chip isn't active.

Pause. JOZU heads to the door.

JOZU

I won't be able to help you escape, but I can inform Jubal to meet you outside.

ALIZA

Thanks ever so much, doctor.

JOZU

Keep to the right and head down the first corridor. At the end there is a locker room. Go there and find yourself something to help you blend in.

ALIZA

I'm sure the others are locked up
around here, somewhere... all
asides Lione, that is. I'll head to
the lockers, first, then find Nova.

JOZU leaves. PLAYER resumes control as ALIZA. PLAYER must
head to the locker room to continue.

ALIZA (CONT'D)

Hmm... a scientist coat. It will
help me out for now, but I have to
find a key to unlock those
bodyguard lockers to the right.

ALIZA puts on a scientist coat. MAIN [and KIM] can be found
in one of the cells.

ALIZA (CONT'D)

Pst. Nova.

MAIN

I already told you, I'm not hungry
for wolf, today. Why do you
continue to torment me?

[KIM]

They try to reduce our morale.

ALIZA

It's Aliza. I'm here to break you
out.

MAIN

Aliza! I've been chipped. You'll
have to find another way to get me
out of the cell.

[KIM]

And me! I feel weak and can't use
my power. Please help, Aliza.

PLAYER must use the scientist coat to access another area.
From there, they can go into a vent to MAIN's cell.

MAIN

You did it! I'm liking the
disguise, too. You'll have to act
as if you're escorting me to
another cell, if anyone asks.

PLAYER must search more cells to find a sleeping BODYGUARD.
Steal his keys for the lockers. PLAYER must return to the
locker room. JOZU enters.

JOZU

They'll be here in an hour. If you wear the full bodyguard gear, you'll also cover your head. Someone's coming, so put on your helmet.

ALIZA puts on the helmet. Two BODYGUARDS burst through the door.

BODYGUARD

What you doing?

JOZU

I was just about to leave before you smashed the door into me!

BODYGUARD 2

You're a bit short to be a bodyguard, ain't ya?

ALIZA

It's my first day, ma'am.

BODYGUARD

The president accepts anyone, these days. Who're these guys?

ALIZA

They're prisoners I'm escorting.

BODYGUARD 2

They'll have to come with us.

BODYGUARD

Alright, we came to find a third person, so you'll have to do. The locker room's bloody empty, today. Normally it's full of slackers.

JOZU

Luck.

BODYGUARD

Why?

JOZU

That... Nova patient can be a handful.

JOZU leaves. PLAYER accompanies the BODYGUARDS down the corridor. They enter the main foyer. VERO approaches.

VERO

Attention.

BLAKE
 (In thought)
 You too, numbskull!

VERO
 New, I am inclined to assume.
 Still, I'll need to verify your ID
 if you're to continue escorting
 these patients. A bit short for a
 bodyguard, however. Remove your
 helmet.

Pause.

VERO (CONT'D)
 Why do you delay?

FEMALE ANNOUNCER
 (O.O.V)
 My fellow citizens of Light, I
 bring you this worldwide newscast;
 president Malka!

A video screen, large and grainy, appears above the doorway.
 MALKA appears, looking exhausted.

MALKA
 As you know, toxic waste
 is a powerful form of energy
 which has changed many of
 your lives. But now...
 (Pause)
 I must abandon my dream of
 presidency if I am to live.

VERO
 Wha-what is the meaning of this?

RAZZ appears on screen.

ALIZA
 Razz!

VERO turns to ALIZA.

RAZZ
 Clever, clever. Malka knows how to
 stay alive, she does, she does...

VERO turns back to the screen.

RAZZ (CONT'D)
 I was promised attention, I was. I
 was promised a confrontation that
 blistered the brain in
 anticipation! Instead, I get to
 wait and wait and wait.
 (MORE)

RAZZ (CONT'D)

And whilst I wait and wait and
wait, I get to kill and kill and
kill. The delightful screams, oh!
The beauty of blood!

The screen shows lots of dead, bloodied BODYGUARDS.

RAZZ (CONT'D)

So, Aliza Legion, if you don't get
your arse into gear, then Rizumu
definitely gets to die! But not
only that, you'll get to miss me
taking the president's place on the
annual Reality Council shuttle, hoo
hoo! It'll beam me aboard instead
and there will be a bloodbath in
the galaxies when I'm done with
them! Oh yes, Malka's told me all
about the wonderful world beyond
here. So come. Come quickly. Or
would you all like the president to
meet her end, too?

AUKANECK

Please come.

The screen disappears.

ALIZA

Aukaneck...

MAIN

I say let's take the ship and go,
NOW.

VERO rips the helmet from ALIZA's head.

VERO

I KNEW it!

BODYGUARD

Shall we execute her, sir?

VERO

Imbeciles! Do you not understand
the dire situation the president
and the country find themselves in?
It is undoubtedly one of her
alters.

BLAKE

(In thought)

He's an ugly fluff, isn't he?

VERO

She is to undergo delivery to the
Grey House.

(MORE)

VERO (CONT'D)

Upon arrival she is then expected
to fix the situation before it
finds itself exasperated.

ALIZA

I'm going, anyway.

MAIN

And there's no way I'm going to let
Malka die when we need her,
ourselves.

Propellers sound.

VERO

That sounds like... a skyship!

ALIZA runs to the entrance, with MAIN [and KIM].

BLAKE

(In thought)
Don't falter.

BARETTO's skyship flies down.

MAIN

Baretto's skyship? What's wrong
with our prison ship?

LIONE

Our ship doesn't have a massive
laser cannon.

MAIN

I should've known this is where you
got to. Prepping for the assault
way in advance.

ALIZA

Grogam!

GROGSAM

Get on, you wonderful harpy.

MAIN

I'm not sure that's a compliment.

GROGSAM

You get on too, silvo.

The PLAYER leaps aboard the ship.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)

Up, captain!

RERTA

I trust you saw the global message?

BLAKE
(In thought)
Ask them.

ALIZA
I did. Why are you working with
HIM?

BARETTO
(In BLAKE's voice)
Thought you'd seen the last of this
great sky pirate, Hidon Baretto?
Ha! Not a chance, not when it was
your friend who gave me life enough
to talk, once again.

BLAKE
Oh, so you think this is all fine,
then? You rip my throat open, watch
me bleed to death and then come
back for more? You make me sick.

Pause.

BARETTO
Multiplicity, was it?

BLAKE
That's one name for it, yeah.

PIRATE GIRL
We, as sky pirates, live outside
the law. We're expected to be
violent and ruthless in order to
live our life without the
hinderance of the authority.

BARETTO
I have a voice, you know.

GROGSAM
They're outlaws, like us. We formed
an alli... alli-

RERTA
Alliance.

GROGSAM
Yeah, that thing. With that, we
could use their ship for the
perfect speedy transport, under the
cover of other already sky pirates.
We don't have to use the slower
aerotrains no more.

MAIN
Or the probably faster prison ship.

GROGSAM

Whatever.

BARETTO

Meanwhile, we got the aid of the weapon power we'd been longing to use against the authority. The Cataclysm.

GROGSAM

It just so happens we've got that fine piece o' cannon weaponry from Ice Fjord, now. We're going to use it to smash into the Grey House.

MAIN

The Cataclysm cannon we unearthed from the mountains? Not gonna lie, that's pretty sweet.

BLAKE

So, two little duckies met on the river and decided "hey, let's speak of all our places to one another and fluffing risk being overheard, so we can form an alliance." Then the red ducky says "actually, that girl you dumped in America and killed the brother of, is part of Jubal, so don't harm her anymore" and everyone gets on merrily. I can't be expected to believe bullcock when it's shoved in my face.

ALIZA

(In thought)

You're going overboard, now stop it.

BLAKE

(In thought)

Make me.

ALIZA

(In thought)

Fine.

BUDGIE

They met through me, if you're wondering, lass.

BUDGIE appears in a wheelchair.

ALIZA

Budgie!

BUDGIE

Aliza!

MAIN

Good to see you alive, kid. We thought you were a goner.

BUDGIE

Don Lucio found me and my legs squashed in his theatre. So he asks me "can you sing?" and I say "no, but I en can fight" so he says "then fight for me." So he buys me this wheelchair, even if he could have gotten some clockwork legs, and sends me out to fight these sky pirates.

BARETTO

So the kid finds us and I laugh in his face at such a challenge. He then mentions something about Aliza, assuming I killed her.

ALIZA

You almost did.

BARETTO

Well... I tell him that under Vero's orders, I dropped you off in exile, so you were still alive. Spurred on by this, the boy tries to call you, only to have the signal blocked. Curious, and wanting to re-meet you anyway for lending me the legendary singing rookie Blake's voice, we decide to track down your com radio signal. So the idiots go to the asylum at the end of the crappy country once called England.

GROGSAM

There they find some o' my own men nearby, trying to keep tabs on the building's outside. They ask 'em and my men to lead them to me, back in Ice Fjord. We talk, strike a deal and get in contact with Jozu, on the asylum's inside. So we waited for him to bloody do something and...

LIONE

And then I turned up.

BARETTO

You know how the rest goes.

BUDGIE
So, where's wolf face?

MAIN
Aukaneck's dead. Killed by Malka's men.

ALIZA
You know... An attack on the president would be an attack on Aukaneck...

GROGSAM
Fluff it, let's get the Cataclysm Cannon ready and be done with this nightmare.

There are some weary cheers.

GROGSAM (CONT'D)
Oh, and sorry about your balloon, Rerta.

PLAYER must head to the GREY HOUSE on the WORLD MAP.

BLAKE (O.S.)
Get ready!

GROGSAM
Fire the Cataclysm!

BARETTO
Fire!

A massive laser fires at the GREY HOUSE. Screen whitens. The GREY HOUSE is revealed to have most of the front tore off, to reveal the interior.

MAIN
Man, I need to get me one of those!

GROGSAM
Check the damage!

BARETTO
Yeah!

RERTA
(Whispered to ALIZA)
Take this dagger. Hopefully you won't have to use it. Come call me when you find Razz. Budgie and I have a plan. Use Budgie's number.

GROGSAM
We've penetramated the frontal defense of the Grey House! We're goin' in!

Cheers.

BARETTO
We're goin' in!

Fewer cheers.

MAIN
Man, that repetition is getting
annoying. We're going in, too.

BLAKE
(In thought)
Try not to get yourself killed.

ALIZA
(In thought, sarcastic)
Thanks.

MAIN, LIONE, [KIM] and ALIZA leap into the nearest room; a study. They are attacked by a weakened, dying guard.

DYING BODYGUARD
Must... protect... president
Malka...

PLAYER takes him down.

MAIN
It looks like Razz has been
"playing" with Malka's bodyguards.
They're almost dead.

LIONE
...They're faithful 'till the end.

MAIN
Don't let it get to you. We're here
to save the president so we can
prove your faith, remember? That
and the Cult of Kai.

ALIZA
Killing these guys are a mercy. We
have to find Razz. Let's look.

PLAYER resumes control. There are random battles with other dying bodyguards. Eventually, the PLAYER will travel down a corridor.

[KIM]
Fear is an illusion. Something is
here, but it is very real. You
mustn't fear it.

MAIN
(Noticing something)
We're not afraid.

BLAKE
(In thought)
Yes you are.

ALIZA
(In thought)
That's not helping.

RAZZ (O.S.)
Blake'd probably tell you it's
futile... it is, it is...

PLAYER resumes control until eventually heading down another corridor.

ALIZA
(To herself)
A weapon is just a tool weak people
hide behind.

BLAKE
(In thought)
You're carrying a dagger.

ALIZA
(In thought)
I came here to talk, not fight.

BLAKE
(In thought)
You came here to kill.

ALIZA
I came here to talk, not fight!

MAIN
What if you have to? What then?

ALIZA
(In thought)
I have fists and feet. They're not
weapons. They're a part of me.

RAZZ
Ahahahaha... I'm coming for you!

PLAYER resumes control. A final smoky corridor.

[KIM]
He's here.

MAIN
(Shouting)
Razz, don't tell me you're still
doing this all for the sake of
anarchy. I thought better of you.

RAZZ leaps out at ALIZA and knocks her back.

ALIZA

Is this what it's come down to?
Attacking me in the dark? I came
here talk to you.

RAZZ

Talk to me? Not *with* me? You little
spiteful wretch, always trying to
command what I do!

OPTIONS:

MAIN

I think she's better suited at
commanding your actions than you
are. Everything you do is just
insane.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

*Aliza *is* a bit bossy. But she's
not the one with the knife. Being a
free man hasn't done you well.*

After options:

RAZZ

Hold your tongue, before I cut,
cut, cut it off! Ooooh, Aliza, I'm
going to carefully cut you apart
especially, making you feel the
pain I endured whilst waiting. Yes,
waiting! Waiting inside your head
whilst you lot mindlessly bantered
about trivial things, finding
reason when there was none. Waiting
for you to find me, with that
incessant Rizumu in my hold. You
never came. You always made me
wait!

BLAKE (O.S.)

What a flufftard. I can't believe
he was always hiding here, with us.

BUDGIE starts speaking on the com radio.

BUDGIE (O.S.)

We've found the president, sweet
cheeks.

LIONE

(whispered)

Who are you calling "sweet cheeks",
Scruff?

BUDGIE (O.S.)
 (whispered)
 I meant Aliza. You're not sweet.
 Anyway, president Malka's tied up
 with a little lass. They're in the
 central hall.

RAZZ leaps on ALIZA.

MAIN
 Wait!

ALIZA
 If you kill me, the host body, then
 you know what will happen to you!

RAZZ
 (Uncertain)
 No, no...

ALIZA
 You will cease to exist. Even
 though you have your own body, you
 will die because the host body
 dies.

[KIM]
 (Whispered)
 A fabricated lie.

RAZZ
 Then... what to do with you, oho?
 Killing you all isn't fun without
 Analyza. Get it?

LIONE
 I don't think Aliza's certain.

RAZZ
 Move. Touch me and I won't be
 afraid to bite back. To the central
 hall, yes, yes.

The CENTRAL HALL.

A large circular room. Red and gold patterned floor. A
 chandelier. A large desk sits at the wall opposite the double
 doors MAIN, LIONE, ALIZA, [KIM] and RAZZ enter through.
 Bloodied bodies of both BARETTO's pirate crew and MALKA's
 bodyguards litter the floor.

MALKA and RIZUMU sit in the middle, tied in coil.

BLAKE (O.S.)
 Rizumu!

RAZZ
 Say hello, delicious ones.

LIONE
President Malka...

RIZUMU
A-Aliza?

ALIZA
Yes, darling, I'm here.

RAZZ
Urgh, too sickly and sentimental.
We can't have that, no, no.

RAZZ starts to circle the two hostages.

RAZZ (CONT'D)
Who will be first to die?

OPTIONS

MAIN
Malka. She separated you all and
cut your life-span significantly.
She's also too revealing. Cat
boobs. Yuck.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Aukaneck. He's inside Malka. He
really grated on me. Killing her
will kill him for good.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Rizumu. Let's face it, she got
captured as soon as she had a body.
She's young... and a bit useless.

After choices:

ALIZA
Nova... let me do this alone. I'm
not going to allow Razz to kill any
of them.

RAZZ
Bullcock! Choose.

ALIZA begins to circle, too, opposite RAZZ.

GROGSAM enters, only to be held back by LIONE.

LIONE
No closer, Grogsam - this is
between Razz and Aliza.

RAZZ and ALIZA circle some more.

RAZZ
Time's up. And your choice is...

ALIZA
(Whispered)
Rizumu.

If PLAYED chose RIZUMU, previously:

MAIN
I told ya.

If any other option:

MAIN (CONT'D)
What have you done?!

After options:

RAZZ
Ahahahahahaha!!!

RAZZ brutally slaughters RIZUMU. MALKA looks at ALIZA.

ALIZA
I couldn't kill her, Aukaneck. I
don't have the power to kill my
little sister. I hope you
understand...

AUKANECK (O.S.)
You made the right choice.

[KIM]
Rizumu had nothing to fear,
anymore. Her tears were all dried
up. Her soul has moved on. I wish I
could be so human and yet so strong
as that little girl.

MAIN
You monster! That was inhumane to
gut her up in front of Aliza!

RAZZ
Oho, you put me in a good mood,
yes, yes! I'll even give you a
reprieve before I slice up Malka!

RAZZ sits upon the desk.

ALIZA
So, you'll take this city and
induce anarchy after you kill the
president.

RAZZ

Yeah, why not? I'll do whatever I please, I don't care, yes. Kill a few people here, a few people there, listen to the beauty of their screaming and the light show of blood, then return home to my half blown up mansion. No one tells me what to do... maybe smart ol' Razz will go with that idea, maybe I won't.

GROGSAM

This is madness!

BARETTO barges through the door and slides to a halt with various crew members.

BARETTO

This is lunacy! Kill Razz, now!

RAZZ falls from the desk. RERTA appears from behind it.

RERTA

A dagger to the back!

RAZZ gets up.

RAZZ

ROAAAAAAAAAAAAARRRRRRR! This is YOUR fault, girl!

ALIZA

Wait-

RAZZ

NO MORE WAITING!

BLAKE (O.S.)

Stop backing away! It's now or never.

MAIN

He's weakened. It's time we did away with this freak!

RAZZ charges at the PLAYER.

BOSS FIGHT 4: RAZZ.

At the start of the fight:

RIZUMU (O.S.)

A-Aliza?

ALIZA (O.S.)

Rizumu! Oh, I'm so sorry... but I
couldn't bring myself to kill you
and it was the only way to get you
back with me-

RIZUMU

I understand. You're my big sis!
But now I want to help out. I can
cure you when you front to me, now.

ALIZA

Let's show this ID-iot what we're
made of!

During the fight:

ALIZA (CONT'D)

Killing me means killing yourself!

RAZZ

I DON'T CARE.

ALIZA

Oh well... that lie was worth a
shot.

After the fight:

RAZZ

T-The shuttle is... here!

GROGSAM

Stop that man!

BUDGIE

NOW!

BUDGIE appears and the chandelier drops down, just missing
RAZZ and instead trapping the PLAYER. RAZZ bolts away,
knocking BUDGIE over.

TANNOY

We're ready to receive you,
president Malka.

RAZZ

B-Beam me UP!

BARETTO

Open fire, men!

Gunshots blast around the desk area as RAZZ fades up in a
beam. He disappears. Silence.

ALIZA

...He got away.

MAIN
This isn't over.

FADE TO BLACK.

Scene shifts to BARETTO dropping everyone off at the prison ship and ruined town.

BARETTO
Your minds are made up, eh?
Anything I can do to help out more?
Just returning the favour for what
you all did for us and all.

Choices:

CHOICE 1: Nothing.

PLAYER receives a coupon used to synthesise a weapon in FINAL GEAR's TRI-ALPHA world

CHOICE 2: Food.

PLAYER receives some food items.

CHOICE 3: Protection.

PLAYER receives a piece of protective clothing.

MAIN
We're heading out to the Reality Council, out in space.

BUDGIE
And I find that hard to believe, still, but I guess weirdos gotta come from somewhere! We haven't the tech to travel into space.

ALIZA
Which is why I'm going with Mr. Nova.

MAIN
You're sure about this, Aliza?

ALIZA
Certain. Blake and Rizumu have mulled it over with me all the way back and we feel that this is our only chance at finding Razz and saving our lives.

GROGSAM

Sounds like a tough journey, kid.
That's why I've decided on
something that'll make you smile,
now that *Jubal's* journey is over.
Nova, I'm giving you...

MAIN

The Cataclysm Cannon?

GROGSAM

...The Catakissy Cannon. Yeah.

MAIN

(In absolute glee)
No way! Seriously? You hear that,
Lione, we've got ourselves a laser
cannon that can blow up houses!

LIONE

(Sarcastically)
Yeah. Boom, boom.

GROGSAM

It can do more than blow up houses,
I reckon. Any o' that weird space
rock won't stand a chance.

LIONE

There's one last thing. We came
here for President Malka.

MAIN

The Cult of Kai threatens the
Galaxies. With one of them locked
in stasis, on our ship, all we need
is you, Malka, to present us at the
Reality Council and clear our name.

Pause.

MALKA

I... won't.

Choices:

MAIN

You're kidding, right?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Fluff you. We're kidnapping you,
anyway.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We have a laser cannon!

After options:

MALKA

I feel... I have a lot of work to do here, back on Earth. The year is 2400. People still haven't accepted us anthros as readily as we think.

LIONE

You were elected, right? You're due at the Reality Council, right? Get your fluffing arse on our ship before we cause another casualty!

MAIN

The dog barks.

LIONE

Shut up! We didn't come here for nothing!

ALIZA

Malka... no, Aukaneck... please do this small thing for Mr. Nova. He helped us in many ways and continues to help both me and the Galaxies. You're a protector, too, right?

MALKA

...Aukaneck... the word means guardian spirit - a protector. I always called him Fang - a bitter name. Maybe it's time to move on. Let him share this body as equals?

ALIZA

Only them can we achieve a bodily harmony. A biorhythm.

MALKA

Biorhythm means to predict aspects of an individual's life... but... I guess that's still applicable. All right. I'll do it. I'll come with you all.

MAIN

Malka, if you weren't a cat, I'd kiss you. I don't want fur balls down my throat.

RERTA

I've attached the cannon to your impressive ship.

GROGSAM

All right, take it easy, guys. You do Jubal proud!

IF KIM ISN'T IN THE PARTY:

MALKA

First we need to search another planet to see if we can break past that barrier that surrounds the council. That cannon won't do the job. It wouldn't have been a problem if we had a council ship, like the one Razz boarded, since they can slip past it.

LIONE

We'll search planet TRI-ALPHA, next.

AFTER:

The crew march onto the ship as ALIZA monologues.

ALIZA

We know why we're here.

Air-tight walls. Silver bars. A brief chance at life before a death sentence tolls. We will all live life together. If only Razz wasn't separate. Things will be better with Nova. We will search the Galaxies and know what the worlds are like. We are not complete. Not without Razz. That's why we must search for him and snuff his life out before everyone dies. And then Darkness will become Lightce.

We know why we're here.

The ship blasts off into space.

FINAL GEAR (PLANET TRI-ALPHA)

A figure walks from his apartment. Dark blue shades cover his eyes beneath short, gelled up hair, a black suit on his body and sky blue pinstripe shirt beneath. TOM SILVER.

TOM

The Final Gear.

(In thought)

2 years studying Shi technology at university has led me to this. 10 years of fascination with the Gears - genetically altered Shi. My whole life has led me up to my new job. I can't wait to start, today.

TOM boards a bus.

TOM (CONT'D)

Hard to believe Nav-Tech was once a small company... Oh! My data pad says I've got a message.

DATAPAD

To : Tom

From : Fiona Laws

Good luck on your first day at the lab i hope that you have a good day, why not come over late and tell me and your mum about it x

TOM

I'll have to see how I feel.

TOM gets off the bus, in front of a white building with a large staircase. LAB ZERO.

TOM (CONT'D)

Lab Zero. Time to meet the Final Gear.

FADE OUT.

Scene shifts to the prison ship having landed at the docking hangers. MAIN and LIONE [and ALIZA] jump out.

MAIN

This city is *massive*!

[ALIZA]

And it looks so much more advanced than Lightce ever was...

LIONE

Planet Tri-Alpha is highly advanced thanks to the Shi race from long ago. I don't know the specifics.

MAIN

Shi? Like that alien on the spacestation?

LIONE

They live in harmony with the humans who colonised this planet.

[ALIZA]

Like the anthros with us on Earth.

[MALKA]

Yes. Except the one in charge is a human. He runs some multimillion company and barely ever attends the council.

[MAIN]

Should we start with him? Maybe he has a craft to gain access to the shield? You said only council members have those ships, right?

[MALKA]

Worth a look. All right, if you guys don't mind, I'm gonna scarper and have a look around, myself. I'll meet back with you later.

[ALIZA]

Thanks, Aukaneck. Thanks, Malka. Okay, so what are we looking for, here?

MAIN

So, we're looking for something that can take down the shield to the Reality Council. Have I got that right, Lione?

LIONE

Yes. And thank you for not calling me-

MAIN

Sorry, I meant dog-face.

LIONE

-Dog face. Well. Looks like your new nickname is Pug.

MAIN

Like Pug ugly?

LIONE
Like the dog.

MAIN
Oh, come on, Lione. Don't be like that...

LIONE
Lab Zero has some of the highest tech in Diamond City and, if anywhere, will have something, or someone, to get through that ionic shield. Here, boy, come on.

MAIN
I'm not a dog...

PLAYER resumes control in DIAMOND CITY. Eventually, they will go inside LAB ZERO. TOM is at the front desk of the lobby.

TOM
Hello, my name is Tom Silver. I'm starting down in the lab as of today.

MAIN walks up to the counter. Options:

MAIN
You got any ion breaking things? We need to get through a shield.

RECEPTIONIST GUY
Well, you ain't getting to the lab's tech store with that attitude.

LIONE
Uuuuuhhh, that idiot...

MAIN
Look, I need access and you're going to give it to me. The name's Nova.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
The name's Nova. We're looking for some of your high-tech gadgets.

RECEPTIONIST GUY
We got some commercial products 'round back, in our tech store. You need a pass to get through.

After options:

TOM

Hey, I was here first.

RECEPTIONIST GUY

Yeah, I know, mate. I pressed the button. The boss will come up from the lab in a min and take you down. He'll give you your employee card.

LIONE

Do you work here?

TOM

Galactic Preservation clothes...
I'm not under arrest, am I?

Options:

MAIN

Yeah. We're here to lock you in stasis.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

No, we're just here for something to shut down the Galactic Council's shield.

After options:

LIONE

Nova!

MAIN

What? I'm only telling him what he wants to hear.

LIONE

I'm sorry about that. I'm vice-warden Lione Burgess. This is Pug.

MAIN

Hey!

TOM

I've heard about the Galactic Council. That shield is impenetrable by any technology but the council's. Not even Nav-Tech will have anything.

MAIN

Nav-Tech?

TOM

The name of the multimillion company who own this facility.
(MORE)

TOM (CONT'D)
I'm Tom Silver, by the way.

The elevator door opens to reveal a man in his sixties. His irises and hair are almost as white as his lab coat. His shirt is blood red. He is most definitely a Shi.

DUNKAN
Tom, how are you?

He shakes TOM's hand.

TOM
(Chuckling)
This is all a bit formal, isn't it?

DUNKAN
First day. First impressions are everything. Are these people with you?

MAIN
Er... no...

LIONE
However, as vice-warden of the Galactic Preservation's prison department, I'm... um... investigating the area for an escaped convict.

DUNKAN
I see. I'm Duncan Cristalright, chief scientist here. Take all the time you need.

RECEPTIONIST GUY
Better take these visitor passes, then. They'll get you in and out until you've found what you need.

DUNKAN
Going down?

They all get in the elevator.

DUNKAN (CONT'D)
What does this convict look like?

Options:

MAIN
Blue shades. Suit. Hair gel.

TOM
Sounds familiar...

OR

MAIN

A mask. Cloak. Powers.

DUNKAN

Hmm, sounds like Adho...

OR

MAIN

Long red hair. Looks like a dog.

DUNKAN

Sounds rather like the vice-warden, here.

LIONE

Hey! I'm not a dog!

MAIN

And neither am I.

After options:

DUNKAN

Well, I hope you find him. Anyway, it's good to see you, Tom. You never did answer my question - how have you been?

DUNKAN gives TOM a labcoat.

TOM

I've been okay. Thanks for the lab coat, Dunkan! I hear my father has you working like a dog, down here.

MAIN

That makes three of us, apparently.

DUNKAN

Father? Now look who's being formal. You should call him 'dad'. And yes, he has been working us, as usual.

(Beat)

Listen...

TOM

Yeah, I know. I will go talk to him, but can today just be my first day at work and nothing more?

DUNKAN

You know that while you're at work I have to treat you as an employee, right?

TOM

I know...

DUNKAN

And as an employee, you will need your card. Here.

TOM

Thanks... 'boss'. Hmm, what are you doing after work?

DUNKAN

(Chuckling)

After work?

The lift stops and makes a sound. They scramble out. A huge, dark room sits in front of them, brimming with glowing computer screens and low lighted areas. In the centre is a circular control terminal. Beyond the central room is a kitchen area and singular office rooms.

DUNKAN (CONT'D)

Welcome to Laboratory Zero. Tom, come with me to my office. Vice-Warden, I bid you good day for now. You too, Pug.

MAIN

I'll kill you for this, Lione.

LIONE

We shall see. Let's look around. We'll speak with Dunkan after he's done with Tom to see if he's still got his council transport. He's definitely the council representative we're looking for.

PLAYER resumes control. Scene continues when they find TOM, several floors down. He is outside of DUNKAN's office.

DUNKAN

Right, I think that's all you need to get started. Are you going to be okay?

TOM

(Optimistic)

I might be your God son but I'm not stupid.

DUNKAN

Right, well, the person you will be working with is Helen Ravenstar. She has been working directly with the Final Gear. I'm sure they will both be along soon.

DUNKAN turns to head to his office.

MAIN

What *is* the Final Gear?

Beat.

DUNKAN

The Final Gear... is a biologically enhanced Shi fighter, but that is none of your concern. I was elected as the planet's representative because of the prowess I presented from my research with this project.

LIONE

And yet you choose to skip meetings like the one that will be held shortly.

DUNKAN

Did you find what you were looking for?

LIONE

Perhaps. It depends on your answers. I need to ask you some questions, Dunkan.

DUNKAN

Fine. Step into my office and I'll be with you, shortly.

LIONE does so.

TOM

The Final Gear is... a biologically enhanced Shi?

DUNKAN

Tom, this one is different. You won't know what to made of it when you see it, so try to keep a straight mind, okay? Now, if you'll excuse me...

DUNKAN walks into the office and closes the door. Silence.

Options:

MAIN

I like cake.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Grated cheese is delicious.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Sausage sandwich sounds good...

After options:

TOM
Pug, was it?

MAIN
Nova.

TOM
If you're hungry, take this. It's
some of my lunch, but I'm not
hungry. Too much to think about.

TOM passes over his lunch of whatever option PLAYER chose.

MAIN
It must be nice having a job,
being... cooped up in a small, dark
room, doing tests on things. Hm. I
didn't mean to put you off, it just
sounds like there are better jobs
out there.

TOM
Well, what do you do?

Options:

MAIN
Engineer. I fix up prison ships and
put wrenches in corrupt Wardens'
plans.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Criminologist. I study convicts and
criminals, get inside their head
and predict their actions against
the law.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Unemployed. Truth is, I'm trying to
get my lost memories back and only
the vice-warden, Lione, knows about
my past.

TOM
So, you're currently her lacky?
Keeping close and helping her out?

MAIN

I'm not anyone's lucky! I'm not a faithful dog. Just... misguided.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Investigator. We already told you. I work for the GP and solve crimes, looking for evidence.

After options:

TOM

Well then, you must understand that at one point you had a dream before getting to where you are, now. When I was a small boy, I used to daydream about the Final Gear and... and how it would be a huge robot that would have guns and a sword.

MAIN

So, you've always wanted to work on this project? I hate to break it to you, but Shies aren't huge robots with guns and swords.

TOM

I know, which is why I'm so confused about what Dunkan said...

MAIN

I'm interested in this Final Gear, now. So, is it a weapon? Can it break through ion barriers?

TOM

Here, catch.

MAIN

What's this?

TOM

A datapad. Read the entries on there if you want to know a bit more about the Final Gear. It's the only info I have.

DATAPAD

Final Gear Entry 1

(MORE)

DATAPAD (CONT'D)

After the last year's worth of negotiations with the people of Tri-Alpha, I have been able to look in on the Final Gear and found that it has cocooned itself into its 'basic form'. We will try to evolve it, but there is no data on how to do this.

As the head of research and development, I was asked to find someone on this planet who shared their enthusiasm with me on this project. After looking through their data base, I have decided on using a small development company named Nav-Tech.

I will work along side my new partner, Peter, to unlock the Final Gear's hidden potential and come up with some kind of defence against the Gear army.

- Dunkan Cristalright.

DATAPAD (CONT'D)

Final Gear Entry 30

Today, Peter had his first child and he asked me to be a God father... I'm not sure how I'm meant to feel about this as I'm not from this planet. I feel like I should have no right to be God father, but he insists.

The Final Gear has yet to explain anything to us. We have been able to extract data from it and create a range of things to help the people of Tri-Alpha, but we still have not been able to get it to evolve from its cocooned, 'basic form'.

- Dunkan Cristalright.

DATAPAD (CONT'D)

Final Gear Entry 34

Nav-Tech's income has skyrocketed since the Final Gear's evolution. The new extracted data has been used to sell new successful products, such as the hover engine, which has revolutionalised daily life.

(MORE)

DATAPAD (CONT'D)

Sales have gone through the roof.

Peter has been talking about building a grand tower here in the city. Who would have guessed that such a simple thing would unlock the secrets that the Final Gear holds?

I wonder what would happen if he was to come into the project later in his life? Would its evolutionary system be activated a stage even further? Time will tell.

- Dunkan Cristalright.

TOM

The Shi were once powerful and advanced people that were almost wiped out. They lived on a planet far from Tri-Alpha, but were driven away by the Gears.

MAIN

And we know that the Gears were genetically altered Shi fighters.

TOM

While the Shi escaped, they captured one of the Gears. It was because of this that us people of Tri-Alpha were able to advance our technology by extracting data from it.

A woman enters the room with a small girl. The woman has curly red hair which drapes down her shoulders, a pencil skirt and high heels, all beneath a lab coat. HELEN.

HELEN

It's been almost 30 years since the Shi came to Tri-Alpha. The captured Gear is, what we call, the 'Final Gear'.

Options

MAIN

She's hot.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Ignore her wily charms!

After options:

HELEN

Hi, I'm Helen Ravenstar. I work on the Final Gear project. Which one of you is Tom Silver?

TOM

(flustered)

I'm Silver Tom. Uh, sorry, yes, I mean my name is Tom Silver, it's very nice to meet you, Helen.

HELEN

It's okay, I get that a lot in here. People don't expect me to wear this kind of thing to work, but it's what I feel most comfortable in.

The small girl peers from behind HELEN.

MAIN

It's a little girl, with her...

TOM

Oh, hi there, I didn't see you... are you okay?

HELEN

(To the girl)

Say hello. This is Tom Silver, he will be working with us from now on.

TOM

Is this you daughter?

HELEN

No, this is the Final Gear.

TOM

...

MAIN

!

TOM slowly backs away. He is seething with anger and storms into DUNKAN's office.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Don't worry. I don't think he's quite used to the whole 'being social' aspect of work, yet.

PLAYER resumes control. Scene continues when heading into the office.

TOM

'Today we did our extractions to develop new technology. We are hoping that now, in its evolved state, that it will be able to provide us with some kind of weapon system.

The Final Gear says it knows nothing of violence, but I remember the chaos... The pain it will feel while extracting the parts will be nothing compared to what we felt.'

You wrote that. You sent me that info in my datapad, knowing full well the Final Gear is a little girl!

DUNKAN

The vice-warden and I were in the middle of something.

TOM

(Angry)

I don't fluffing care! Dunkan, why didn't you tell me?!

DUNKAN

...You don't remember, do you?

TOM

Remember what?

(Beat)

Dunkan?

TOM sits down.

DUNKAN

Did you... notice that there were a few files missing from that datapad list I sent you, last night?

DUNKAN slowly approaches the desk and away from his office window, having watched the Final Gear and HELEN. On his desk sits a computer.

TOM

Why did you leave them out?

DUNKAN

...Uh, would you sit with the vice-warden? I will be with you both as soon as I can, Pug.

MAIN

Oh man, Lione...

MAIN sits next to LIONE at the side of the room, in a waiting area.

DUNKAN

'Final Gear Entry 31

Today was an amazing day. Peter brought his son, Tom into the lab. While we worked, he sat cuddling the Final Gear.

To our amazement, seconds later the boy was holding a small baby girl in his arms... no longer a cocoon.

The progress we can now make will be amazing. The technology we can extract should make it easier for the people of Tri-Alpha (of which I'm becoming very attached to).

Tom is an amazing child and we can't wait to see what he can do in the future. Maybe I should talk to Peter and ask if the boy can stay at the lab...'

TOM

I triggered her evolutionary state?

DUNKAN

Not just once, but twice. Pug, I'd like you to read the next bit. My eyes grow tired of screens.

MAIN

Do I have to?

LIONE

Do it, boy.

MAIN

I'm not a dog, already!

MAIN walks up to the screen. Choices:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Anthro Hotties Subscription - issue 49. Want more than a double A rating in feline females? Tanya is this month's cover girl who has it all; chunky legs, a toned stomach and fur all over?! What is this?

DUNKAN

Uuuuuh, hmm... it's... nothing. Just... Some spam mail.

OR

MAIN

'Final Gear Entry 230

He did it again! Tom made it evolve
a stage further and we are now able
to communicate with it.

I was talking to Peter and we
agreed to let Tom come in once a
year to make her evolve.

For some reason it has made an
emotional attachment to him. In a
recent interview it said he makes
it feel safe.

Tom will grow to be one amazing kid
if he keeps this up.'

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Scientific study shows that dark matter exists. Whilst not visible, it is "dark" and only coloured when combined with more substantial matter. We call these rare instances 'Hudokai', which have formed links to the dark matter of creation, itself, channelling elemental energy through living sources. Scientists have linked the reasoning for this to the Weakly Interacting Massive Particles that form dark matter, but are baffled by the strength of Hudokai and are, quite frankly, scared of its use. Those who have Hudokai, have power.

DUNKAN

Oh. That's just an article I was researching and left open. Ignore it.

After options:

DUNKAN (CONT'D)

In a nutshell, we had you visit once a year, which aided the Final Gear's development.

TOM

I don't even remember ever coming to the lab. But that isn't the main thing concerning me.

(MORE)

TOM (CONT'D)

There's one major mistake with all these entries.

DUNKAN

Oh, and what's that?

TOM

You keep calling her 'it'... SHE'S A LITTLE GIRL!

DUNKAN

It is a monster, Tom. The things it did... do you just expect me to let it run free on Tri-Alpha?

TOM

No, but *she* is a little girl. I expect you to look after her and help her and maybe you might learn something, instead of just prodding and pulling and taking bits that you want out of her.

TOM walks to the office window.

TOM (CONT'D)

Look at her, Dunkan. She is a small girl who is just as confused as you are about what's going on... and you're treating her like a prisoner.

TOM heads towards the office door.

TOM (CONT'D)

I lost a lot of respect for you, today.

TOM walks off and out of the office.

DUNKAN

I'm sorry you both had to witness that. What we do here is well within the Reality Council's law, as you no doubt understand.

Options:

MAIN

That doesn't make it any less humane...

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

It's none of our concern.

LIONE

Actually, it really, really is.

After options:

LIONE (CONT'D)

To the matter, at hand. Your council transport vehicle. Remember?

DUNKAN

Ah, yes. That old relic currently helps channel energy into Nav-Tech Tower. It sits in the centre, wired in.

LIONE

What?! You'd use a council vehicle as... as... a circuitboard?!

DUNKAN

I think you mean resistor. At any rate, it's easily disconnected and can be put to use, but I figured there was little point. I don't plan on attending any meetings soon.

LIONE

We, however, do.

DUNKAN

I know, I know. You told me about the 'accident' with your Prison Ship and how it developed a faulty access code. I just don't understand how such a thing could happen...

LIONE

Yes... *ahem* Well. We must reach the centre of that tower, then.

DUNKAN

Easier said than done, really. But please, I have too many things to continue with, today. Come back tomorrow and we will speak about access and what you'll need to know about that tower.

MAIN

The fluff with that! I wanna get there, now.

LIONE

You'll have to ignore my angry friend. He doesn't know patience.

DUNKAN

Now if you'll excuse me, I must take this call... Hello Peter. Yes. He started, but... he knows. Yes Peter, I know, but we should have told him the truth.

TOM comes storming back in.

TOM

I'm going to Castle Cafe. I'll be back in the morning!

DUNKAN

As you can hear, he's not happy.

PLAYER resumes control. Once PLAYER is in the area of CASTLE CAFE, a short scene plays.

MAIN

Is that the "Castle Cafe" Tom mentioned?

LIONE

Shame it isn't a GFC...

MAIN

"GFC"?

LIONE

Galaxy Fried Chippen. I could do with a chippen singer burger... so badly.

MAIN

You're salivating like a dog, Lione! Whatever, let's just get some food at the cafe.

Story continues when PLAYER enters the cafe. TOM and HELEN are sitting in the corner.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Huh, will you look at that - Tom and Helen are here. Shall I call them over?

LIONE

Don't you dare. Whatever they're talking about, it's private. We'd be barging in.

MAIN

I'm gonna listen in, anyway. Sounds like it could be fun!

[ALIZA]

(Angry)

Fine. Let's just choose a table close by and eat. I'm starving and I'm not standing here any longer.

They all sit down at a table next to TOM and HELEN, who are too deep in conversation to notice.

HELEN

Tell me what's going on.

TOM

Look, I hardly know myself. I have to go and see my father for the first time in years because of the things that have happened today, so I would appreciate it if you didn't have a go at me.

HELEN

Err... I meant about you and the Final Gear. How does it know who you are? I've never seen you before in the lab and she's never been outside. It's not possible.

JESS, the waitress, comes over.

JESS

The new job not going so well, Tom?

TOM

Not as planned, Jess...

JESS

Chin up, Tom, you worked hard to get in. Keep at it, eh? And what can I get you, sweetie?

HELEN

Could I get a coffee, please?

TOM

The usual for me.

JESS walks to MAIN's table.

HELEN

I take it you come here, often?

TOM

Yeah... during uni, I would come here after seminars and do some work or just write my thoughts down.

HELEN

Uni was a fun and brutal experience for me, too, but... come on, tell me. How do you know the Final Gear?

MAIN

Hey, can we get some food over here?

JESS

Sure, what would you like?

Choices between CAKE, PIE and various other foods.

Jess walks off.

[ALIZA]

I couldn't help but notice all the hi-tech flying vehicles. Tri-Alpha is massively different from Earth.

MAIN

I'll be honest, seeing this city has made me really value living. Life trapped in stasis isn't a life. It's like being dead. I want to travel the three galaxies and... and see all the planets! We're freer than birds, Lione. What are the other planets like?

LIONE

Every planet is different. The council is always very careful about allowing the planet's inhabitants to know about other planetary life and higher technology if their planet isn't developed enough.

[ALIZA]

Developed? Like... if their technology isn't good enough, they can't know about other planets and their tech?

MAIN

So... if a planet was more basic, like... had cavemen technology and people, they wouldn't be allowed to have anyone from the other planets to visit them?

LIONE

Well, more like they can't let on they're from another planet, nor can they show their tech.

(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)

Take Earth 2400, for example. It was once aware of other life on other worlds, but then it went backwards with its technology, so they're only allowed to know of the info they had up until their tech went backwards.

[ALIZA]

So that's why we only knew about the monufor...

MAIN

There's so much to see and learn. I may not remember everything about my life before stasis, but there's a whole load of new sights and memories I want to add for when I do remember. Speaking of which...

LIONE

...You're eager for me to tell you. I understand. But it's not the time, yet.

MAIN

Oh, come on, Lione!

LIONE

Your talk on seeing other planets... that childlike glee... it's... very different to the Nova in the reports, that's all.

MAIN

Well, what about your home life? What's your home world like? High-tech?

LIONE

...Oh. My. Look at the time. It's getting late.

TOM

Helen, I have to get going. I need to see my mum. Err... did you want to... I dunno, head back with... me?

HELEN

...

TOM

Stupid idea. Sorry.

HELEN

Okay, well... see you at work tomorrow, then!

LIONE
We'll need to find a hotel for the
night. Even Tom's leaving.

PLAYER resumes control. When PLAYER rests at Hotel/Inn, there will be a scenario choice between LIONE and TOM. Only when both have been played out will the story continue to the next morning.

SCENARIO 1 - LIONE

LIONE walks out of the hotel, slowly.

LIONE (CONT'D)
(To herself)
Damn that Nova. I-I need to clear
my head. This late night walk
should do it. I just need to keep
myself occupied. Maybe I'll try and
explore another district? Yeah... I
will.

PLAYER resumes control. Scene doesn't continue until PLAYER heads to the underground.

CHAV
Oi, mate.

LIONE
Who, me?

CHAV
Got a lighter?

YES or NO options.

LIONE
Sorry, I don't smoke.

CHAV
Wot do you mean, you don't smoke?
Corse you do. Gimme some fluffin
money to get a lighter, or I'll
have to beat it outta ya.

OPTIONS:

LIONE
Here, take 20 Chronoss...

CHAV
Allright, mate. Cheers.

OR

LIONE
I don't have anything...

CHAV

*You havin a fluffin laugh or
someink? Got some nice tits,
though. Lemme have a feel.*

LIONE

Get the hell off of me!

CHAV

Bruvs, let's do her in.

PLAYER is beaten up and wakes up in an ally, all money in possession missing.

LIONE

*They took me by surprise... oh.
Nova's gonna be mad. They took all
our Chronoss.*

After options and when PLAYER heads back down if beaten up:

LIONE (CONT'D)

*You think you're pretty big robbing
me of Chronoss, don't you?*

CHAV

*You wandered down inta our gang's
turf, mate. You're asking for it.
We gotta think about letting people
pass after hours, when the tube's
stopped.*

LIONE

*The underground train? Isn't it
supposed to run all night?*

CHAV

*Yeah, but we can stop it at this
time o' night. Earn some dosh to
let people through, or they get
beaten up.*

LIONE

*The hell am I letting you keep that
train stuck in some tunnel. Under
the Galactic Preservation, I hereby
sentence you... to a beating.*

FIGHT with the thugs. After the fight, PLAYER resumes control, but the tube tunnels are littered with them. Eventually, there is a small underground train stopped in one of the tunnels. FIGHT with thug leader. He gives up the 'Status Effect' Hudokai.

LIONE (CONT'D)

A rare Hudokai sphere... and with that, the thugs won't ruin anyone else's night. I'd best get back to the hotel. I can rest easier, now.

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO 2 - TOM:

TOM is let inside a gate by a guard. He walks towards Nav-Tech Tower.

TOM

(To himself)

I wish Helen had come with me to do this. It would be so much easier with someone else there.

SOLDIERS all stand lined up at the tower entrance, in front of the glass doors.

TOM (CONT'D)

Best use the elevator to the right. It's for family-use only and I'm here to see family, after all.

PLAYER resumes control of TOM. PLAYER rides the elevator upwards. TOM gets out the elevator. Two guards stand nearby, next to a door. One of the guards stops him.

MULLENS

Tom. Your father is in a meeting and can't be disturbed.

TOM

I'm not here to see him. I'm here to see my mother, so get out of my way, Mullens.

THOMPSON

Oooooooh, buuuuuurn! Another stunt like that will see you on gate duty with Osborn.

The other guard, THOMPSON pushes MULLENS out of TOM's way.

THOMPSON (CONT'D)

Mr. Silver, please go through and see your mother.

TOM enters the room of red carpets, golden chandeliers and black furniture, all snuggled around a fireplace. A picture of TOM's mother and father sits on the wall, overlooking the room.

FIONA

Tom!

A girl with tangled hair and as much green as you could imagine walked into the room. Green leggings, a green dress and a green flower in her hair. FIONA LAWS.

TOM

Fiona!

They hug. Then let go.

FIONA

You look good in a suit... like your father.

TOM

Reminder to self - burn the suit.

FIONA

I'll get us some coffee.

(Beat)

So how have you been since that last term of uni when I had to buy you all that food?

TOM

Haha, yeah... I couldn't afford a lot. You looked after me. Like always.

FIONA

Well, someone had to whilst you grew up. Now look at you.

FIONA hands TOM some coffee from the kitchen.

TOM

So, how's my mother doing?

FIONA

Same as she has been since the last you saw of her. She's still 'there' but she can't move.

TOM

I...

FIONA

I don't think you'll ever stop blaming yourself for the accident, Tom. Just know that she's never blamed you, not even once.

TOM

If I'd been paying attention... That bus would never have hit her.
(MORE)

TOM (CONT'D)

She saved my life, pushed me out the way... and now I've paralysed her. I'll never forgive myself.

FIONA

Err... let's give her a visit. Take your mind off of things, eh?

They go into her bedroom. TOM's mother is sitting in a wheelchair, a computer attached to her.

TOM

Hi, mum.

TESS

Hello, son. How was your first day at work?

Her voice is all automated, from the computer.

TOM

Not what I was expecting, but I hope it will get better.

TESS

So, you know about her, now.

TOM

H-how do you know about her? Did... Did he make you promise not to tell me, like Dunkan?

TESS

No, he didn't. And don't talk about your father that way. He is a good man who only wanted the best for you. So, we decided that we wouldn't tell you... Do you remember the day of the accident?

TOM

...Yes.

TESS

I'd come to pick you up from the lab. You had just helped the girl evolve and she wanted you to stay. She said something bad would happen, if I recall. After my accident, your father and Dunkan tried everything to get the Final Gear to evolve in order to save my life... but it soon become clear that it would take time.

TOM

You knew all this and you didn't tell me?!

(MORE)

TOM (CONT'D)

(Beat)

Wait... Thinking back on it, the last time I was at the lab was when I was about 8, just before the accident. The Final Gear had evolved into what she is now. She... also looks about 8 years old. The Final Gear has an emotional link to me. It must do. It's connected to my age!

(Angrily)

Where is he? I want answers!

TESS

Tom, don't do anything rash.

TOM walks out and into the corridor. MULLENS is waiting for him.

MULLENS

Your father has asked me to make sure you leave the building, immediately.

Options:

PUNCH HIM, SPIN KICK HIM or SUPER POKE HIM.

After options:

MULLENS goes flying through TOM's father's door and onto his desk. PETER SILVER stands up, enraged.

PETER

How dare you barge into my office, unannounced! Leave.

TOM

So, you didn't want her to evolve through the teen years. Why?

PETER

I don't have to answer any of your questions. I would like if if you left.

TOM

WHY?

PETER

If it will get you out of my sight, then fine. When your mother had her 'accident', the girl was a problem. Your emotional state affected her so much that we had to keep her on lock-down.

TOM

So you skipped ahead a few years.
What do you think she will make of
all the things you plan to do to
her?

PETER

You have no idea what she is
capable of. I know you haven't read
the reports from the first attack
on the Shi people. How DARE you
question me!

TOM

If you've got nothing to hide, then
show me them!

There is silence. TOM angrily heads towards the door.

TOM (CONT'D)

I can't let this go on. She's just
a little girl. I won't let it.

PETER

(Chuckling)

You will fight Nav-Tech?

TOM

No. I'm not suicidal. But, I will
show that little girl that no one
will hurt her ever again. She
doesn't deserve this. She deserves
a LIFE.

TOM storms out of the room. Silence.

PETER

I'm proud of you...

SCENARIO 2 ENDS.

MAIN and LIONE [and ALIZA] wake up [to find MALKA waiting for
them in the room.]

LIONE

A new morning. Are you ready to see
Dunkan and head up that tower?

MAIN

Not until I've had some breakfast.

[MALKA]

So, you dirty stop-outs are finally
awake. You know, I went back to the
ship to expect you all to have gone
there for a nice, FREE night's
rest. Instead, I find you here.

(MORE)

[MALKA] (CONT'D)

You've slept in and missed all the news.

[MAIN]

News? I think you're the one who's missed out on what we're up to.

[MALKA]

Here. I'll show you this morning's news from the hotel's datapad.

LIONE

Hmm... a hotel datapad with this morning's news. No. Nova! Have you seen this?

NEWS

Many will remember the violent assault on the Shi, many years ago. With what is now known as Nav-Tech's 'Final Gear', the assault was led by Adho, a vicious protector of his living weapon. Racist and bloodthirsty, Adho escaped his imprisonment two nights ago. Police are investigating how he escaped and what he will do next. Caution must be advised to all work-goers, this morning.

[ALIZA]

I don't care if he's at large. We can take care of ourselves, especially after Razz.

MAIN

Adho? What does this all mean?

LIONE

It means a criminal is linked to the Final Gear and I don't like that. We need to see Dunkan, anyway. Let's make sure he and Tom are okay.

[MALKA]

And I'll head back to the ship. I'm not meeting up with Dunkan. He annoys the living scok out of me.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they reach Lab Zero. TOM is about to head inside.

TOM

Ah, it's Pug and the Vice-Warden.

MAIN

...Yeah.

Choices:

MAIN (CONT'D)
The surname's Nova, actually.

TOM
As I said, Pug Nova.

OR

MAIN
Actually, her name's Pomeranian.

LIONE
No, it's Lione Burgess.

After options:

MAIN
 Well, I'm glad to see you've not
 been attacked by the escaped
 convict. Yet.

TOM
 You still haven't caught him.
 Listen... I realise he is the one
 you were looking for, yesterday,
 and I think I may have some
 important information for you both.
 My father sent me a message, last
 night, detailing incidents from a
 while back, before he was captured.
 Look.

TOM shows the PLAYER PETER's message.

DATAPAD
 Personal Log Entry 3985 - Dunkan
 Cristalright - Initial Attack.

The day was like every other. We
 sat in the courtroom and discussed
 the science behind worm hole
 technology, when suddenly the
 attack happened. The doors were
 blown off of their hinges and hot
 metal shrapnel rained fiery hell
 down around us.

That initial explosion killed
 almost 30 people, alone.

The fighters dropped from the roof
 whilst the large man, who had blown
 the doors off, moved quicker than
 anyone could see.

(MORE)

DATAPAD (CONT'D)

Suddenly, he was in the air and above the fighters, flames flaring from his body, scorching all below him.

In the center of the room was a young woman. Her blonde hair flickered in the flames, reaching all down her back. Her skin was covered in a battle suit like no other; the long metal curved, making it look like she had wings made of crystal.

Without warning, my father moved. A deadly rush of wind blew past me, causing me to fall backwards... just in time to gaze upon her arm penetrating my father's head.

That day, we witnessed bloodshed.

MAIN

The Final Gear and Adho worked... together? The Final Gear, as in the one currently in Lab Zero?!

LIONE

You've provided, uh... invaluable information, Tom. It would be important for us to speak with Dunkan, next.

TOM

No problem. I'll let you in the lab.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they enter DUNKAN's office. DUNKAN and PETER are in there, together.

PETER

Good morning, Tom. Have a coffee. Are these gentlemen with you?

DUNKAN

Vice-Warden Burgess, Pug, I see you're both back. Would you mind stepping out the office and giving us some privacy?

TOM

No, they're with me. I showed them the file. It was important for finding the escaped convict.

DUNKAN

Ah.

TOM

Firstly, I want to say sorry to you, Dunkan. I read your personal report of the attack and I understand why you are angry... but some of the things in this lab can't be justified.

DUNKAN

I forgive you. And as for Adho... make sure you're all listening. This is important. Adho was something called 'a Protector'. The Gears were violent weapons, but each and every one of them had a 'Protector' which fended off their enemies, making sure their Gears were safe. Protectors had an emotional and psychological link with their Gears which determined the outcome of the Gear's behaviour.

TOM

W-what are you saying?

PETER

Tom, it's time for us to introduce you to the 'Protector Programme'.

DUNKAN

The Protector Programme started 2 years after the Shi first arrived. I was in the charge of the project, taking the Final Gear's DNA and inputting it into other men and women. We needed to create a new Protector, one with the Final Gear's powers so that it could develop, grow and be protected. Only one successful test subject was needed to make the perfect Protector.

Random people were taken into the lab to bond with it, but after years of failed attempts the project was closed down.

However, 6 months after the project was closed, the Final Gear bonded with a young boy. That boy was later used to evolve it again. That boy was you, Tom.

The Final Gear 001 project was designed for you when you feel you're ready to face the challenge.

Silence. Options:

MAIN
Better you than me.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
You're only ready when your mind
is.

After options:

TOM
The Protector programme... what is
it about, exactly?

DUNKAN
Well, the Protector must face a
series of trials in order to become
unified with their Gear. No one has
ever even made it that far, though.

MAIN
And what happened to Adho, the
first Protector?

PETER
He was... 'contained'.

LIONE
But now he has broken free and if
what you say is true, he has all
the power of the Final Gear. It's
only a matter of time before he
strikes.

DUNKAN
Adho has escaped?!

PETER
It's been all over the news. I
thought you knew! How have you
managed to avoid that coverage?

DUNKAN
I've had my head buried in work!
This is... very bad.

MAIN
I think if he was to attack, he
would have done it by now.

DUNKAN
Even so, I'm going to have to go
against my own enforced law. I'm
placing the Final Gear in your
protection, Tom.
(MORE)

DUNKAN (CONT'D)

She will live with you and be monitored here in the lab everyday. I have faith in you that you will become a great Protector. If she's safe anywhere from Adho, it's with you. Do you agree to this?

TOM

You think Adho will come for her?

DUNKAN

I do. The Final Gear was Adho's Gear, originally. He will want her back. No doubt to destroy more Shi.

TOM

Can I have the day to think about it, maybe take her out and get to know her?

Options:

MAIN

We will all pitch in. We can fend off Adho if he attacks before Tom's faced his Protector trials.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Time's of the essence. You take her out on your own now, you're dead meat.

LIONE

Unless we help protect her until Tom gains his Protector powers.

After options:

DUNKAN

Do as you want. It can only help. Tom, if you want to get to know it, take it out if that's what you want to do.

TOM gets up and is about to leave the room.

TOM

She needs a name.

DUNKAN

You're the one that has to protect it. You decide.

TOM

It's a her.

DUNKAN

And before you all leave, it's best to tell you all that the Reality Council vehicle sits directly in the centre of Nav-Tech tower. By that, I mean the central tower, between all the resident's towers. That's the tower that the Protector must take his trials in.

MAIN

By trials, do you mean dangerous challenges designed for the Protector to gain his Gear powers?! Do you mean we have to go through that, too?!

DUNKAN

I said it wouldn't be easy.

TOM

Let's go talk to Helen.

MAIN is angry. LIONE drags him out of the room with the others. PLAYER resumes control. They find HELEN.

HELEN

Good morning, Tom.

TOM

We are going out this morning, Helen. We need to talk through some stuff. And then later we are taking YOU out, Final Gear!

The Final Gear hides behind HELEN.

[ALIZA]

Don't be shy, little one.

TOM

(To the Final Gear)
How are you today?

KIM

Hello. I'm 001. How are you?

[ALIZA]

Hello, 001. I'm Aliza, and happy to have met you~

TOM

You sound so... robotic. I believe you're more human than that. Let's try again, okay? How are you today?

KIM

I'm... I'm having a good day, thank you. What's your name?

TOM

You see? That wasn't so hard.

KIM

Hello 'You see that wasn't so hard'.

TOM

No, it's... no, that's not my name. Sorry, I'm Tom Silver. I would like to be your friend, would that be okay?

KIM

(Chirpy)

I've never had a friend, before. I think we can be friends, yes! Where are we going, later?

TOM

That's a surprise you'll have to wait for!

(To HELEN)

Meet me in Castle Cafe for our lunch break. We're going to give her a name!

MAIN

See you there.

Story continues when speaking to HELEN at the cafe.

HELEN

So, as I understand it, you guys are going to help Tom out?

MAIN

Something like that.

HELEN

Oh Tom, this is all so amazing! You have to become her Protector. You could change the way she thinks! The people of Tri-Alpha could have the weapon they always wanted - one that can match the Gear army, if it comes.

MAIN

Run that by me again. Gear army? There is an army of those things?!

HELEN

Of course there's more than one.
It's just we have the only known
remaining Gear. The Final Gear. The
others have been lost to the
cosmos.

LIONE

So, basically, they could still be
about... and judging from Spectrox
Spacestation, it's a safe bet they
are.

HELEN

And as for a name, that's a great
idea. It will make it, no, HER
happy.

JESS, the waitress, walks over.

JESS

I've got your mountain breakfasts
right here.

MAIN

Aww, what about mine?

TOM

Thanks, Jess!

JESS

You're very excitable, today.
What's put you in such a good mood?

[ALIZA]

(Whispering)

Maybe we shouldn't tell all the
general public yet, if you get what
I mean?

TOM

I-I have my... sister coming to
stay with me. Yeah. She hasn't
really been in the city, before, so
we want to show her a good first
day.

JESS

Your sister? You haven't mentioned
a sister before, never in all these
years I've known you. Nevermind,
back to work!

JESS walks off.

LIONE

Sister? Really?

TOM

It's a long story, but... my mum was pregnant with a little girl. We had both already given her a name before she was born. But... when my mum had her accident, it... killed my little sister.

HELEN

I'm so sorry to hear that...

TOM

Her name was Kim.

Options:

MAIN

What a beautiful name.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Kind of an ugly name.

HELEN

I think it's beautiful.

After options:

TOM

You think so? Then it's settled. The Final Gear's name shall be Kim!

HELEN

We need to get back to work, Tom.

TOM

Already? Tsk. All right. Can you guys do me a big favour?

Options:

MAIN

Sure. We're only entering that tower when you do.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Get lost. I'm not doing anything.

TOM

I'll pay you for it!

MAIN

All right. What is it?

After options:

TOM

Can you purchase a bracelet for Kim?

MAIN

A bracelet? What for?

TOM

A silver one, engraved 'My little sister, Kim'. Please do this for me and meet me back at the lab. I'll let the Receptionist Guy know you're coming.

HELEN and TOM walk off.

LIONE

Best start in the shopping district, in that case! It's to the east of here.

PLAYER resumes control. The bracelet can be found in one of the shops. Only once the bracelet has been engraved, can the PLAYER be allowed to pass through Lab Zero's reception, again. Story continues when PLAYER speaks with KIM, in the kitchen area. TOM walks in with HELEN.

TOM

Ah, Pug! Thanks for doing that for me. That shift was tough, what with all that data...

MAIN

Nova. N.O.V.A. Not Pug.

KIM

Hello, everyone. Are we going out, now?

TOM

I've got something for you...

KIM

A present?

TOM walks over to KIM.

TOM

This bracelet makes us family. If you ever need anything, I will be there.

KIM

It says 'My little sister, Kim'.

TOM

Yes. Do you like that name? This bracelet represents that name and it's on silver, like my surname. I'm giving it to you.

KIM

...Kim Silver?

(Beat, then teary)

Thank you for giving me a name!

TOM and KIM hug.

HELEN

I'll just get Kim ready to go, as well as her ID pass.

TOM

Meet us by the lab entrance.

PLAYER resumes control. When they're about to leave the lab's entrance, HELEN appears with KIM.

MAIN

Are you ready to go?

KIM

Yes! Where are we going?

TOM

In any order; Skyship Axion, the Drowned Gherkin, Castle Cafe, the underground and, of course, Nav-Tech Tower. But we'll leave that one for last. The usual touristy spots are first!

PLAYER resumes control.

When Skyship Axion visited:

KIM

This is so wonderful! I've never felt so happy looking down from the sky, before!

TOM

Skyship Axion is well known for its spectacular views and family friendly fun!

KIM

I feel like I can walk on top of the world!

KIM jumps off of the deck and into the sky.

TOM

KIM!

KIM

Look, Tom! I can walk on the sky!

TOM

...

People start to gather at the edge of the skyship's deck.

LIONE

We've attracted way too much
attention. Let's move on.

KIM jumps back to the PLAYER and resumes control.

When Drowned Gherkin visited:

TOM

This is the Drowned Gherkin.

KIM

Ooooh! What's a gherkin?

TOM

Well, it's a type of food.

KIM

Can I eat this place, then?

TOM

No... it's just the name of the
building. It sank into the city's
river long ago because the base was
built on a swampy patchy of land.

KIM

I can't wait to see more of the
city!

PLAYER resumes control.

When Castle Cafe:

TOM

This is Castle Cafe!

KIM

I'm hungry...

They sit at a table and JESS appears.

JESS

What can I get you- ooooh, she's so
cute, Tom!

KIM
Hello. I'm Kim Silver.

JESS
Do you like ice cream?

KIM
What's ice cream?

TOM
It's cold, but delicious!

JESS
You've never had ice cream?!

JESS rushes away and then back again with a bowl of ice cream.

JESS (CONT'D)
Here, it's on the house!

KIM
Mmm! I like ice cream! It tastes sweet.

TOM
Haha, when you're done with that, I'll grab us some food to go and we'll look around the city some more, okay?

KIM
All done!

JESS
My, that was quick... here, take these pasties. They'll warm you up.

TOM
Thanks, Jess.

PLAYER resumes control.

When underground:

KIM
What's this place?

TOM
We call it the underground, or 'tube'. We use it to quickly get from one place to another, beneath the city.

CHAV
And we use it to get lotsa scock outta people. Give us your cash.

LIONE

And these are what we call 'bad people', Kim.

CHAV

It's the red-haired wench. Let's stab her.

KIM

Leave them... alone!

BATTLE with thugs.

CHAV

W-what's with the girl? L-l-let's get outta here!

CHAV and thugs run.

TOM

Wow, Kim... um. Let's get moving.

PLAYER resumes control. After all previous places, Nav-Tech tower is last. Story continues when PLAYER talks to MULLENS, now standing at the gate.

TOM (CONT'D)

We've gone everywhere but Nav-Tech Tower, now.

MULLENS

Unauthorised personnel are not permitted to accompany you through the gate. You're not getting past me, this time, Silver.

Options:

MAIN

What a douche.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Fair enough.

After options:

TOM

Mullens.

HELEN

I'm Helen Ravenstar of Laboratory Zero. I think you'll find I have a level 3 clearance into all Nav-Tech owned areas, including the tower.

MULLENS
(Snickering)
Yeah? Well... that girl can't be a
lab technician, can she? She's too
young to pass.

HELEN
What kind of logic is that?

MULLENS
She's not passing.

TOM
Right, then I'll make you move
aside!

FIGHT with TOM against MULLENS.

During the fight:

HELEN
Wait, Tom! Kim has an ID card,
remember?

TOM
Sorry, um... what was that?

HELEN
Kim can pass.

TOM
Let me beat him up some more before
telling me, again.

After fight.

TOM (CONT'D)
Here we go. Her ID - Kim Silver, my
sister. I don't think my father
would like it if he heard the way
you were speaking to her.

MULLENS
Fine. Go.

PLAYER passes through to the courtyard around the tower. When
they go to the elevator, the scene continues.

TOM
Apparently this elevator shaft is
one of six towers, or pillars,
which represent the rights that the
people of this planet gave the Shi
when they arrived all those years
ago. It makes me laugh, really.

KIM

Six different rights? For people like Dunkan? What were they?

TOM

Alliance - An alliance of our two races in the hope that in the future, we may extend our hands as one.

Trust - Trust in each other to be true and loyal.

Knowledge - To share and advance. To better ourselves and others.

Experience - Though our individual experience is different, as a whole we have experienced every event that has been and ever will be.

Protection - Galactic war will happen with new and old enemies. We will protect each other to the end of days.

Technology - To share and expand. To advance and become better.

I wonder which of these this elevator pillar represents?

They reach the top. Story continues when they enter TOM's apartment.

FIONA

You look a lot happier, tonight!

TOM

This is Vice-Warden Lione Burgess and her assistant, Pug. They're friends of mine. And this is Helen Ravenstar. She is a colleague of mine from the lab.

FIONA

It's a pleasure to meet you all. I'm Tom's mother's carer, Fiona.

TOM

And this is Kim, or as you might know her as, the Final Gear.

FIONA

Hello, Kim! Everyone's waiting around the dining table. Head on through.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when PLAYER heads into the dining room. PETER, DUNKAN and TESS are waiting. FIONA enters after PLAYER does.

KIM
Hello, everyone. My name is Kim.
I'm so happy to have met you all!

TESS
(Tearful)
Oh, Tom! You named her Kim!

TOM
She's family, now.

KIM
What happened to you?

TOM
This is my mum, Tess. Our mum.

TESS
I was in an accident. Don't you remember? You told me not to go, that day.

KIM
I... Remember. I sensed something bad would happen to you. I didn't want you to go. I... want to help.

A light explodes from KIM, enveloping both her and TESS.

PETER
What's it doing? Get it away from her!

TOM jumps between KIM and PETER.

TOM
I don't know what she's doing, but I... don't think it's bad.

THE light fades. TESS is on the floor.

PETER
Someone help her up!

TOM
Mum?

TOM tries to pick her up. Silence. Suddenly...

TESS
I-It's okay, Tom.

TESS pushes TOM away, astonished. Her voice is no longer robotised. TESS stands up. She stumbles, but then stands firm, resting against the table. Everyone crowds around TESS.

PETER
It's a miracle!

MAIN
She was paralysed! Now she's standing and talking? Kim is incredible!

TOM backs away and goes to KIM, who is on the floor.

TOM
Kim, are you okay?

KIM
I couldn't let her suffer just because I couldn't stop you from leaving, that day...

LIONE
Is she-?

TOM
She's just resting. Thank you, Kim. Thanks, little sister.

The tower starts to shake violently. An explosion is heard.

[ALIZA]
What the-?

PETER
He's found us.

MAIN
Who has?

PETER
Adho. He's homed in on Kim's energy output. I knew this was a bad idea!

MAIN
We all came here to help protect Kim until Tom was ready to take the tower trials. So we're ready to take on Adho!

PETER
No... but you're right. Tom needs to be ready to protect the Final Gear. Follow me.

Everyone heads into the living room. TOM carries KIM.

TOM

What's going on?

PETER

The tower of trials is in the centre of these apartment towers for good reason. It's quick access via our home. This bookcase will lead you there.

TOM

Now? You want me to take the trials NOW?

PETER

Adho will rip you apart. He will have to go through the outer towers before getting to that middle one. With any luck, you'll be ready by the time he reaches you.

MAIN

I said we were ready to take him out! We have Hudokai. We can defend Kim!

PETER

Be that as it may, there's something I haven't quite told you all, yet. Dunkan knows.

DUNKAN turns away, ashamed.

PETER (CONT'D)

The Gears are coming. They most certainly still exist out there, in the galaxies... And we have 2 years at most before they arrive here.

DUNKAN

It's not just me, they want. Adho attacked because of his grotesque dislike of the Shi. The Gears and their Protectors want to absorb technology and become stronger, smarter, better. All I understand is that they want to be the best in the three galaxies, so destroy any other life-forms that threaten them with their tech and absorb it. Tri-Alpha is the most high-tech planet in all three of the Reality Council's galaxies. We're next.

PETER

So, both you and the Final Gear need to be ready.

(MORE)

PETER (CONT'D)

You need to become her Protector
and protect the planet.

TOM

T-This is all so sudden. All right.
What do I do? Go in there?

PETER

Yes. It will lead to the trials.

MAIN

All right. It's time we did this!

PLAYER resumes control. After heading through the bookcase,
they reach a small room with a table and a screen. A syringe
sits on the table. TOM places Kim down.

TOM

This is madness! Yesterday I was
learning a new job, today I'm
learning to save the world!

MAIN

WE all have our responsibilities.
Once we get that council vehicle,
in this tower, our's is to warn the
Reality Council of the Cult of Kai.

LIONE

The galaxies are full of criminals.
It's the Galactic Preservation's
job to put them all to justice.

TOM

Damn. Well... play video.

The screen comes on. PETER's face is there.

PETER

Tom, if you're watching this, then
you have accepted that you are the
Final Gear's Protector. On the
table you will find a syringe.
Inside is the 001 infection - the
one with the Final Gear's DNA in.
You will have to insert this into
your blood stream. If successful,
it will continue to develop as you
travel up the tower, facing its
ordeals designed to bring out the
DNA's abilities in your system.
Good luck. You make me proud.

TOM walks up the syringe.

TOM

The syringe. It's either now or
never.

TOM injects himself and immediately screams out before falling to the floor, unconscious.

TOM (CONT'D)
AAAAARRRGHHHHH!

KIM wakes up.

KIM
W-what happened?

MAIN
We had to leave in a rush. Tom's taken some of your DNA and now we're all ready for him to become your Protector. Also, I'm hungry. Anyone else hungry?

[ALIZA]
Starving.

TOM sits up.

TOM
Uuungh.

KIM
Are you okay, Tom? Where do we go?

TOM
I'll be fine. We have to climb up ten floors before we can get out and away from this place.

KIM
I... I sense danger.

MAIN
Adho is closing in. We all need to prepare for him. Let's get climbing.

PLAYER resumes control. They climb the tower.

BLAZE
Initiate attack sequence.

A robot attacks TOM. Another attacks the PLAYER.

MAIN
Who are you and what do you want?

FLARE
I am Flare.

BLAZE
I am Blaze.

FLARE

And we are programmed to teach you
the basics of being a Protector.

BLAZE

Fight whilst guarding you Gear.

TOM and KIM fight BLAZE, whilst MAIN and LIONE [and ALIZA]
fight FLARE in a separate battle.

After battle:

BLAZE (CONT'D)

Lesson 2 - Power Abilities. Each
Gear has them and so does every
Protector.

BLAZE leaps towards KIM and electrocutes her. KIM pushes
BLAZE back with a surge of light.

BLAZE (CONT'D)

The Final Gear was the first of the
Gears and thus she is the hive
mind. Therefore, the Final Gear has
the united ability of all the
Gears.

TOM

How am I supposed to do what she's
doing?!

FLARE

The tower will teach you.

PLAYER climbs to the next floor, to encounter a large
monstrous beast. They all battle it. At the end of the fight,
before they defeat it:

TOM

Kim, how do I use this power? I
feel it building, but I don't know
how to release it!

KIM

I do it when it feels right, so-
Tom, move!!!

The monster is about to use a strong attack on TOM, but TOM
suddenly explodes with light and uses an attack of his own -
now his overdrive. The monster is defeated. After climbing
more levels, the two robots stop.

FLARE

Now face us as a team.

Fight FLARE and BLAZE. After the fight:

BLAZE

We now will terminate our
processors. You have both been
taught the necessary amount.

MAIN

The council vehicle must be close,
now.

PLAYER climbs one more floor. The council vehicle sits in the
middle, wired in to the tower.

LIONE

There it is! The Reality Council
shuttle!

A huge explosion knocks them from their feet. Everything goes
white, temporarily. When the screen clears, the vehicle is in
ruins.

MAIN

N-NO! How are we supposed to get
through the ion barrier, now?!

ADHO

You won't.

A sinister figure walks into the room. His face is covered by
a metal mask, long dark hair bursts out from the back of his
head, awkwardly, a battle suit straps to his body and a red
cloak dances behind him. ADHO.

ADHO (CONT'D)

At last, we meet again, Final Gear.

KIM

Adho, the first Protector...

Suddenly, TOM and ADHO race forward and start attacking one
another.

[ALIZA]

I'm going to look for a way out of
here! You deal with Adho!

[ALIZA leaves]

QUICK TIME EVENT FIGHT. Fire and lightning strike everywhere.
This continues up onto the next floor. Eventually, TOM is
blasted out of the side of the tower and on to the balcony
which rings around the tower external wall. ADHO leaps out,
fire blazing from his body.

TOM

You were there the day of that
attack on Dunkan!

ADHO

I remember the Final Gear's excitement to kill those dirty little Shi, the day of the attack. When she's mine, once more, she will feel that pleasure as we finish off what we started.

MAIN and LIONE leap out onto the balcony, too.

LIONE

There's a bridge. It looks like it leads to the hangars. I have an idea... I'll get the ship.

MAIN

And leave me here to fight Adho? Oh fine. Whatever. Now that our shuttle's gone, we're just going to escape? What about this planet?

LIONE

Tom's a Protector, now. I have faith in all of you. I need the ship for a quick escape. Hang tight. I'll be back.

LIONE rushes off across the bridge.

ADHO

Where do you think you're going?

ADHO tries to strike LIONE with lightning, but TOM jumps in the way, deflecting it.

ADHO (CONT'D)

No second-rate Protector can ever stop what we were destined to do. We were created to become better than any other race!

KIM

But it doesn't mean we should choose that path! I'm not a weapon to be used to kill innocent people. I'm Kim Silver... a little girl!

ADHO

Pahaha! Let's see what happens when I channel this world's electricity into one place. A storm to crush your pathetic Tri-Alpha 'friend'.

TOM

My name's Tom and I'm a Protector, not just of the Final Gear, not just of the people of this city, but the people of this planet.

MAIN

And, for the record, I'm Nova...
the one who will beat your ass!

BOSS FIGHT 5: ADHO.

During the final stages of the fight:

TOM explodes with energy.

ADHO

It's time. Face the power of a
storm's lightning bolt in your
face!

TOM

How about... I turn those clouds
into lava.... And blow it all back
at you!

There is a struggle between ADHO's lightning and TOM's attack
until eventually the lava wins, engulfing ADHO. The fight
ends. ADHO is nowhere to be seen.

After the fight:

The landscape is now charred with fallen lava. There is a
moment of peace before a skyship hovers next to them, police
in tow, news reports in another.

MAIN

We did it, but maybe the lava was a
bit too much?

KIM

Tom, I'm so sorry. Some people died
from the falling lava... I couldn't
stop it in time.

TOM

Fluff. I didn't protect everyone.

MAIN

You protected an entire planet.
Some casualties were bound to
happen.

POLICE OFFICER

Tom Silver, you are under arrest
until further investigation can be
placed over this incident.

MAIN

Are you kidding? This guy just
saved everyone!

TOM

I just stopped Adho from destroying
you all...

POLICE OFFICER

Did you kill him? Where's the body?

ADHO

Right here.

ADHO appears from the balcony, once more, enraged. He is not yet defeated. The POLICE OFFICER is flung from the top of the building. The news crew are destroyed by lightning. Chaos ensues.

MAIN

How resilient is this guy?! He took
a stream of lava to the body!

ADHO

None of you are strong enough to
stop me. And now... I will focus
the same attack on you and this
time I'd like to see you survive
given your current energy loss!

TOM

DAMN IT! ARRRRRRGHHHH!

The same lava stream and thunder bolt hit each other in the air, growing in size. The lightning is slowly winning. Lava rains down through the sky, around them, killing even more people in the city, below.

MAIN

It's not safe and there's nothing I
can do! This battle is out of my
league.

TOM

Kim, you have to get out of here
right now...

KIM

What are you saying? I can't leave
you here.

TOM

(Weakened, struggling)
Kim, listen to me. Nova helped me.
He can protect and hide you from
Adho... away from this world.

MAIN

I never agreed to this! The Gears
will come to this planet in 2
years. You both need to be here for
when that happens!

TOM

We know we both don't have the energy to fend off Adho for long, anymore. He's much stronger than us... But I'll go on living. Just you watch. Adho won't kill me. Look after her. Protect her. Protect my little sister.

The Prison Ship flies next to the bridge.

KIM

But... I... don't want... to leave you!

TOM

I'll always be with you, waiting. Now go!

LIONE

I've got the prison ship! What are you waiting for?! Everyone get on!

MAIN

Tom's not coming!

LIONE

Just GET ON! We don't have time!

MAIN

Damnit! Tom, you have my word that I will protect Kim!

MAIN pushes KIM onto the ship.

TOM

You're my family, Kim!

The Prison Ship blasts off and away from the planet, leaving TOM's fate uncertain.

TOM (CONT'D)

(In thought)

The Final Gear. 2 years studying Shi technology at university has led me to this - a Protector, fighting for Kim. And I succeeded.

There is a huge white light and explosion. Scene shifts to inside the ship.

KIM

TOM! Take me back! Take me back, NOW!

MAIN

I promised Tom I'd protect you. Don't let his sacrifice be in vain!

[ALIZA]

I don't think Tom's dead, somehow.
If he survives, he'll be arrested.

[MALKA]

Count yourself lucky, kid. Now
you're on a whirlwind journey with
us to get through that Reality
Council shield.

KIM

...Tom. He... he trusted you with
my life...

MAIN

And we'll grow stronger. We'll
protect you from the Gears.

KIM

...I... I don't need protecting. I
can protect myself. I... want to
prove myself. I want to be strong,
too.

LIONE enters the mid-section.

LIONE

The ship's on auto-pilot, now.
Anyway, a thought struck me. The
council shield is made of a very
strong ionic charge. It's repellent
in nature.

MAIN

So?

LIONE

Kim, do you think with your powers
you can take down that shield?

KIM

I... I could try.

MAIN

Hmm. That would definitely prove
you're 'strong'.

KIM

T-then I'll do it. And when the
time's right, we can return to Tom
and I can tell him of the adventure
I shared in space, with you all.

MAIN

Kim... there's a good chance Tom
isn't...

LIONE

Let her believe he is. There's no telling what happened down there. I think Tom may have pulled through, after all. For now, it's best to take her away.

MAIN

Okay. *THEN* we'll reunite you with Tom!

If MALKA has been picked up from planet Earth 2400:

[MALKA]

Next stop, the Reality Council!

If not:

LIONE

Next stop - planet Earth 2400! We need a Council member to authorise access and Dunkan isn't an option, anymore. It should be to the east.

REALITY COUNCIL

The Prison Ship reaches past the meteorite ring, where player fights several meteorites in space-battles, using their Cataclysm Cannon. Once through, PLAYER reaches a large ionic shield.

MALKA

So, I take it this kid's going to use her "magical" powers, now?

KIM

If it means rescuing Tom, later, then I'll use them.

Options:

MAIN

They're a little freaky, but they get the job done.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

The only thing 'magical' about them is the girl using them.

After options:

ALIZA

Rizumu understands, Kim. We'll look after you 'till we can rescue Tom.

KIM

...I can look after myself with my Gear power. Let me show you!

A massive white light envelopes the screen. When the white clears, the shield is gone.

Options:

MAIN

What awesome power!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

What unnatural power!

After options:

RIZUMU

Wowee Kim! You're amazing! You're like... a magical best friend!

KIM

Huh? Aliza? What do you mean?

RIZUMU

No, I'm Rizumu! I've fronted! Me, Aliza and Blake share the same body!

KIM

Hehe, thanks Rizumu. It was nothing, really.

LIONE

Now, we head to the Reality Council. We'll blast apart any asteroids with the Cataclysm Cannon and we'll warn the council of the Cult of Kai.

MAIN

And then Tom will be there to protect you, Kim. I promise.

The ship eventually lands in one of the docking bays. PLAYER resumes control on this facility until they reach a door.

MALKA

Authorisation code 942A.

COMPUTER

ACCESS GRANTED.

MALKA

The council hall is at the centre of this space station. Let's get moving. By the looks of the entrance, I'll dare say that Razz bag never made it here. There'd be bodies if he did.

KIM

The sooner we complete our mission, the sooner we can rescue Tom.

PLAYER explores inside the space station. At the centre is the main hall, where the council meeting is being held. On the way are ring-like corridors, with various shops and bits in for the workers.

LIONE

Aaaaaaaaah, a GFC!

ALIZA

Wow, even the Reality Council has a fast food chain. The Reality Council must be obese.

LIONE

As much as I hate to say it, any Galaxy Fried Chippen treat should be for later...

(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)
for now, let's speak with the
council's head, V.Len.

PLAYER enters the central main hall.

MATEUS
...And that's why Miss Greyback
needs the funding. The Splitter
Nuke will win us our dreams.

BEN
Of course, it will need testing,
first.

PIKHAUL
No one asked a mere Captain of the
Galactic Preservation.

LIONE
But a Captain none-the-less. At his
age, that's worthy enough to let
him be heard.

FRANCESCO
Vice-Warden Burgess. I know we
employ the Galactic Preservation to
serve the law of our three
galaxies... but we don't employ
your kind to speak out of turn.

LIONE
Why, you little piece of-

MALKA
-Of loveliness! Sorry for entering
like this. It's good to at least
see everyone is alive and
kicking... and that someone is in
my chair.

PHYLLIS
As Mr. Len's engineer, personal
assistant and closest friend, it's
my duty to sit in on these
meetings. Your chair happened to be
free, Malka. Lighten up, why not
sit in Dunkan's chair?

MALKA
...

PHYLLIS
Oh right, I suppose I could sit
there. Well, okay. Truth is,
Malka... I never liked you. You
even brought in strays.
(MORE)

PHYLLIS (CONT'D)

Strays that remind me of the one who killed my family. A stray that looks REMARKABLY like Nova.

V.LEN

A traitor walks among us.

Options:

MAIN

And that's why we've come. Warden Cyrril War is a member of the criminal organisation: "THE CULT OF KAI"!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

It's YOU! Haha, I'm just kidding. I joke.

LIONE

Warden Cyrril War is a member of the dangerous vagabond group called "THE CULT OF KAI"!

After options:

V.LEN

So, it's true-

MALKA

The cult threatens to use the rare "Hudokai" for their-

V.LEN

-I didn't know you were still alive, Nova.

PHYLLIS

(Furious)

Nova! You dare to show your face to the sole survivor to your onslaught?! Had I not been working here at the time, I'd have been... You mustn't be allowed to live!!!

MAIN

Huh?

V.LEN

Galactic Preservation! Arrest Mr. Nova!

LIONE

No, he isn't as bad as-

V.LEN
Resisting orders, Vice-Warden
Burgess? I thought better of you...

LIONE
How dare you! We have proof of the
cult's existence. Greg sits within
our Prison Ship-

MAIN
What did I do?! TELL ME!

V.LEN
Mass Genocide. Don't you remember?

PHYLLIS
(Distraught)
How can you not remember what you
did to Laverne?

MAIN
I... think... I recognise this
place...

V.LEN
So you should. You worked as a
physicist, here.

MAIN
I... I remember! My family were...
dying of an incurable virus. It was
only present in my solar system.

V.LEN
So you decided to steal two Genesis
Grenades from the lab - prototype
grenades with explosions the size
of a sun. Do you remember what you
did with them?

CUTSCENE. MAIN steals the only two Genesis Grenades in
existence, from the lab, then launches one into his sun, from
a ship. He warps out of there, just in time for his sun to
supernova and destroy all life in his solar system.

LIONE
...

MAIN
I... I... launched one into the
sun. Why the hell did I launch one
into the *SUN*?!

LIONE
With your sun having supernova'd,
millions of life forms were also
eradicated.
(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)

All because the M4 virus was incurable and had just taken the last member of your family. You were next. You got desperate.

MAIN

I... I must have been insane!

V.LEN

Indeed. At least you admit it! The virus was destroyed from that attack. You were sentenced to death. Why were you not killed?

MAIN

I was locked in stasis. Suspended animation.

LIONE

For life. He received fair judgement from the Galactic Preservation.

PHYLLIS

He deserved worse.

V.LEN

I will not stand for this! Sound the alarms. Kill them all!

MALKA

What about the cult? Tsk. They're not listening. Listen. You run for it. I'll stay here and "play" with my fellow council members.

KIM

Run!

PLAYER runs through the space station and away from other GP enforcers in order to reach the Prison Ship. Once they reach the ship, V.LEN catches up to them.

V.LEN

Escape is an exercise in futility. As Yeovil crowed, in the play 'Catharsis': "Your bodies shall become dust!"

BOSS FIGHT 6: V.LEN (1)

At the end of the fight:

V.LEN (CONT'D)

Argh! My energy core...! Don't go thinking victory is yours, Nova.

The fight ends. MAIN (NOVA) and the crew escape on the ship just as it is taking off, guards shooting at the exterior in pathetic attempts to hit the PLAYER. PHYLLIS catches up to V.LEN as the crew makes their escape.

PHYLLIS
(Concerned)
Mr. Len! Are you okay?

V.LEN
Never ask me that again, Phyllis.

PHYLLIS
I-I'll just tweak your energy
core...

V.LEN
But not before we allow those
cancerous stooges to escape.

PHYLLIS
(Angrily)
I won't let them! He'll pay for
killing my family!

V.LEN
Indeed. Send the fleet after them.

SCENE switches to the main crew in the prison ship cock pit.

PRISON SHIP
FILE: NOVA, REALITY COUNCIL
RESEARCH DIVISION. OCCUPATION:
PHYSICIST. IMPRISONMENT FOR MASS
GENOCIDE. CRIMINAL CLASS A.
VERDICT: LIFE IN STASIS.

MAIN
(To Lione)
You KNEW and you didn't tell me!

LIONE
Don't start this, now.

MAIN
You kept fobbing me off every time
I asked! Damn it, Lione! Tell me
why?

LIONE
You were... different... back then.
And you've proven to me that you've
changed.

The ship quakes.

ALIZA
We're being shot at by the Galactic
Preservation!

MAIN
I've got an idea.

Options:

MAIN (CONT'D)
Let's moon them.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Let's hide in the Nexus.

After options:

LIONE
Hmm... In the Nexus, we can hide
until things cool down.

ALIZA
The Nexus? The void between
dimensions? What about Aukaneck?
What about Malka?

KIM
You promised that Tom would be
there to protect me! You promised
he'd be there!

LIONE
You don't need protecting,
remember?

KIM
...

MAIN
Malka's a council member. She can
handle herself.

ALIZA
How heartless can you be?

LIONE
But he's right. Now, into the
Nexus!

ACT 2

THE NEXUS (NEXUS PART 2)

The ship rumbles and they land inside the Nexus, once again. They all step out of the ship onto rocky land.

LIONE

The Nexus - a town within the void.
No one can enter, no one can
escape.

ALIZA

So we're prisoners? Again.

LIONE

Unless we have a ship, which we do.

KIM

What if someone comes and steals
it? Will we be trapped? Will we
remain prisoners forever?

LIONE

What is your problem?

MAIN

Well, I know yours. *YOU'VE* never
been a prisoner, unlike us three.

LIONE

Like you'd ever know...

MAIN

As long as we take the
Sparkarlimaters, this ship won't
fly. No one can steal it.

ALIZA

Then let's do that, wait around,
then get out of here. I didn't join
your crew to become locked up,
again.

MAIN

Fine. Let's find Roke.

As the crew walk away from the ship, placed top-left to the Nexus town, this time, CYRRIL is seen walking out of the shadows and onto the ship.

PLAYER reaches ROKE's mansion to find it aflame.

MAIN (CONT'D)

!

ALIZA

Why have you brought us to this fiery hell?

LIONE

Roke's mansion...! He could still be inside!

Options:

MAIN

We have to rescue him!

ALIZA

But that would put all of our lives at risk! Fire kills.

MAIN

The longer we talk about it, the more likely Roke's dead!

KIM

...You said you'd protect me.

MAIN

And I will! But right now we need to protect Roke.

Everyone enters the mansion.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Leave the old 'coot to die.

ALIZA

W-what?

MAIN

I mean, we don't need him and there's nothing we can do, now.

LIONE

...I thought better of you.

ALIZA

I guess going in there would simply endanger our lives.

LIONE

But not helping... is criminal. I'm going in. Kim, I need your help to douse some of the fire with your abilities.

ALIZA

No!...

LIONE and KIM enter the mansion, only.

After options:

PLAYER must navigate the burning mansion and find ROKE's body. Incidentally, PLAYER can also choose to leave the mansion and leave ROKE. A countdown timer of several minutes will appear. If that timer runs out before ROKE is found, ROKE will die. No continues. He will remain dead for the rest of the game.

If PLAYER finds ROKE and drags him out:

ROKE
(Coughing, spluttering)
Damn it.

Options:

MAIN
A thank you would have been nice.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Take it easy.

After options:

ROKE
Thanks, kid... here, light this...
cigarette for me, will... ya?

MAIN
I would, but you're already
smoking.

ROKE
Haha, fair... enough... but listen.
My home was attacked by... a
Hudokai user...

MAIN
You're not suspecting us, are you?!

ROKE
Don't me stupid! This was Hudokai,
I know it was. Lightning... struck
my mansion... multiple times. They
wanted me... dead.

If PLAYER doesn't find ROKE in time, regardless of whether they entered the mansion or not:

LIONE
There's no way anyone could have
survived in Roke's mansion, by now.

MAIN

He's survived burns before. He'll be fine.

LIONE

Someone obviously attacked his home.

KIM

I sensed Hudokai...

After all options:

MAIN

...The Warden.

LIONE

Tsk. I... can't believe I looked up to that fake warden.

KIM

And I can't believe you put my life in danger.

LIONE

I need you, Kim. You've saved our lives more than once with your abilities.

Options:

MAIN

Kim is not a tool, anymore!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You're invaluable to us, 001.

After options:

ALIZA

You idiots, can't you see you've hurt both Kim and I with your selfish decisions? What reckless abandon!

MAIN

...

KIM

I... I don't want to be with people who will put my life in danger. Tom protected me. He allowed me to live. You just want to kill me.

RIZUMU

Kim! I'm your friend, aren't I?

KIM
I'm leaving.

KIM runs off.

MAIN
Kim! Fluff it. I didn't think she'd
run off, like that.

LIONE
Tsk. She's becoming more like a
little girl and less like an
experiment, every day...

MAIN
I suppose we'd better go look for
her.

Options:

MAIN (CONT'D)
I mean, she does have awesome
abilities, after all.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
She's a part of the team, now.
We're all in this, together.

If ROKE's alive:

ROKE
(Coughing, spluttering)
But first, kid... take me to a
doctor's.

After:

PLAYER resumes control. The PLAYER will have to pass the town
centre in order to find KIM, at the train station. A mass
amount of people have gathered in the town centre, with GREG
in the middle, on what looks like a small wooden stage so all
the people can see him. MATT is also in the crowd.

GREG
I supposed you're all wondering why
the Town Watch have come to address
you all?

LIONE
(Hushed)
Nova, it's Greg...

MAIN
I can see that!

ALIZA

But how did he escape stasis...?

GREG

I've come to tell you a story.

MATT

A story?

GREG

Yes, Matt. What brought you all here, today?

PERSON

You! We want to hear what you have to say!

GREG

Exactly. Your belief in me.

PERSON

You're our hero!

GREG

Belief guided your decision to see me, today. Something to believe in guides all of our decisions.

A visual flashback appears on the screen, in grey. GREG is shown to be mistreated by his parents, in church.

GREG (CONT'D)

When I was a little boy, I was born with... strange powers. Somehow, I had what is known as Hudokai powers. It was a birth defect. I now use this power to protect you. But... back then, my parents saw me as a freak. They were deeply religious. They believed in an all-mighty God and thought that I was a "sinful" creature. They brought me up, my father doing so purely on the grounds that they should accept everyone as equal, but they hated me, too. I wasn't treated well. They acted based on their religious views.

MAIN

He must have had such a lonely childhood...

GREG

Then one day, an accident happened. I poisoned my mum. It hurt me that she never hugged me, afraid of me and me and my powers...

(MORE)

GREG (CONT'D)

so I took her by surprise and gave her a tearful hug. She slapped me. The damage was done. My contact in mass amount had poisoned her. She died that night. The religious community mourned my mother... and shunned me. I was cast out on the streets. I was 8.

So I stand here today with an idea for you all. What if religious belief didn't exist? Let's face it - there are no Gods, just heroes who guide the way.

If religion didn't effect the law, my parent's actions and the community, NONE of that would have happened. I stand here as an atheist, one who believes in free will, one who imagines world without religion, but belief. Show me your belief in me.

MATT

That's CRAZY.

MATT walks onto the wooden stage.

MATT (CONT'D)

I'm a Catholic. Religion is what drives us. God does everything for a reason, for a greater good. We are all born in sin to overcome it and show our faith! Greg is a false prophet. He is guiding you all on a path of-

PERSON

Shut up.

MATT

W-what?

OTHER PERSON

Until I came to the Nexus, I believed in many Gods, but now... We must think about what religion has truly done for us.

GREG

It has created war and suffering. It is either convert... or be purged.

MATT

Purged? I know you mean well, but you need to chill, eat a hotdog and the Lord will forgive you.

I am faithful.

GREG

...Faithful 'till death.

GREG electrocutes MATT with his lightning Hudokai until MATT falls in a crumpled heap. GREG continues. MATT is ripped apart. Only blood remains.

MAIN

Matt! You killed Matt! You... You won't get away with this, Greg!

GREG notices MAIN and co.

GREG

Oh, the tiddly kiddies.

PERSON

You... killed an innocent man!

PERSON 2

He deserved it - he only lived with his religion because of a promise of a life after death. Now... we have a choice to live for the here and now! I believe in Greg!

Options:

ATTACK GREG ON STAGE, LET GREG CONTINUE, USE COMBUST HUDOKAI.

After options:

GREG

You see how strong I've become? Wouldn't you like to be like me? Wouldn't you like these powers? Now you can!

MAIN

W-what?

GREG

Hudokai-infused armour is something I've been working on since my days working on the Spectrox Spacestation. I've been able to take something dug up from the Nexus, thanks to my friend Cyrril, and channel its power into weapons and armour.

MAIN

Does that mean Greg invented my armour?!

LIONE

T-that spiteful criminal! The Warden's behind this, afterall.

GREG

Join me in my battle against religion and you will all receive this armour.

PERSON

We... will become super strong?

GREG

Yes.

MAIN walks onto stage, angry.

MAIN

Now hear me, everyone.

Options:

MAIN (CONT'D)

This armour won't make you strong.
What will, is your ability to
resist.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

This armour will make you super strong. I, too, wear something similar.

After options:

GREG

This man wears a prototype. An incomplete version... and he uses it against me! Everyone, destroy him and continue forth in taking out religion! I will make preparations from my tower.

PERSON

Hail Greg!

GREG leaves. MAIN tries to head after him, but the crowd of people create a deliberate barrier.

PERSON 2

B-but... killing is wrong. We all have a freedom of choice in what to-

PERSON

Kill her, too! Stop the armour guy!

MAIN

I don't want to kill you, but I
will knock you out if you get in my
way!

LIONE

We still need to find Kim, first.

ALIZA

I can't believe you forgot that.
Kim is important!

PLAYER resumes control. The streets are now littered with
fightable people. Some, in other screens, have the Hudokai
armour.

Story continues when PLAYER finds KIM at the TRAIN STATION.
WARDEN CYRRIL WAR is with her. As PLAYER approaches, the
WARDEN runs off.

MAIN

Kim! What was the warden doing with
you? Where did he go?

ALIZA

He didn't hurt you, did he? What
did he say?

KIM

He... said he would protect me.
That's all.

ALIZA

A-are you sure? Well, I'm here for
you, now.

RIZUMU

I missed playing with my Kim, so
much!

KIM

At least I have you, Rizumu.

MAIN

...

ALIZA

Listen, the town is in anarchy. If
you stick with us, we can protect
you, like Tom was promised.

KIM

...I don't need protecting.

MAIN

First you want protecting, then you don't! Fine. We will protect each other.

KIM

O-okay. I'm sorry I ran off. It's just... your disregard for life reminds me of Adho's.

MAIN

...

LIONE

Let's just head to Greg's tower and bring him down a peg or two.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they go into Greg's tower's front doors.

MAIN

Wow, he didn't even change the locks. This is too easy!

The camera moves to show GEIST in the room, waiting for them. An electrical fence surrounds the PLAYER.

LIONE

(To MAIN, annoyed)
You had to open your big mouth.

ALIZA

Another Nova?

LIONE

Probably him from a different dimension that got stranded here. He can't talk.

MAIN

Oh man... He's coming this way. I guess we've got to fight... myself. I wanted to avoid this.

PLAYER fights GEIST. After fight:

MAIN (CONT'D)

That's that. I don't really fancy killing myself, so let's just take his Hudokai and head up the tower.

ALIZA

You won't kill but you'll steal from the unconscious? What's wrong with you?!

PLAYER resumes control and climbs GREG's tower. Eventually, they reach the top, where GREG's room is situated. GREG is speaking to a girl, CAROLIN.

GREG
(To CAROLIN)
...the experiments of Greyback
showed the power to decide people's
own fate.

CAROLIN
But my fate isn't up to me! You...
you fused the Hudokai directly with
my body. You promised it would make
me stronger.

GREG
And it did.

CAROLIN
But I'm dying! The Hudokai is
sucking away my life and there's
nothing I can do! My fate has been
decided by YOU.

GREG
I said I was sorry. Carolin...
you're my world.

CAROLIN
All you do is destroy worlds.

CAROLIN gets up and walks to the door of the room, where the
PLAYER is. She stops.

CAROLIN (CONT'D)
Goodbye, Greg.

CAROLIN barges past the PLAYER and walks out.

GREG
Carolin!

GREG runs to the edge of the room, where the PLAYER now
blocks the way.

GREG (CONT'D)
Move it.

MAIN
You've done enough. Leave her
alone.

GREG
Fluff off. You barge into my
fluffing home and challenge me to a
fight?! Bring it, scockhead!

The tower shakes, violently. Everyone loses their footing.
The tower starts to slide to one side.

MAIN

What the hell? The tower's
collapsing!

GREG

Scock! This isn't over... I hope
you all get crushed!

KIM

Now it's my turn to protect you
all! Everyone...

MAIN

Kim, what are you-? ARRRGH!

KIM places everyone but GREG into a bubble and safely floats
them out of a tower window. As they are taken to safety, the
tower falls and crumbles at the base. KIM removes the
bubbles. A tank sits nearby.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Kim, that was amazing!

KIM

I can only make the bubbles fall.

BLAKE

Those are some powerful bubbles.
Hmm. Looks like a tank shot the
tower.

Max pops out of the tank's top.

MAX

Miss me?

LIONE

Max! So you're alive, after all. We
thought you were dead.

MAX

Wow, such a lack of faith in me.
Actually, the warden cushioned my
fall.

LIONE

Yes... we figured he was still
alive.

MAX

That guy's tougher than a tonne of
fluff.

ALIZA

Fluff or... Darkness?

MAX

Speaking of darkness, I finally remembered something - I have some dark powers taught to me by... someone... from my planet. I don't remember who or how, exactly, but it's been useful for getting away from those Cult of Kai guys. And look - I have a tank!

MAIN

I always wanted to drive one of those.

LIONE

Shut up, Nova, no you didn't.

ALIZA

So... you're an ally?

MAX

Wouldn't have cannoned the tower, otherwise! Listen, the warden's been mining for Hudokai. The Nexus has plenty of the stuff when you dig around, and that greedy warden's been adding them to Greg's current Hudokai stores, south of the town.

MAIN

Well, what are we waiting for? Let's get in that tank and head south!

MAIN jumps into the tank. PLAYER resumes control in the tank. Eventually, they reach the Hudokai Caverns entrance, south of the Nexus. They get out of the tank.

KIM

I sense strong amounts of Hudokai down below.

ALIZA

You can sense Hudokai, Kim?

KIM

Yes.

MAX

So, what are you all doing back here, anyway? I thought you wanted out.

LIONE

Long story. We're hiding low.

MAIN

Meanwhile, I have an itch to take to take out Cult of Kai members since no one else will, in this universe.

LIONE

The warden's most likely down there. Let's hurry... I want to give him a piece of my mind.

PLAYER resumes control. They explore the HUDOKAI CAVERNS. Plenty of optional Hudokai can be found. Story continues when they reach the bottom, where GREG and CYRRIL are, examining Hudokai. GREG is alive.

GREG

This strength Hudokai helped me survive that idiot's attack! We need to eliminate them, Cyrril.

CYRRIL

Then do it. You don't need my help. Not now, with all this Hudokai.

MAIN steps out of the shadows.

MAIN

I think we'll surprise you.

CYRRIL turns around, facing the PLAYER.

CYRRIL

So, you came back. As you see, I keenly awaited your return, knowing that the Reality Council would chase you here, into hiding.

LIONE

You knew?! That means... V.Len...

MAIN

The council head, V.Len, is a member of the Cult of Kai!

ALIZA

That's madness! V.Len's in charge of all world leaders in the three galaxies, right? He's the head of the council.

CYRRIL

Right. I've been making preparations for you.

GREG

With Hudokai in our grasp, our individual Cult goals can be realised. And since mine's already in operation, I'll kill you fools for crushing my tower!

CYRRIL

And then I'll pry the prison ship's energy from your dead grasp, ready to bring all the cult here.

LIONE

Not if I can help it!

BOSS FIGHT 7: CYRRIL WAR (2) and GREG.

After fight:

MAX

First Greg's tower, then you guys! We're so good.

CYRRIL

I will be the last one laughing.

GREG

Cyrril modified my tower, you may have noticed.

CYRRIL

Oh, but Greg, it's much more than interior decorating. I've been working on transforming it into a ship.

MAIN

Well, we knocked it down. We have you guys beat!

CYRRIL

Doubtful. It'll still fly.

Suddenly, FOLTIX appears from the shadows and stabs GREG from behind. His blade pierces through GREG's stomach.

GREG

AAAH! Scocking hell! What the fluff?!

FOLTIX

(Weakened)

You all thought... I was dead, right?

MAIN

Foltix?!

CYRRIL slyly backs away, unbeknownst to everyone.

MAX

I thought you were stabbed?

FOLTIX

I was... and it doesn't matter what feeble individual did it... 'cause I'm now stabbing Greg!

GREG

F-F-Foltix... my best friend...

FOLTIX

Once upon a time, maybe. It's... no fun following a crooked friend...

LIONE

It really isn't. Some criminals CAN reform, eh, Nova?

FOLTIX

But not Greg! That madness up there... isn't what we agreed upon. So now... I'm taking you to the afterlife with me!

GREG

You idiot... there's no afterlife!

FOLTIX

Then you'll die in darkness.

MAX

Foltix...

FOLTIX

Goodbye everyone... and thank you.

GREG

Arrrrgh!

Both FOLTIX and GREG die from their fatal wounds. Hudokai is scattered around the caverns. Once picked up and PLAYER Speaks to LIONE, story continues.

MAIN

The Hudokai caverns... are collapsing!

KIM

The warden has activated his new space shuttle to blast off in.

MAIN

We're getting out of here and following that ship!

MAX

Wait! I wanna come with you!

LIONE

I thought you said home was here?

MAX

I know what I said, all right? But I'm not home, am I? I'm stuck with a burnt house, away from my home planet. I don't know who I am or where I come from. We make a good team. I'm coming with you.

LIONE

Great, but let's not dilly dally!

MAIN

We're not letting him reach the other cult members beyond the Nexus!

PLAYER resumes control. Timer to exit the caverns. Once exited, story continues once PLAYER reach the prison ship.

PRISON SHIP

WARNING! PURSUIT OF ENEMY CRAFT.

Tactics fight against Warden CYRRIL WAR's new Tower Ship. Once over, a cutscene plays of the ships leaving the Nexus. CYRRIL's ship shoots the prison ship.

PRISON SHIP (CONT'D)

O2 UNIT CRITICALLY DAMAGED. OXYGEN LEVELS DEPLETING.

LIONE

Damnit! He's hit our O2 unit! We have to land somewhere, immediately!

MAIN

Cyrril's going to escape!

LIONE

And we're going to die if we pursue him! We need oxygen to BREATHE!

MAX

Great, I finally join to find my home and then I get killed. What a great leader, YOU are.

MAIN

Shut it, Max! I'd like to see you do better.

ALIZA

Do I have to do everything around
here?

ALIZA runs to the control panel and shoots the Cataclysm
Cannon at CYRRIL's ship.

ALIZA (CONT'D)

There! I've shot the back of his
thruster things. He'll struggle to
return to the Reality Council, now.

MAIN

Aliza, you're a genius! All right,
let's land on the nearest planet
and get another 02 unit. THEN we'll
stop the cult.

CHIMERA (PLANET DUSKWIGHT)

The Prison Ship lands roughly on the planet Duskwight, in the wasteland. Whilst it doesn't crash, it does throw everyone off of their feet.

KIM

What a rough landing...

MAIN

You're telling me!

LIONE

I feel somewhat helpless now that the Reality Council leader, V. Len, is a Cult of Kai member.

MAIN

He'll hunt us down. So, there's only one thing for it. We take down the cult, ourselves.

LIONE

You'd... do that, Nova?

MAIN

Well, they're obviously corrupt and they're after us, so why not go after THEM, too?

MAX

Uh, because they'd probably kill us. Come on Nova, use your head.

KIM

If we unite our abilities, we could protect the three galaxies from the cult and the Gears. We'd do a lot of good.

MAX

Why don't we just calm the fluff down and not make any rash decisions? Otherwise you can all just sit your li'l arse down and just watch yourselves get killed.

LIONE

Then it's settled! We will redeem ourselves in the eyes of the law by hunting down these Cult of Kai criminals!

MAX

Is anyone fluffing listening to me? It's like I'm invisible.

MAIN

Right. First thing's first - let's
get off this ship and find an O2
unit.

MAIN and everyone get off the ship to find themselves
surrounded by people with weapons. A character dressed in a
lengthy red trench coat points a metal arm at the crew - a
gauntlet. His face is that of an angry fox, orange and fiery.
PHOENIX FOX.

ALIZA

Guns!

MAIN

Look, Lione - a friendly gun-
wielding welcoming committee!

PHOENIX

Are you Minotaur or Chimera?

Choices:

MAIN

Minotaur.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Chimera.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Capitarl.

After choices:

PHOENIX

And why have you come to the
Chimera encampment? Do you plan to
stop our attack on the prison
tower?

Choices:

MAIN

Actually, we're here to join.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

What's Chimera?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We're here to stop you!

After choices:

LIONE

We're here to join Chimera.

PHOENIX

...And that's why you crashed a hi-tech looking ship into our encampment, mere minutes before our operation.

MAIN

We wanted to make an impression.

PHOENIX

Haha, I like you! You've got some balls.

MAIN

The other three don't. They're girls.

ALIZA

Pft. Doesn't mean we can't fight our own.

LIONE

God, Nova, you're so misogynistic.

KIM

I will protect everyone with my power.

PHOENIX

A lady's man, huh? I envy people like you. All right, fine. We're all here to break into the Capital's prison tower and rescue a guy call Stynx. If you don't keep up, you WILL be left to the wasteland sands. Keep that in mind, Mr... uh...

MAIN

Nova.

LIONE

Lione Burgess.

ALIZA

Aliza Legion.

KIM

Kim Silver.

MAX

Max Judge. Judges all. Including you. I don't like you.

PHOENIX

Good. All right, everyone, let's move out!

LIONE

If we stick with these guys, for now, we can ask about an O2 unit after we've helped with this mission.

PHOENIX

Everyone on the hovering sandships!

Everyone jumps aboard small hovering boats, above the dunes. As the ships whiz off across the desert wasteland sands, the title CHIMERA appears - the planet's story name.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

We're going to intercept a sandship full of nitroglycerin headed for the prison tower. Apparently it helps the prisoners stop getting heart conditions in that horrid environment or something. I don't care. I just know it's highly explosive. We commandeer the sandship and ram it into the side of the tower to get in. Any questions?

MAIN

Yeah. How the hell do WE survive?!

PHOENIX

Don't sweat it. We're aiming to get the captain of the law in the explosion, not us. He'll be on that shipment of nitro, so be careful.

The small boat eventually catches up to a larger sandship, flying across the wasteland. Characters scramble and shout, all of different race, gender and species, on board. All are dressed in muddy green colours.

An anthropomorphic terrier dog moves forward a step on the larger boat. He wears a short, green jacket and earthy coloured trousers. Long grey hair flows from his head, his fur matted and white. His arms are crossed. His expression is stern. DRELIS CUTTER.

DRELIS

A lily pad in a storm, gentlemen. Rock the pad too much and we all sink, you hear? Those barrels are highly volatile. Best keep 'em for either the prisoners or the Chimera, know what I'm saying?

MARA (O.S.)
It's show time, Fox.

PHOENIX
Now!!!

Everyone leaps onto the larger ship, where DRELIS is. DRELIS ducks to the side as PHOENIX shoots out electricity from his gauntlet. It misses. The other people, dressed in green, poise their weapons at the crew.

DRELIS
Don't shoot them... yet.

PHOENIX
(Literally)
I missed you.

DRELIS
Missed you too, Fox. Was wondering when you'd get back in my cross hair after that incident in Grimoire.

PHOENIX
That's not what I meant, Drelis. Besides, Grimoire didn't have the MAGIC I was looking for. Turns out Falsafe did.

MAIN
You two know each other on a personal level?

PHOENIX
(To MAIN)
It's a long story. We're always at each other's throats.

DRELIS
(Seething)
Foxes are the only ones who bite another's throat, here. So, it was you who bust into Falsafe labs. That technology belongs to-

PHOENIX
I don't care. That tech, or rather, this gauntlet belongs to me, now... and I'm going to use it to bust up this roller coaster ride.

DRELIS
Then prepare for a horror show.
(To his guards)
Men, fire!

BATTLE with many guards (and barrels). In-battle dialogue:

MARA (O.S.)

Aim carefully, Fox. That gauntlet can release an electrical needle. Should the charge hit, it will dissipate their molecular structure.

PHOENIX

Yeah, yeah. Next you'll be telling me 'I can use my fists to punch'! Honestly, Mara, you talk as if I'm going to screw things up.

MARA (O.S.)

Well... you do have a habit of-

PHOENIX

The only thing I have a habit of is making this look cool. Shooting those barrels should add some explosive humour to the situation.

MARA (O.S.)

And I know you like explosions. Try not to shoot them all - we need them for the Static Prison.

MAIN

Are you talking to someone?

PHOENIX

Mara. She's our tech-gal speaking to me on my ear-piece. She'll be giving us Intel during our dangerous mission... and danger's what I live for!

After finishing all the fights, DRELIS leaps onto PHOENIX. They have a Quick Time Event fight.

MAIN

We'd better wrap this up! The tower's just ahead and I'm struggling to control this vehicle!

Eventually, PHOENIX frees himself from DRELIS.

PHOENIX

JUMP!!!

The sandship smashes into the tower's front, causing a large explosion showering shrapnel across the wasteland and splitting the sky with a crack. The screen clears to show everyone in the sand around the tower. The people accompanying PHOENIX are no longer around. PHOENIX gets up and dusts himself down. A siren blares.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

I do like explosions, me.

ALIZA

Are you trying to get us all killed?! You stupid... moronic... oooh, I don't even know what or who you are! You're just stupid. End of.

PHOENIX

The name's Phoenix. A wily fox. And don't fret. We're still alive, aren't we?

MAIN

More than I can say for the rest of the group!

MAX

What's the matter, Nova, can't handle a little explosion? Got sand in your pants?

MARA (O.S.)

That could have gone much better and you know it, Fox.

PHOENIX

You worry more than these guys, Mara. All we have to do is find Stynx and get him the hell out of that tower.

MARA (O.S.)

(Sighing)

Try not to get beat up, this time, Fox.

PHOENIX

The name's Phoenix for a reason, you know.

Bodies lay scattered around the outside of the tower. Curative Pills can be found on them DRELIS lies unconscious. If PLAYER interacts with him:

MARA (O.S.)

Best not to touch him.

PHOENIX

Yeah, I don't know where he's been.

After interaction, story continues. PLAYER must enter the tower through the blasted hole.

LIONE

We've got small radios linked to our ship. It would be great if we could hear this 'Mara', too.

PHOENIX

Keep your skin on. I've got it covered. Hear that, Mara?

MARA (O.S.)

I'm changing my signal to a different frequency. Can you all hear me now?

Choices:

MAIN

Yeah.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Nope.

MARA (O.S.)

Really? Lemme try just changing-

LIONE

He's joking. I can hear you fine.

MARA (O.S.)

Oh no, not another joker...

After options:

MARA (O.S.) (CONT'D)

I've hacked into the layout of the tower. The most notorious criminals are restrained up top. I'm willing to bet Stynx is chained up there.

MAIN

Great. Now all we need to do is fight our way up there.

MARA (O.S.)

Before you do that, make sure you head to an ATM to set your battle party should you engage in combat. Only four people should fight at any one time. Anyone more and we'll draw more unwanted attention.

MAIN

Gotcha. ATM to switch party members.

PLAYER resumes control. An ATM sits next to them (these are SAVE POINTS and PARTY SWITCHERS). Eventually PLAYER reaches a corridor of grimy cells. Empty. At the end, an anthropomorphic crocodile stands guard, heavily armoured. In-game music fades out, leaving just the sirens.

As the PLAYER approaches, PHOENIX shoots an electric needle at the crocodile. It hits him, but he is unaffected.

MAIN (CONT'D)

It... didn't effect him!

CROCODILE

(Angrily)

Care to explain?

PHOENIX

You're in the way.

CROCODILE

Oh, I get it. You're the reason why Static Prison is on high alert!

PHOENIX

Took brains to figure that one out.

CROCODILE

You're not getting through. My post is here and here I'll remain. You'll have to have more reason to get past me than because you want to!

PHOENIX

You want more? Okay, your face is ugly and could do with remodelling. Capeesh?

MAIN

No, seriously, what's a capeesh?

LIONE

Urgh... it means 'understand'.

MAIN

Ah, like you don't capeesh me?

LIONE

You still don't get it...

CROCODILE

You lot have five seconds to justify your actions.

PHOENIX

Five seconds is more than enough.

BOSS FIGHT 8: CROCODILE.

In-game dialogue:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)
Mara, why is the gauntlet not
working on him?

MARA (O.S.)
It only breaks the molecular
structure of organic creatures.
This guard is wearing inorganic
armour. The gauntlet's shocks don't
do a thing to him unless you attack
his face or remove his armour.

PHOENIX
Fine, I'll just give him the
pummelling of his life!

After fight:

MAIN
I love stupid brutes who leave
keys.

PHOENIX
The key to freedom.

MARA (O.S.)
No doubt Stynx is behind that
closed cell door. You know what to
do with those cell keys.

PLAYER enters the cell, behind where CROCODILE was standing.
A tired hulk of a man stands, shackled to the wall. He wears
grey prison garbs and a red bandana on his head. He is dark-
skinned with icy blue eyes. STYNX CASPIAN.

STYNX
(Hoarse)
Feeding time, already?
(Beat)
I didn't know fox was on the menu,
tonight.

PHOENIX
I hadn't planned on human, either.

STYNX
Heh, heh. So you know, I'd prefer
crocodile. Or Capitarls.

PHOENIX moves forward with the keys and unshackles STYNX as
they talk.

PHOENIX
Then you're in luck. The croc's for
dinner and tomorrow morning's
breakfast is Capitarl.

MAIN

Right, I'm confused. Who're the
Capitarl?

STYNX

These guys with you?

PHOENIX

Apparently. They're not from the
city, that's for sure... And
they're clueless as fluff.

MAIN

Hey, we capeesh!

LIONE

Urrrgh...

STYNX

Capitarl are the city folk... those
who work for the capital city. They
act as the city's private guards,
or law enforcement, or whatever.
They keep only the strongest people
who can survive this bleak
wasteland... and throw out the
'weak' to the sands. They're the
Capitarl.

PHOENIX

And we're against them.

STYNX

You're... a member of Minotaur?
That rebellion against the
Capitarl?

PHOENIX

Pft. Minotaur are only good enough
for double-crossing. I'm one better
than that. I'm a member of Chimera
and we're recruiting.

LIONE

I take it Minotaur are another
rebellion, then, surviving in this
wasteland?

PHOENIX

You catch on quick.

STYNX

And you want me?

PHOENIX

Why not? We want strong people to
take on the capital city, Capitarl.
(MORE)

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

I want a strong team to take down Mayor Mateus.

STYNX

Save me a bullet and I'm in. Mateus will pay for rejecting me from Capitarl. I'm still alive. I can still fight. I'm no weakling.

PHOENIX

None of us are. We plan to gain the capital city back.

KIM

We're all more than just strong-willed. We can all survive, together, and fight the oppressors.

PHOENIX

Smart kid, you got there.

MARA (O.S.)

Watch your back, Fox. No doubt more guards are on the way. There's time to chat, later!

STYNX

A lady friend? My, my.

PHOENIX

I'll introduce you all when we get our hides outta here.

STYNX

Wait. I need my Sedation Cannon. She's my pride and joy. No doubt she's holed up in this facility, somewhere. We find it and I'll be able to cause some real damage.

PLAYER resumes control. An ATM sits nearby. Eventually, they'll find a once locked room with the cannon in.

STYNX (CONT'D)

There it is! My dear Sedation Cannon. She delivers nothing less than a piercing train of hot steam to the face. One blast knocks down even the toughest of creatures.

PHOENIX

Interesting weapon. Like a bazooka that can toast bread. I like it.

STYNX

It can do more than toast. It can barbecue.

PHOENIX

Those Capitarl sound even tastier.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they reach the entrance of the tower and head out into the wasteland. People dressed in green await them - Capitarl. Too many to take on.

MAIN

Well, what now?

DRELIS

Admirable. Truly admirable. Not only do you secure your demise, but you condemn an imprisoned man to meet the same fate. You're like a virus, Fox. Infecting others without cause.

STYNX

General Drelis Cutter. Right-hand dog to the mayor. The number two. The scock.

DRELIS

Stynx Caspian, the one who tried to assassinate me. The one I caught. A shame my leniency with you is at an end. And who are these rogues? Chimera, also?

MAIN

Nova. And these are my faithful dogs.

LIONE

That will never get old, will, it Nova?

DRELIS

Nova... I've... heard that name, before.

PHOENIX

(To DRELIS)

Hey, Drelis, how's the head feeling?

DRELIS

Sore, but pain is a mere window we must endure for the more pleasurable aspects in life.

PHOENIX

I meant the head. As in Mayor Mateus.

(To MAIN)

Where does this guy find my compassion? I'm not giving him any.

STYNX

Capitarl are stupid like that.

DRELIS

Fluff it all to hell. Ready, men?
Take aim!

A hovering sandship veers across towards them. Sand, screeching, style. A young female feline sits in the front. Gunfire from the Capitarl. Metallic ricochet. The vehicle swerves towards the PLAYER.

PHOENIX

Leap in!

Everyone jumps into the vehicle. Sand sprays behind them, obscuring the Capitarl.

MAIN

This must be Mara. Kinda like Malka, but more useful.

PHOENIX

(To MARA)

Took your time!

The grey, anthropomorphic feline sits in the driver's seat. Short, dark hair sits on top of her head, a midnight goggle over one eye, red utility jacket on her body, sleeveless. Knuckle dusters. MARA SWANSONG.

MARA

And you didn't?

STYNX

The wait was worth it.

ALIZA

Urgh, stop eyeing the cat up.

PHOENIX

Hey, Nova, fancy taking the wheel? You proved yourself back there and I get that backseat driving's no fun.

MAX

Hey, what about me? I can drive a tank!

MAIN

Ah, but this isn't a tank. It's a hovering sand thing.

MAX

Shut up.

MAIN

Anyhow, you read my mind, fox-face.

DRELIS watches everyone drive off into the distance.

DRELIS

(Angry, respectful)

Until next time, Fox.

PLAYER resumes control. They are in a vehicle which can travel around the open world of the wasteland. Cracked mud. Sand. Small survival groups dotted around the desert land. All fight to live.

Whilst driving:

MARA

I've uploaded the marker for Chimera HQ into your Prison Ship map. Follow the marker on the map and eventually we'll reach our destination.

PHOENIX

Everyone, meet Chimera's intel; Mara the tomboy.

MARA

Am not!

STYNX

Well, you could show me what makes you a girl, instead.

MARA

...I think I'll pass.

PHOENIX

(Stage whisper to MARA)

Play along and he'll most likely stay with us. We need his strength.

MARA

Oh. Right.

(To STYNX)

Maybe later, you, uh, hunk. You.

PHOENIX

He'll totally go for that.

STYNX

I'm in there!

(Beat)

By the way, I didn't catch your name, fox.

PHOENIX

Phoenix Fox, actually. Chimera's finest.

MARA

So he likes to think. He just likes getting out there and messing things up.

STYNX

I like a hands-on type of guy. We're gonna work well as a team. I thought you were from Minotaur.

PHOENIX

Minotaur and Chimera are opposite ends of the spectrum. They're idiots and we're the intelligent bunch.

MAIN

I don't get it. I thought you were both survival groups out here in the wasteland?

STYNX

Don't you both want to take down Mateus?

PHOENIX

Survival of the fittest. As long as there are other survival groups out there, we will always attack one another in order to, you know, survive.

MARA

Same goals, but bitter enemies. I think we're all better off becoming one group and taking the mayor together.

STYNX

Well, whatever. Wake me up when we get there. I'm too hungry to keep talking.

Eventually PLAYER reaches a volcano base where Chimera HQ is. The area is an open expanse surrounded by volcanic walls to hide them from the outside. They reach a dark hangar.

PHOENIX

I'm going to go and see if I can find Grumpy.

MAIN

Grumpy?

A frail bird of a man walks into the hangar, hair thinning, lab coat dirty. BERNARD FAWKES.

MAIN (CONT'D)
(Realisation)
Ooooooh. Grumpy.

BERNARD
Right, well we're off to a flying start! Hot-head relies on tomboy, meanwhile silver-boy relies on everyone. Then there's this cannon chump itching to make love to anything that moves! And where am I in all of this? Listening to your incessant blathering over your communications.

PHOENIX
As much as I'd like to listen to you pot shot insults, grumps, I've got a mission to sort out, now that Stynx and these guys are with us.

MAIN
Who said we were sticking around?

PHOENIX
You're Chimera. We broke Stynx out of prison for our main operation.

LIONE
Actually, we want something in return.

BERNARD
You find some wasteland rats and all they do is take-take-take! You're pathetic, fox.

PHOENIX
Now, now, they did help us. Let's hear 'em out.

Options:

MAIN
We're from space.

LIONE
Nova!

PHOENIX
Space, eh? Figures, what with you guys being so weird and all.

ALIZA
Hey!

LIONE

Well, I suppose you're not an underdeveloped planet... just one ravaged to wasteland proportions.

MAIN

We're after an O2 unit - something that gives out oxygen on space crafts. We need to breathe out there.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We need an O2 unit.

PHOENIX

O2? Like... oxygen? Or like zero two, but you're just saying it like one of those annoying people who can't tell the difference between Oh and Zero.

LIONE

Like oxygen. We're... actually not from this planet. I'm from the Galactic Preservation. We need an oxygen unit to breathe out there.

PHOENIX

Ah, so that explains the random hi-tech ship.

OR

MAIN

Yo mamma so fat, people thought she was a crash-landed blimp.

PHOENIX

A crash-landed blimp?

ALIZA

From space!

PHOENIX

Oh, I get it. You guys must be from space. Not from this planet.

MAIN

And we need an O2 unit to breathe oxygen, otherwise our space blimp, yo mamma, won't rise and support us!

PHOENIX

Don't choo dare talk about my mamma.

After options:

BERNARD

Tsk, the only place that has anything that sophisticated is the Capitarl, itself!

PHOENIX

Sorry to burst your bubble, but since the solar flare dried this planet up, only the Capitarl have the highest tech and best resources. Even my gauntlet was theirs before I stole it from Falsafe town.

LIONE

Solar flare? This planet is a wasteland because of that?

PHOENIX

Yeah. Planet Duskwight is often forgotten about and I'm pretty sure Mayor Mateus of the Capitarl doesn't mention it at the Reality Council meetings. The solar flare happened ages ago and now, the only surviving city is the capital city, Capitarl.

MARA

With resources so limited, anyone not seen as 'strong' is thrown out the wastelands, ready to die in the next solar flare. Only the city has the tech to survive - the solar shield.

PHOENIX

So, if anywhere, the Capitarl lab will have an O2 unit.

MAIN

Great. Then all we have to do is bust in.

PHOENIX

Slow down there. We're trying to bust into the city ourselves. That's why we're doing all this.

STYNX

So, the idea's to take down Mateus and take the city by force?

BERNARD

Pah! Fox hears of cannon chump's notoriety and the first thing he
(MORE)

BERNARD (CONT'D)

does is go after him. We could
blast away that iron door,
ourselves!

STYNX

Iron? That'll melt right down with
my Sedation Cannon.

PHOENIX

See? Now, get this man some food
before I feed him bird.

BERNARD

I call the shots, not you! Find me
in the meeting room for the next
mission.

MARA

I'll escort Stynx to some food and
rest until then.

BERNARD

(Bitter)
Welcome to Chimera.

PLAYER resumes control. Beyond the hangar is a small town
around the volcano - the encampment that makes up the Chimera
fortress. A makeshift building stands high in the middle,
made of rock. Other small buildings dot the site, such as...

LIONE

Hell's bells, Chimera has a Galaxy
Fried Chippen!

MAX

Oh, I get it! You're a GFC nut. We
have to go in.

ALIZA

I'll just have the salad.

LIONE

No. If we're going to GFC, we're
getting the full meal. If you're
gonna be unhealthy, you've got to
go the whole hog.

ALIZA

Lione!

LIONE

It's like going to a brothel and
having a hug. You just don't do it.
We're going for the full shabang.
We're having the "Galaxy Feast".

MAX

The menu says that's 50 pieces of deep fried chippen, spicy wedges to feed an army, unlimited refills of Ion Brew, 12 chippen burgers, 4 litres of ice cream and a free toy!

LIONE

I know. The sooner we start, the better.

MAIN

Holy scock, Lione! You're more bad-ass than I thought!

KIM

GFCs must be all over the three galaxies. Oh, oh, if we go in, I want the toy!

A character called SLOPPY SCOCK can be found and paid for as a mercenary who will join your team for a short while.

SLOPPY SCOCK

You looking for hired help, colonel?

YES/NO. If yes:

SLOPPY SCOCK (CONT'D)

The name's Sloppy Scock.
Unfortunate, I know. I travel the stars as a hired mercenary. I'll fight for anyone if the price is right. War is my life.

He joins the party as a temporary, optional character.

Story will continue when PLAYER enters the central HQ building. SCENARIOS.

SCENARIO 1 - V.LEN AND PHYLLIS:

A run down apartment. The living room links up to the open plan kitchen. On one wall, large windows reveal a sunset and strange coloured grass, beyond. This is PHYLLIS's apartment. PHYLLIS is lying on the sofa/coach, watching TV. V.LEN enters the room, dejected.

V.LEN

Phyllis... I don't think I can summon the strength. My heart may wish to go on forever, but my mind... it's collapsing under the weight of existence.

PHYLLIS

And I'm collapsing under the weight of your melodrama, but you don't hear me complaining.

V.LEN

Oh, but you do. I've heard you sometimes sob when your thoughts turn to the oblique loneliness of your existence. Sometimes, in your eyes, I see you have given up on yourself, instead choosing to put your faith in my own goals and reasoning.

PHYLLIS

Yeah, sometimes.

V.LEN

Does it not crush you, the severe depression of never quite living up to everyone else's expectations?

PHYLLIS

Yeah, when I let their thoughts invade my own. Thing is, I know them others are projecting their own dreams of success onto me, and onto you. They're just as much failures as each and every one of us. I know what those other cult members say about you, and looking at it from the outside, I know they're wrong. Then I can look at myself and with my own thoughts, also realise I'm my own person, and not someone else's failure. Then I get on and listen to some screamo rock, 'cause everything in life needs more screamo.

V.LEN

I don't think it's worth continuing...

PHYLLIS

So, that's it, then? You're going to commit suicide and forsake all we've achieved?

V.LEN

...

PHYLLIS

Who was it that kept you going when you were found in the Canarrian Blizzards, face-down and alone?

V.LEN

You.

PHYLLIS

Was was it that crafted you a metallic body and energy supply to keep you from your fears of death?

V.LEN

Phyllis, don't-

PHYLLIS

Who persuaded you to not rip out your heart when Johnny Way slaughtered that performance of "Cramlet" on stage?

V.LEN

I had never witnessed anything so awful. You persuaded me to instead slaughter that man.

PHYLLIS

We had fun, didn't we?

V.LEN

It was worth every drop of blood.

PHYLLIS

Is it worth giving up on the pursuit of happiness? I once wondered the same thing, when he... when NOVA took away Laverne.

V.LEN

I know. Your sister lives among the stars, once more. The void has reclaimed another soul. She has been assimilated within dark matter, and when we achieve our goal, she will live once again... through ME.

PHYLLIS

Mr. Len, you mean...?

V.LEN

Yes, Phyllis. You have reminded me why I must go on. Those suicidal thoughts must cease.

PHYLLIS

I'm so relieved. I want you to be my greatest success, not my greatest failure.

V.LEN

Projecting your own dependencies through me? Doesn't that undermine what you were saying?

PHYLLIS

Oh, shush, you. I'm only trying to help.

V.LEN

Yes, I suppose so. After all, I would be quite lost without you.

PHYLLIS

NOW who's projecting their own dependencies onto another?

V.LEN

Uh, quite.

PHYLLIS

I'm gonna need a Klawcalot bar after that fiasco.

V.LEN

I will unlock the secrets of Hudokai for a better universe and to ensure death is but an afterthought. I will LIVE ON.

END OF SCENARIO

SCENARIO 2 - MAIN AT CHIMERA HQ:

MAIN (NOVA) enters the CHIMERA HQ building.

MAIN

We're here to report for the O2 unit. Where do we start?

The meeting room is full of machinery. A table sits in the middle. A screen hangs above the wall furthest from the entrance door.

BERNARD

The Minotaur encampment.

PHOENIX

The Minotaur encampment?! What the fluff for? They're our rivals.

BERNARD

To get into the Capitarl city, we need to take down their power and deactivate their protective shield.

PHOENIX

That's great and all, but then the city won't have any protection for us.

BERNARD

We'll only need to temporarily take it down, numbskull! And to avoid detection, we'll need some slow-eroding acid.

MAIN

And Minotaur have this acid?

PHOENIX

So we've gotta steal it from them? Simple stuff, then.

ALIZA

Simple only if we sneak in and out! We'll have to go in a smaller group. Some will have to stay behind.

PLAYER chooses a party of two. PHOENIX will be in party, regardless.

ALIZA (CONT'D)

Minotaur won't know what hit them!

END OF SCENARIO.

Once both SCENARIOS have played out, story continues at the CHIMERA HQ building.

PHOENIX

All right, Minotaur's encampment is somewhere to the east in the wasteland. We've gotta find it.

PLAYER resumes control. When PLAYER finds the encampment and depending on party members:

IF SLOPPY COCK IS IN THE PARTY:

SLOPPY COCK

War has changed. It's no longer about nations, oil or who has the bigger explosion.

PHOENIX

What're you blabbing about? Of course it's about who has the bigger explosions.

SLOPPY SCOCK

It's an endless series of foxy battles, fought between humans and furries. War has become a well-oiled scock. One without territory and race, where survival means nothing.

PHOENIX

Hang on, it's ALL those things. We're fighting for ownership of the city. Now, stop your foamed monologue, sit the fluff down and stop giving away our position.

SLOPPY SCOCK

War has changed.

AFTER:

IF MAIN OR MAX IS IN PARTY:

PHOENIX

Oh snap, they've seen us.

MAIN/MAX

So much for a stealthy approach.

PHOENIX

You read my mind. Let's blow up their minds.

MAIN/MAX

Shouldn't that be 'blow their minds?'

PLAYER fights various MINOTAUR enemies.

OR IF LIONE IS IN PARTY:

PHOENIX

Oh snap, they've seen us.

LIONE

We'll have to cause a distraction and sneak in whilst they're preoccupied with that.

PHOENIX

Let's blow them up.

LIONE

Are you taking this seriously?

PHOENIX

They've seen us. A head-on approach is all we can do, now.

PLAYER fights various MINOTAUR enemies.

OR IF ALIZA IN PARTY:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)
Oh snap, they've seen us.

ALIZA
This is your fault. We should've
left the vehicle a few rocks back
and snuck in by foot!

PHOENIX
Keep it cool, yellow coat. We'll
just have to fight our way in.

ALIZA
Fine. If I die, it's your fault.

PLAYER fights various MINOTAUR enemies.

IF KIM IS IN PARTY:

PHOENIX
Oh snap, they've seen us.

KIM
'Snap'?

PHOENIX
Yeah, you know, like a kiddy
friendly version of scock.

KIM
What's a scock?

PHOENIX
Er... let's just prove ourselves to
these guys that we have the biggest
scock. Um, no, I mean explosions.

PLAYER fights various MINOTAUR enemies.

When all enemies are beaten:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)
Unconscious bodies, just the way I
like 'em. I think I've found the
phial of acid. It's not much. Let's-
wait. Someone's coming. Hide.

PENNY GREYBACK walks into the encampment and eyes the
unconscious bodies up. She has long wild, dark hair and a
bizarre mismatch of grey and yellow clothing. She wears a
grey lab coat with what looks like a bright yellow scarf
around her waist, yellow gloves boots. She has a scar on her
cheek. She speaks quickly all the time.

PENNY

(Mumbling to herself)

Stupid wastelanders, wasting space
and their precious time surviving.
The next solar flare will be soon
and they'll all die, die, die. Good
thing Chimera took them out before
I got here. Luck, that was. Luck,
luck, luck. Wasn't prepared to
fight. This ground will do, yes it
will, it will do. Ground is weak,
here. I thought it might be. I came
here to check, check, check. Trip
not wasted after all, eh, Penny?
Smooch the ground up and the
splitter nuke will do the rest,
boom, boom, boom. Must make
preparations. Must return to Mayor
Mateus. Happy, happy days!

PENNY leaves.

PHOENIX

What the hell was that all about?
Well, whatever, we've got to take
this acid back to Chimera.

PLAYER resumes control. If SLOPPY COCK is with them as they
enter CHIMERA HQ, he will stand in front of PHOENIX, briefly.

SLOPPY COCK

I've fulfilled my services. Thanks
for the payment.

PHOENIX

I feel so... used! All right,
Sloppy, hopefully I'll see you
again, some time.

SLOPPY COCK

Likewise.

SLOPPY COCK leaves. Story continues when they reach CHIMERA
HQ and go inside the middle building for mission briefing.

BERNARD

Finally made it, have you? This is
war, you know, and only becomes a
funeral march if you make it o-

MAIN

Let's just get down to business.

BERNARD

(Beat)

Right.

A projection lights up on the back wall. It shows a picture of an immense iron door. Throughout the presentation, more static pictures will be shown of the mission location.

BERNARD (CONT'D)

For the sake of our now rejuvenated new recruit and smoothskins, as well as a reminder to everyone else, this is Maiden Gate - the iron door you slackers are going to bust through.

STYNX

It'll be child's play providing you guys cover my back whilst I work away at that door.

PHOENIX

I'm always up for a brawl with Capitarls.

BERNARD

Pay attention! You runts won't know heads or tails otherwise! The things I do for Chimera...

MARA

Once inside, we'll have to keep to the shadows - our mission is reconnaissance, which means keep out of sight and gain some intelligence with our enemy. Got that, Fox?

PHOENIX

What's with you making out I fumble things up? I can be quiet when I want to.

MARA

You never want to, that's the problem.

BERNARD

I said listen to me! No youngster's gonna steal my thunder for this brief! Now, once that door's down, lover-boy's gonna make his way around the outside of the facility. That phallic cannon needs to melt the iron on the pylon just north of the building. That will crush their communication array, ahaha!

PHOENIX

Stynx gets all the fun.

BERNARD

Shut your face! You're gonna receive a camera to take some high quality shots. All you've got to do is find the specific locations and take a photo of them.

PHOENIX

Now that's a pretty picture - I enjoy being the main man.

BERNARD

Shame you're no man.

MAIN

Besides, if anyone's gonna be the main man, that's me. What's our role in this?

BERNARD

Since you're only here to steal an O2 unit from the lab, silver-hair, your role is whatever the hell you want it to be. Since we're dealing with a group to bust up the pylon, a group to head inside the gates and a group to fend off the entrance, you figure out how you wanna split your sad fluffy hides up!

MAIN

We're not fluffy. We're smoooooooooth.

ALIZA

Where are we headed, anyway?

BERNARD

Capitarl, itself. The very west of the city holds a newly built generator with an iron security door.

STYNX

Capitarl has all the power it needs. Why build a new generator?

PHOENIX

Exactly. That's what we want to find out. That's why we needed you.

BERNARD

You don't speak for all of us, hothead! Focus on the mission. Take five photos of the generator inside the building.

(MORE)

BERNARD (CONT'D)

And I don't mean five
of the same photo, I mean the
metres, the energy, the pipes, the
winch and the pistons. The usual
generator components. Got that?

PHOENIX

Loud and... very loud.

ALIZA

So hang on, if we're using the acid
on this generator's pipes and the
city already has all the power it
needs, wouldn't shutting down this
generator do nothing?

PHOENIX

You're on the ball, yellow coat.
We're going inside the generator
for information. The acid's for ALL
the generators surrounding the city
and ALL their pipes.

MARA

I'll be stationed, hidden out the
front. We don't want any suspicious
Capitarl guards waltzing in on us
and blowing our cover.

BERNARD

So, that's three teams. Take the
camera and that Sedation gun and
move out, already! The Capitarl is
up north of the wasteland.

PLAYER obtains camera and resumes control. Once out in the
wasteland:

MAIN

I guess we're all in the same boat,
now. All thrown out to die, chased
by the law, eh Phoenix?

PHOENIX

...Yeah. I... do think about my
family, from time to time.

MAIN

Care to divulge?

PHOENIX

...No.

LIONE

Nova, think twice before asking
someone about their family. The
likely answer will be no. So shut
up and let's keep moving.

PHOENIX

Mother...

As PLAYER drives around the wasteland in a sandship, audio accompanies them, from PHOENIX's past:

MOTHER (V.O.)

(Desperate)

Phoenix! Phoenix! Hide!

Echoed sounds of explosions pepper the background.

YOUNG PHOENIX (V.O.)

Why do we have-

MOTHER (V.O.)

Shhhh.

DRELIS (V.O.)

(Muffled)

I know you're here! The moth hides in darkness, but soon shall seek the flame.

PENNY (V.O.)

Keep your flowery gob shut, Drelis. You'll upset the kid's father. Haha.

YOUNG PHOENIX (V.O.)

(In alarm)

Dad?

MOTHER (V.O.)

He's gone, remember? Phoenix!

The sounds of scrambling.

PENNY (V.O.)

Gotcha!

MOTHER (V.O.)

No!

DRELIS (V.O.)

And thus the moths burn.

YOUNG PHOENIX (V.O.)

Let go of me! Dad! Dad!

PENNY (V.O.)

Your dad's dead, thanks to this civil war, war, war. And you know what that means! Those strong enough are Capitarl. Those aren't, like you lambs...

MOTHER (V.O.)
(Sobbing)
Please! Not the wasteland! Anything
but the wasteland...

DRELIS (V.O.)
Her husband was a valuable member
of our forces-

PENNY (V.O.)
What are you bab, bab, babbling
about, Drelis? We have no need of
trash, junk, weak. Mayor Mateus's
orders are rule!

DRELIS (V.O.)
There is no other way.

Dialogue cuts back to present day.

MARA
You okay, Fox?

PHOENIX
Huh? Oh. Yeah. I just had something
on my mind.

STYNX
You and me both, brother. You and
me, both.

PHOENIX
We'll keep going left once we reach
the city wall. Should take us to
the right generator.

Eventually, player reaches this wall. They head to the
generator and Maiden's Gate, the massive iron door in front
of the generator.

MAIN
So, the city's sun shield thing
only goes out up to their walls and
not beyond?

MARA
That's right, otherwise we wouldn't
even be here right now. The
generators aren't protected.

ALIZA
That's a bit stupid.

MARA
The external metal can take it. The
iron doors can't, however.

STYNX

All right! It's time to toast this baby.

STYNX fires a continuous stream of energy at the fortified door. Several Capital guards in the area are alerted and come running. Everyone engages them in combat to keep them from STYNX. After the battles, a large hole is left where the door was.

PHOENIX

A saintly job.

MAIN

Huh?

MARA

He means "holy".

STYNX

Well, whatever. I'm gonna head 'round back and begin phase two of my mission. It's time to pick them teams. First team goes in with Fox, second team comes with me.

MARA

What about the third team to stay with me?

PHOENIX

You just lay low on your own. I know bird-brain said for a team to be lookout, but we really don't need it.

MARA

(Sarcastically)
Thanks.

PLAYER picks one team of three and one team of four.

PHOENIX

Time to head on in and takes those photos. I'll see you guys on the other side.

MARA

See you both when you're done.

SCENARIO CHOICES between PHOENIX, STYNX and a V.LEN scene.

SCENARIO 1 - PHOENIX:

PHOENIX

We need to take photos of the metres, the energy, the pipes, the winch and the pistons.
(MORE)

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

They'll probably show up on the mini map when we're close.

PLAYER resumes control inside the grimy, yet somehow new generator. Ambient steam hazes the corridors. Photos can be taken in any order. Photo will be taken when PLAYER positions themselves on a highlighted area.

When pistons PHOTOGRAPHED:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

I've pistoned it away. That's a photo for the collection.

When pipes PHOTOGRAPHED:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

They kept this one piped up. That's another photo out the way.

When acidic energy PHOTOGRAPHED:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

That stuff looks deadly. Best not go near that kind of energy. That's another snappy snap for the album.

When winch PHOTOGRAPHED:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

It looks like the Capitarl use this to lower themselves below the main generator. That's a photo for the bird-brain.

When metres PHOTOGRAPHED:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

I recognise these metres. They were being used to measure the energy input into my gauntlet. The one I stole.

MARA (O.S.)

That's odd. Are they planning on more experimental weaponry for war?

Footsteps. A voice. A figure sneaks into view, tied red hair back, a blue scarf, black clothing and... human. She wears a metal gauntlet on her right hand. DRAGON DUNE.

DRAGON

The energy's the experimental part.

PHOENIX swings around, immediately blasting an electric needle at the figure. She deflects it with a gauntlet of her own. A thin walkway.

The middle of the room is the central generator. Beneath their raised level is a deadly green energy.

PHOENIX

Deflected? I see you "borrowed" the other gauntlet, Dragon.

DRAGON

I see you also made it here, Fox.

PHOENIX

So go on. Hit me with it. What's the energy about?

DRAGON

Naturally, Minotaur reached here before you Chimera folk did, so we've already examined the generator.

PHOENIX

Oh really?

DRAGON

Yes really.

PHOENIX

No way.

DRAGON

Yes way.

PHOENIX

Then how did you get in?

(Beat)

I thought so.

DRAGON

W-Whether you arrived first or not is none of my concern! We're obviously here for the same reason and I obviously examined the energy better than you did.

MARA (O.S.)

(Struggling)

Fox, I'm having a bit of trouble!

DRAGON

And you're not going anywhere to help her, either. None of you. We haven't finished our examination, yet.

PHOENIX

Can it, Dragon! I know your Minotaur survivors are harming Mara. I'm done here.

DRAGON
Well, I'm not!

BOSS BATTLE 9: DRAGON DUNE,

In battle dialogue, at various points:

DRAGON (CONT'D)
(Mocking)
Is that all Chimera's capable of?

AND

DRAGON (CONT'D)
Survival of the fittest! Always has
been, always will be.

AND

DRAGON (CONT'D)
I heard Mateus' right-hand girl,
Penny Greyback, talk about
launching a nuke. Maybe they're
going to aim it at you?

PHOENIX
Wait, that's it! We heard Penny
talk about launching something at
you guys at Minotaur.

DRAGON
Cut the scock.

PHOENIX
Sounds painful... but I'm serious
about this! This energy must be
used for that nuke.

DRAGON
It won't save your feline friend,
babbling like that...

After fight:

An explosion. A pylon smashes through the back of the room's
generator wall. STYNX is on top.

STYNX
Oops.

PHOENIX
That's my exit.

PHOENIX and the group jump across the gap between the walkway
and the pylon.

DRAGON

You do know that the green energy will fuel endless weaponry that will be used against us Capitarl rejects, right?

PHOENIX

Starting with that nuke. Fight fire with fire, I say. I'd love to stick around and chat, but I'm too busy surviving. This recon mission is over.

Everyone escapes through the hole, leaving a seething DRAGON to her own devices.

DRAGON

This is far from over, Fox!

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO 2 - STYNX:

STYNX

All right, bubbas, we're gonna crush the Capitarl's communication array. That Bernard bird wants me to melt the pylon 'round back and topple it. Your jobs are just to accompany me. We'll follow this generator wall 'round. We need to melt away the pylon's middle, so we gotta climb the pylon a bit, first.

PLAYER resumes control. The path is initially quiet, but then rogue Capitarl members show up, as do various Minotaur members. Fights ensue. Eventually, PLAYERS reach the pylon and climb it.

STYNX (CONT'D)

Remember, duckies, I'll be focused on the pylon with my Sedation Cannon, so you'll have to fend off any Minotaur members who come my way. It looks like they've invaded this territory, like we have.

When they reach the middle of the pylon, Quick Time Events will play to melt the pylon and snap it in half. It will topple and crush the wall of the generator. PHOENIX will be there. He will jump out.

PHOENIX

Good work, stinky.

STYNX

It's Stynx. I'm the one with the laser cannon, so watch your mouth.

PHOENIX

We're not done, yet. Minotaur are here. Let's regroup at the front.

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO 3 - V.LEN:

PHYLLIS's apartment. PHYLLIS has headphones around her ears. V.LEN is reading some notes on the living room table.

PHYLLIS

(Singing badly)

Ne-ne-ne-ne,
The darkness came a-running,
Made a grab at me,
Before I did a runner,
I gave it the knee,
As it chased me down,
I stopped, I halted, I frowned,
I said, all out of breath,
"I ain't scared of death!"
YEEEEEEEOOOOOOWWWWWWWW!

V.LEN

Cease your catawauling.

PHYLLIS

But it's Noctane and the Baby Fish!

V.LEN

Then the Baby Fish lies. Everyone is scared of death. Very much so...

PHYLLIS

Oh no, it's not the Baby Fish who sings, Mr. Len. It's Maximillion.

V.LEN

"Singing" is a subjective term. It's hardly musical theatre. Now, "Ortus and Noctis", THAT's music!

PHYLLIS

Urgh. More like a lullaby.

V.LEN

Perhaps one day you will appreciate what the extension of life has gifted me with - the happiness of life's forgotten pleasures?

PHYLLIS

It's rather not know about your "forgotten pleasures", Mr. Len. You make me SICK!

V.LEN
 (Awkwardly)
 Yes, well, hm. Did your talk with
 Penny Greyback go well?

PHYLLIS
 Oh yeah, I was meant to tell you
 stuff. The Duskwight operation is
 all ready to go ahead. Although,
 you try making sense out of Penny.
 She's fruitier than a pack of jelly
 babbies.

V.LEN
 Nevermind Penny. She's necessary
 for her weapons knowledge.

PHYLLIS
 We should probably watch the
 results. I'll prepare the snacks.

V.LEN
 Excellent. Klawcalot sandwiches.
 Here begins Phase 1...

SCENARIO ENDS.

After SCENARIOS, everyone meets back at the front of the
 generator, now overrun by Minotaur members. MARA is trying to
 fight them off.

Options:

MAIN
Let's leave her.

PHOENIX
*Now, normally, I'd say yeah to
 that. But this is Mara. She's
 pretty useful. And if you don't
 realise that, Nova, then I'll leave
 YOU out to die in this wasteland.*

MAIN
Point taken.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
We should help her.

PHOENIX
I reckon it's time to shine. Who's
going to clobber them?

AFTER OPTIONS:

PLAYER picks a party to fight the Minotaur. Eventually, all are gone and MARA is saved.

MAX

That's one sorry looking pussy saved by Max.

MARA

How humiliating.

PHOENIX

What was that? Thank you? Aww, no, it was nothing, really... you ungrateful kitty.

KIM

Her fur is so soft... can I stroke her, Nova?

Choices:

MAIN

She'll bite your hand off.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Sure, if she doesn't mind.

After choice options:

MARA

Oh, I don't mind, really.

KIM strokes MARA.

KIM

Ooooo...

PHOENIX

So, what's up with the kid? The wasteland isn't a battle field for children.

LIONE

She's proven her worth. There are more pressing matters, anyway. That pylon wasn't the quietest way to stop their communications. Knowing the law, as I do, the Capitarl forces will be on their way to investigate.

PHOENIX

It was going to happen sooner or later, anyway, especially after putting that acid on the generator pipes around the outskirts of the city walls.

MAIN

So that's what we're going to do next? Bring it on! We'll grab that sandship and drizzle that acid until the city power goes out, then we can infiltrate the place for that O2 unit.

PHOENIX

I like how this guy thinks. There should be 3 generators with 4 pipes each. After we do that, we'll head to the city's front. Let's roll!

PLAYER resumes control. After the generators have been shut down, story continues when PLAYER reaches the now open front gate of the city.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

Maiden's Gate. Now open. We'll sneak through the city to the north, where the labs are.

MAIN

Sounds like a plan. Once at the labs, we can steal their O2 unit and you can steal their tech. That way, Chimera can hold Mayor Mateus ransom with it. The city will be yours!

PHOENIX

Ooooooh yeah!

DRELIS

Shame you'll all fail.

MAIN

Drelis? Oh man, the law always shows up when you don't want them to.

LIONE looks angry.

DRELIS

I finally remembered something in my cognition. It was said a man with silver locks, bearing the name Nova stole a highly volatile weapon, causing a sun to supernova.
(MORE)

DRELIS (CONT'D)

You shouldn't even be alive, good sir.

MAX

That true, Nova? You been judging me all this time for flooring you and yet you killed millions? Tsk. Makes me wonder what past I have.

LIONE

That past is the past. We all must atone for our crimes and through that, we come out better people.

PHOENIX

This isn't some morality meeting. There isn't time to fool about. Not all of us, anyway. You guys go ahead, I'll fool around with Drelis on my own.

DRELIS

Bold words from a fox.

PHOENIX leaps on DRELIS and pins him to the ground. MAIN and co run ahead and into the city.

PHOENIX

All right, munchkin, let's dance.

BOSS FIGHT 10: PHOENIX VS. DRELIS.

Towards the end of the fight, in battle:

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

I... I smell gas.

DRELIS

Finally noticed, have you? It's too late, now. I'm afraid the moth gets burnt again.

PHOENIX

Wait! No-

DRELIS launches a huge gas explosion. Battle ends.

PHOENIX is on the floor, unconscious and bruised. DRELIS stands nearby, unscathed.

DRELIS

Foolish Fox. Now to trap the mice within the cage. The rat-catcher is always one step ahead.

DRELIS calmly walks into the city. PHOENIX twitches, then stands up. He stumbles.

PHOENIX

But the wily fox will win, in the end...

PHOENIX stumbles after DRELIS. Scene shifts to MAIN and co.

MAIN

There's so many Capitarl guards...

LIONE

Our choices are to keep to the shadows, or confront them in battle. Your choice. As long as we reach the northern labs, it's not a problem.

STYNX

One of these guards will have the key card to the lab. If we don't wanna fight, I'm sure they'll have one hidden in one of their huts.

PLAYER resumes control. After acquiring the key card, PLAYER will eventually find the lab and descend down into it. PLAYER sneaks through the lab until eventually finding them main lab room, where the O2 unit sits, as well as a large nuclear warhead. As soon as PLAYER grabs it, PENNY enters the lab room.

MAIN

That must be the dreaded Splitter Nuke Penny was talking about... but why does she want to launch it at Minotaur's encampment?

PENNY

(Speaking fast, as usual)
My, my, you're being as sneaky as a fox! But where is Phoenix? Oh no, was he beaten by that nasty Drelis Cutter? Boo hoo haha.

MAIN

Where's Phoenix? Just what the hell have you got planned with that nuclear weapon?

DRELIS

Too bad the terrier's bite was worse than his bark. Old foxy won't save you, now.

An explosion knocks DRELIS off his feet. PHOENIX darts into the room, from above, the explosion having created a hole in the ceiling and floor above.

PHOENIX

Don't underestimate the Phoenix! I always come back to fight another day.

PENNY

Ho ho! An explosion by the electrical currents from that gauntlet, eh, eh, eh? How's that arm working out for you? I made it, after all! I make all the Capitarl's equipment. I'm a geeeeeenius!

PHOENIX

I'd use the word "insane". After all, you want to launch a nuke. If you wanna kill Minotaur, or even Chimera, so bad, why not wait until the next solar flare?

DRELIS

Wait, you're planning on launching a nuclear warhead? Has the mayor authorised this?

MATEUS

I have.

MAYOR MATEUS walks into the lab, golden armour on his torso, silver chains dangling from his body everywhere and a thin face with short, blonde hair poking out from the top greeting them all.

DRELIS

With the ground as charred as it is from the previous solar flare, that would crack the crust and cause a cataclysmic chain reaction beneath the planet's surface. You must reconsider, Mayor Mateus.

MATEUS

Whilst I thank you for alerting both Penny and myself to the infiltration of Chimera, I also must tell you to shut up about matters you cannot possibly comprehend. Now be a faithful dog and wipe the enemy out.

MAIN

So, you're the mayor responsible for the twisted politics on this planet?

PHOENIX

Finally, the mayor. I will have my revenge for the way you treated us all!

MATEUS

Drelis, did you not hear me? One of them is a Class A criminal.

PHOENIX

Drelis will not cut me down for good. Never. He only wants justice.

DRELIS

You be quiet, Fox! You have no idea of the moral dilemmas one must face when in charge of the law!

MATEUS

I understand perfectly well, what with Vice-Warden Burgess accommodating Mr. Nova based on her twisted perception of what is morally correct against the law.

PHOENIX

What do you mean?

MAIN

Apparently I caused a sun to supernova and kill a lot of people. But that's in the past. We're after the deadly renegades known as the Cult of Kai. The one in charge of the Reality Council, which Mateus is a part of, is also a member of the Cult of Kai.

MATEUS

That doesn't mean I am a member, however. I leave V.Len's devices to his own. I have no concern over blowing up Hudokai and trying to get into the "void".

PENNY

I, however, have made this Splitter Nuke to do exactly that!

MAIN

Penny's... a Cult of Kai member?!

PENNY

Hudokai lies deep within planet Duskwight's crust! I'll blow it up and see if we can travel to the void!

(MORE)

PENNY (CONT'D)

We suspect that's what happened
with Cyrril, we does, we does!

PHOENIX

And you authorised the launch of
this nuke, Mateus?!

MATEUS

There's no harm in it if it
disposes of you survival groups in
the process. This city will not be
affected.

PHOENIX

Fluff you, Mateus! You're gonna die
right here and now! And then
Chimera will take the city!

MATEUS

And now I take my leave. My forces
will make short work of you. I only
came here to take a look at Nova.

MATEUS walks off.

MAX

What a scock muncher.

PHOENIX

(Enrages)

Come back here, coward!

MARA (O.S.)

Chimera forces are on their way.
With the city's defense down,
they'll find and take down the
mayor. You just handle Drelis and
Penny.

MAIN

That suits me fine. We'll take down
the cult one by one if we have to.

PENNY activates the launch sequence for the nuke. A 25 minute
count-down timer ensues.

TANNOY

Nuclear Warhead Launch Sequence
initiated.

PENNY

25 minutes and then boom! You can't
stop, stop, stop it whilst I'm
here! I'm not letting you go!

PLAYER chooses party to fight PENNY with.

BOSS FIGHT 11: PENNY GREYBACK.

In battle dialogue:

PENNY (CONT'D)

Drelis, why won't you help a poor innocent scientist?

DRELIS

I... the launch isn't right. The nuclear fallout will intoxicate the wasteland survivors. We are the law, not murderers.

PENNY

You don't agree with me? Is that why you've let Phoenix and Dragon live all these years?

PHOENIX

It's okay. I understand, Drelis. You're like the Capitarl explosion that's kept me going all this time. Explosions are cool.

LATER in the fight:

PENNY

You stole two Genesis Grenades, Nova, Nova! You used one and still have one... give me the seductive science, the shell of the sun, the grenade of the cult's dreams! And I'll let you go! You're hardly a threat.

MAIN

I have no idea where that second grenade is! And even if I did have it, the cult's going down before I ever hand it over.

PENNY

Then... it's time! Time! I developed Phoenix's gauntlet. Let's see what happens when I reverse its charge...

EVERYONE is horribly electrocuted.

PENNY (CONT'D)

Die! Die! Die!

FIGHT ENDS.

DRELIS

I... won't allow this!

DRELIS launches himself at PENNY, only to also be electrocuted. DRAGON leaps in at that moment, taking PENNY from behind.

PENNY

Hidden Dragon, eh? You have my other gauntlet... both were placed in easy access towns for this reason... for you to both steal, steal, steal the gloves and finally be electrocuted to death upon close proximity to this volt switch... awww, diddum diddum diddums! Now let me electrocute you, too!

DRAGON

Fat chance when I've rigged it to blow when a charge enters it. Here, have it!

PENNY

Wait, no!

It explodes on PENNY, knocking her to the ground. The electrocution stops.

PHOENIX

Man, am I glad to see you.

PENNY

Yeah, yeah, keep your friends close but your enemies closer.

DRELIS

Something like that. Run. All of you, run. I won't be able to stop all of the Capitarl from chasing you down. There's just too many.

PHOENIX

We can't run, now! The mayor's right where we want him! The wasteland is... it's gonna be a deathtrap when that nuke hits!

MAIN

No, I see. The only escape we have is through our prison ship. Now that we have the O2 unit, we can get out of here.

STYNX

It's all right. I'll hold the fort, here, until our loyal followers arrive.

DRAGON

I hate to admit it but with Minotaur and Chimera together, we can take down the mayor and be protected within the city, together.

PHOENIX

My place is here, not in the stars. What is freedom? A wasteland? A city? Space? It's what you fight for. I fought for my freedom.

DRELIS

You fought for vengeance, Fox, not freedom... And if you want to carry that on, then Penny is the one who killed your family, not me. Penny's with the cult. I highly suggest you take the offer of true freedom and fly out to the stars to continue your dream.

MARA (O.S.)

Get going, Fox! The nuke's soon to be launched!

PHOENIX

Damnit, you're all right. You've been explosive forces, guys. You really have.

MAIN

Let's fight our way out of here and get to the prison ship!

PLAYER resumes control. They have the remainder of the countdown to reach the ship, otherwise a game over will occur. When PLAYER reaches the ship, story will continue.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Quick, Lione, attach the 02 unit to the ship!

They all run inside.

Scene cuts to DRELIS, now at the city's entrance.

DRELIS

(Respectful)

I salute you, once again, Phoenix Fox. Until next time.

A massive explosion erupts the wasteland as the ship is taking off.

CUTSCENE: Shot from space as the prison ship flies off the planet Duskwight.

Half of the planet cracks and crumbles from the huge explosion, which can be seen from space. Suddenly, the pieces are sucked into small black holes which then disappear quickly after forming.

After cutscene:

KIM

The Hudokai formed black holes for a split second in their explosion.

MAX

What the hell does Penny and the cult plan to do with an experiment like that?

LIONE

The Warden never got back to them. Only the Warden knew that rare Hudokai could get them to the void for even more Hudokai. Penny's just behind... and her experiment was on a grander scale than the Warden's prison ship crash.

RIZUMU

Wouldn't someone fall asleep forever if they went into a black hole?

KIM

No, Rizumu, they would appear to slow down and stop if they went inside, into the singularity.

RIZUMU

So they'd just... stop?

KIM

It would LOOK like they stopped, as time would be distorted by their mass, around them.

RIZUMU

Wow, Kim, you sure know a lot!

ALIZA

...Except about food, anyway.

MAIN

Now that Penny knows, the Cult's going to know. We should head straight to what appears to be the cult's head, V.Len, and take him down!

PHOENIX

Freedom... I guess it really is what you fight for. I'm glad to join you in your fight against this 'Cult of Kai' and I WILL get revenge on Penny. But, don't get me wrong on this, I like explosions. But that planetary explosion... that was bad.

ALIZA

So, what do you propose we do? Go after the Genesis Grenade instead of the cult, first?

PHOENIX

Exactly.

LIONE

I see what you're saying. With the cult becoming aware that explosions will cause Hudokai to react in such a way, they will be after that Genesis Grenade. With it, they can create an explosion on such a large scale that they all can get through without any qualms.

MAIN

Staying one step ahead of the enemy. That's important. But I have no idea where the Genesis Grenade is, anymore.

LIONE

There are many things you don't know about you, still. Your prison report stated you hid out on both planet Canary and Yin before the Galactic Preservation caught you. It's why the GP have a prison base on both planets, thanks to your escape to those worlds.

MAX

One of those planets rings a bell... I feel a connection to them. One must be home!

MAIN

All right, we have no choice but to check those two other planets to find the Genesis Grenade. THEN we can take down the cult.

PLAYER resumes control of the Prison Ship in Galaxy 2.

GENESIS (PLANET CANARY)

PLANET CANARY. The camera sweeps across a blizzard and through a crack in a mountain wall, before travelling down a dark tunnel, revealing stumpy felines with large feet and glowing tails, mining away. Eventually, the camera reaches an immense city built on the interior of the mountain walls, deep down, all the while through the below dialogue.

ITAMI

Dear Galactic Oppressors,

Every day, we mine and mine and mine. Every day, we grow closer to death. We lost our names to you oppressors, and with them, we lost our identity.

Not that you'd care, not when the only thing you preserve is Nethyrial.

So we've decided to forge a new identity, a new name for each and every one of us that reminds us of the pain you've put us through.

You've branded me a slave. I've branded me "Itami". We Nekissa won't let you stand up in your space palace.

Let this be our new... Genesis.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Yours unfaithfully,

Koel Dosne Weylyn.

INT. PRISON SHIP

Camera cuts to the crew in the cock pit of the PRISON SHIP.

PRISON SHIP

We have arrived at our destination. Or maybe we have not? Perhaps I have taken you on a detour and avoided the destination entirely, like a defective Sat-Nav?

MAIN

Ever since we left the Nexus, this prison ship has been quirkier than Max's body odour.

MAX

Hey! It's not my fault all we had was Wazz Pop and recycled water... Showers weren't the same.

PHOENIX

Quirky or not, the prison ship's right. Planet Canary's co-ordinates match up but there clearly ain't no planet out there.

KIM

Maybe it moved?

ALIZA

Well, planets do orbit around the nearest star... maybe it's somewhere else, right now?

OPTIONS:

MAIN

Maybe you should shut up.

ALIZA

Maybe your mum should have shut up before giving birth to a little fluff. For darkness sakes!

PHOENIX

You're a bit of a hot head, aren't you, Aliza?

OR

MAIN

Maybe it's still here. You sure it's moved?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Maybe you're right!

AFTER OPTIONS:

ALIZA

Of course I am.

PHOENIX

Well, wherever it is, there's nothing big a big ol' star in its place. But that can't be right. I mean, this solar system's sun is the one that Duskwight orbits.

(MORE)

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

Somehow, this star is close enough to become the planets' sun, instead, but it clearly doesn't have a gravitational pull strong enough to do that. Call me crazy, but I don't think that's a star.

MAX

You crazy.

MAIN

The only thing crazy, here, is us not exploring that thing.

ALIZA

I read that Galaxy 1's sun burns at 5,726 degrees Celsius, or 10,340 degrees Fahrenheit. If we went to that burning ball of blaze out there, we may as well be... tissue on a campfire!

MAX

I'll bring the marshmallows.

PHOENIX

And I'll bring the Woozy Whiskey.

LIONE

I think Nova's right. If that ball of light was producing the energy of a standard star, the sensors would have picked it up on the prison ship sun shield.

MAX

Say that all in one breath.

PHOENIX

Prisonshipsunshield.

MAX

Show off.

KIM

Look!

PHOENIX

I'm trying, but my eyes are doing their best not to go blind!

KIM

Rocks are flying out of the star!

PHOENIX

A rock... star? Psh, I'm the only rock star, here. And this rock star suggests blowing 'em up.

ALIZA

That confirms it. Someone wants us
kept away. That's no star.

MAIN

Then there's only one thing for
it...

OPTIONS:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Let's go in!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Let's do the hokey cokey!

KIM

Oh! Oh! I know this one! You put
your left leg in, your left leg
out...

MAX

In, out, in out, sounding kinda
rude...

PHOENIX

You do the blowey uppy and you turn
around...

ALIZA

That's what it's not about...

LIONE

Woaaaaaaah, the dopey dunny...

PHOENIX

Woaaaaaaah, the blowey uppy...

MAX

Woaaaaaaah, the okay done-y...

MAIN

Knees bent, star-set, blast a-way!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Let's get wrecked!

AFTER OPTIONS:

They head to the star. Meanwhile, a figure watches them from
aboard a space station, out of a window. It is BEN. He
watches as the ship heads towards them, then walks away from
the window, determination in his eyes.

The PLAYER can now control the ship in a star field of rocks and debris flying at them. They can control the ship's cannons to blast away the space rock as the ship travels to the star, and finally THROUGH the star flares at the end.

Now within the flares, the PRISON SHIP comes face to face with a translucent PLANET CANARY. It appears coated with a frosted glass-like material in numerous triangles of varying sizes. Horizontal and slowly spinning around the central section of the glass and planet is an enormous metal ring with an immense sun shield window around its outer edge.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Holy scock, what *is* this place?

LIONE

This is *not* how I remember Canary.
Someone's built a bodgy ring around it!

MAX

I think I'd have remembered my home having a big old frosted glass sky. Maybe it's not Canary, after all?

LIONE

It's ridgy-didge, all right.

MAX

It's... what?

MAIN

If this is the "real deal", then someone's gone to a lot of effort to keep outsiders away. They're hiding something, whoever they are, and it's got to be something big.

KIM

Do you think it's the Genesis Grenade, Nova?

MAIN

Is Lione a Chinese Crested Dog?

MAX

In other words, fluff yeah!

LIONE

(Sighing)

You'll never let that die, will you? I sure hope you won't come a gutser to my blade.

MAIN

Come on, Lione, where's your sense of humour?

LIONE

Sorry, this planet just...
resurfaces some bad memories. I
don't wanna talk about it.

MAIN

Fine. We'll find an opening in that
ring, land, and maybe find a way
down to the planet. Before you'll
know it, we'll find out what
they're hiding and continue
crushing the Cult of Kai!

The ship flies towards the ring and the planet story title
comes up - GENESIS.

The scene cuts to the crew in a landing bay, exiting the
ship.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Now that we've secured our
entrance, let's secure our route to
the planet. Time to explore!

PLAYER resumes control on the ring. The planet can be seen
beyond the sun shield glass as the PLAYER explores, fighting
off creatures that have inhabited the place. Throughout the
exploration, images flicker in and out of people interacting
with one another, and between a full running space station
and a derelict one.

Eventually, PLAYER will locate a large room, with blown
computers and in ruins. There is also an immense window
scaling the entirety of the wall height and width of the
entered room. The window has a clear view of PLANET CANARY.

MAX

Woouooooah. Planet Canary... yeah,
that's definitely my home world.
I'm finally coming home...

ALIZA

I read about canaries in one of the
many books Jozu would sneak into my
asylum cell.

MAX

Asylum?! You know, comments like
that make me wonder how well we
actually know one another.

ALIZA

Canaries were cute little birds
that chirruped and played, much
like budgies.

(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

The saddest truth was that they were lowered into mines to test if the air was noxious or not. If not, then miners followed. If so, the poor canaries would die.

MAX

Kinda grim. Just the way I like it! You must have a wealth of knowledge tucked up in that big head of yours, Aliza.

ALIZA

You're calling me "big headed", Canary?

MAX

You're calling me a "canary"... big head?

ALIZA

That's what your race would logically be called...

MAX

Oh man, that's so embarrassing. I don't wanna be a canary!

LIONE

Settle down, the pair of you. The inhabitants are called "Canarians".

MAX

Canary-uns? That's even worse!

LIONE

CAN-ARR-EE-UN. With the hearty "ARR". Canarian. Trust me, I know how to pronounce a race of people I once had numerous ties to. After all, it was the planet where the Galaxy 2 GP base was situated.

KIM

Ooooooh, Lione, tell me about your time as a Galactic Preserver! Did you annihilate those nasty criminals?

LIONE

We served justice where necessary, Kim. But my job was, specifically, vice-warden of the Canarian prison. The Jail of Judician, we called it. It was my job to keep the prisoners in line, with Cyrril as the Warden.
(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)

He always wanted to Warden the prison ships, though, where the overflow of prisoners were re-located once cells were too full. It was a contractual obligation to take his vice-warden with him, so there I worked until the crash.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

So, you're a canary?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Too much talky.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You've done well.

AFTER OPTIONS:

LIONE

Sorry. I was lost in reverie, there. Canary's not my home. Planet Delfa is where I'm originally from. It's where my accent was formed.

ALIZA

The inflections could almost be attributed to Australian on my home world of Earth, 2400.

A siren rings out three times, suddenly, interrupting everyone.

COMPUTER VOICE

Destabilising gravity.

MAX

This can't be good.

Everyone suddenly floats upwards.

PHOENIX

Great. Just great. Looks like the power's off. Last time that happened, it really killed the mood between me and Tanya. I thought we were finally going to-

ALIZA

Please, spare us! No more!

PHOENIX

Well, this is another way of getting blue balls, I guess... We can't have more than 5 minutes before we run out of oxygen. We'll have to turn the power back on.

KIM

Ooooooh, I feel energy, nearby!

PHOENIX

Kim's Gear senses are tingling!

ALIZA

Look, there's a machine still in working condition! Hmmm... Could be what we need to get to Canary...

LIONE

You're right. It's a matter transmitter - a trans-mat machine. No doubt to teleport us down to the planet. Normally only high ranking GP ships have them.

ALIZA

Looking at the lights on that trans-mat, we'll have to find four switches to turn on the power, or something. That way, we'll have gravity, oxygen and a trans-mat we can use.

MAIN

Come on, let's find those switches before we're all deader than the Warden's honesty.

LIONE

Oho, buuuuurn.

PLAYER can now explore the space station in zero gravity, pushing off of now floating crates and objects, as well as reach new areas above ground level. Throughout their exploration through both non-gravity and gravity sections, people continue to flicker in and out, before disappearing again. Once all switches are flipped, and the PLAYER returns to the main room of before, the story continues.

Scientists and GP flicker in and out quite vividly in the main room.

MAIN

Is everyone else seeing this, or has Max put something in my Wazz Pop?

MAX

That's just Wazz Pop. "Ur-in
Hullucination Heaven with Wazz
Pop!" Or so the slogan goes. It was
either that or Recycled Water back
in the Nexus... We *really* had to
make do, you know?

MAIN

Oh, so I'm just going crazy. Good
to know.

ALIZA

Then we're all going crazy.

PHOENIX

You said it, not me.

ALIZA

No, I mean I see those people, too.
It's not just you, Nova.

LIONE

They're the Vigilante division of
the Galactic Preservation. They
handle hands-on field-type missions
such as criminal hunts, crime lord
attacks or scientist protection for
the Reality Council, like what they
appear to be doing, here. They're
the meat of the GP.

KIM

Meat? Oh, oh, I want meat!

PHOENIX

Don't we all, Kim? Don't we all.

The people all appear into view, once more. Some go through
the cast, like ghosts. But then, surprisingly, one spots MAIN
(NOVA) and walks up to him!

GP VIGILANTE

Ah, Doctor Nova! We've been waiting
for you.

MAIN

Huh? You can... see me?

[VARSH]

This is exciting! They've become
corporeal beings!

GP VIGILANTE

I'm not blind, sir. Is this your
team?

OPTIONS:

MAIN

These are criminals I've brought in.

GP VIGILANTE

Oh? Fancy yourself one of us, sir?

PHOENIX

He sure does fancy himself, yeah.

GP VIGILANTE

Silence, criminal!

PHOENIX

Grr, I'll make you pay for this, Nova...

OR

MAIN

They sure are. The goth is Maximum Paignindabutt BSc, the yellow-coat is Doctor Alizagail Leejovski, the small one is Kimmerphan Sylvesterstein PhD... and the fox is Crash.

PHOENIX

Crash and burn, more like...

GP VIGILANTE

And the red-head is Lione Burgess of the prison staff.

LIONE

...

OR

MAIN

They're just my friends.

PHOENIX

Did you hear that, everyone? We're considered "friends". Now I feel all warm and fuzzy inside...

MAX

To match your outside.

GP VIGILANTE

"Fuzzy"? As in... Shardae-Ray?

AFTER OPTIONS:

GP VIGILANTE (CONT'D)

I was expecting Professor Jalfuzzy.
Nevermind, I'll summon the captain
for you.

LIONE

T-That won't be necessary.

GP VIGILANTE

With due respoect, ma'am, only
Captain Ben has authority over my
group division.

The GP VIGILANTE walks off among the scientists, all busy
with their work around them. LIONE turns to MAIN (NOVA).

LIONE

I can't be here. I can't have
anything to do with the Captain of
the Vigilante division.

MAIN

You have a crush you're not telling
us about? You sly ol' dog, you.

LIONE

(Terse)
Drop it, Pug.

MAIN

Pug?! Not that again. It doesn't do
well to hold onto the past.

LIONE

(Desperate)
Like you even care about yours!

PHOENIX

Whoa, Lione, ain't this getting a
bit heated? Cool it, guys. You'll
blow our cover.

MAIN

(To Phoenix)
Hang on, Phoenix, I'm not done with
her.

(To Lione, angry)
Where's this attitude come from all
of a sudden, Lione? What kind of
words are those? Don't ever say I
don't care about my past!

LIONE

(Angry)
You said it, damnit! I... need to
get out of here, before *he* comes.

MAIN
 (Annoyed)
 Who? Captain Ben? No, we need to
 get down to the planet and he looks
 like a good lead.

LIONE goes to leave the room.

OPTIONS:

BLOCK LIONE

MAIN (NOVA) runs in front of LIONE and blocks her exit.

LIONE
 Move out of the way, Nova.

MAIN
 Make me.

OR

APPROACH LIONE

MAIN (CONT'D)
 Look, without his help, we can't
 look for the you-know-what.

LIONE
 I don't care. I'm going to find a
 way down to the planet without *his*
 help. You coming or not?

MAIN
 This isn't your choice to make. You
 know you'll need us as a team if
 you're going to fight off those
 space station creatures that have
 moved in. You can't fight them
 alone.

LIONE
 What if the GP have intervened?

MAIN
 Then I'll tell them you've
 defected. Then they'll stop you,
 bring you back here, and we can
 continue as normal.

OR

LET LIONE GO

GP VIGILANTE
Vice-warden, you're not to leave
the room. Your services are
required here.

LIONE

...

LIONE continues to the door.

GP VIGILANTE

Lock the door!

It does so as LIONE runs to it. It is locked shut.

MAIN

We're in this together.

LIONE

I know, but...

GP VIGILANTE

We'll open them on Doctor Nova's command. We'll be just a moment.

LIONE

(To MAIN NOVA)

Let me out.

MAIN

...

AFTER OPTIONS:

LIONE pulls out her sword against MAIN (NOVA).

ALIZA

Lione! For darkness sakes, that's your sword to Nova's neck!

LIONE

People change, right? But we all have ghosts that haunt us. Ben's mine and he *cannot see me here*.

MAX

Our own ghosts, huh? Yeah... we all have secrets of the past...

KIM

Aaaah, my head... it hurts!

ALIZA

Kim?!

BEN suddenly approaches, before fading out of existence with the other scientists, suddenly.

KIM

Oh, my head now feels fine! But now my tummy's all rumbly.

MAIN

See? Nothing to worry about. Shame we have no-one to grab some info off, though.

KIM

You reminded me of Adho, Lione...

LIONE

Sorry, I didn't mean... look, forget about it. Even if he isn't here, now, I don't want to be near Ben if I can help it. He mustn't be aware of my whereabouts.

MAX

But he knows you're in the GP, right? What the fluff, Lione? Hiding in the same police force isn't exactly smart, is it?

LIONE

Under the nose is the best place to hide when the enemy's gaze is afar. GP Guide, tip 13.

MAIN

Speaking of hiding, where do you suppose Ben disappeared to?

LIONE

As long as he's not here, I'm fine with that. Let's check out the trans-mat now we have power.

PLAYER checks out the trans-mat device. Instead of teleporting down to the planet, however, there is a bizarre distortion that sweeps by... where BEN, the GP VIGILANTES and the scientists all fade back into existence in the room.

GP VIGILANTE

Doctor Nova, what are you doing in the experiment chamber?

MAIN

Uh... just... examining the internal structure. To, you know, make sure it's safe for the upcoming, uh, experiment.

GP VIGILANTE

Well, if anyone should know about what can contain that blast, it'll be you, haha.

MAIN

Blast...?

GP VIGILANTE

Yes, from the Genesis Grenade.
After all, you helped create it!
Are you feeling okay, Doctor?

MAIN

I... no, I'm not okay!

LIONE

A blast the size of a star, with
intense gravitational pull and of
trade value to the colder planets
of the galaxy. Yes, it all makes
sense, now.

GP VIGILANTE

Yes, it's always made sense. Have
you forgotten the terraforming it
could achieve on other worlds?

LIONE

Or the criminals that could achieve
even more if they get a hold of
these. There's a reason the project
was scrapped after Nova's escapade.

GP VIGILANTE

What do you-

The GP VIGILANTE and scientists all fade away, once more.

PHOENIX

Okay, I'm done. This is making
about as much sense as Blake
singing an opera, right now!

ALIZA

Makes more sense than you'd think,
Phoenix. Shame you weren't there.

LIONE

It does, indeed.

PHOENIX

Come again?

ALIZA

Like Lione, I've figured it out.
You have books to thank for this,
yet again.

You see, an intense gravitational
pull can distort time. If we were,
say, to enter a black hole or rip
in the universe, everyone watching
our ship enter would see the ship
slow down until it stayed still.

(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

What would actually be happening is that time would slow us down the closer we got and the more the black hole's gravity takes hold. The Stasis Hudokai nullifies this for us, so to us it's like we appear instantaneously inside the Nexus, whenever we visit. Meanwhile, time would act faster the further away from gravity's influence it was.

PHOENIX

Holy scock, it felt like time slowed down as you explained that, Aliza. That's how boring and over-my-head that was. I'd rather sing an opera, myself, than listen to that again

ALIZA

Har de har, Phoenix, very funny. Also, Blake may hold you to singing that opera.

LIONE

The Genesis Grenade had the power to make its own star, at least temporarily. This needed an impressive gravitation pull to be released when the two halves of the grenade fused together, when in use.

KIM

Fusion? Like, when synthesising weapons and stuff? Two becoming one?

ALIZA

Something like that, Kim.

LIONE

In short, this place was where the scientists carried out the preliminary Genesis Grenade experiments. No wonder they recognised you, Nova. No wonder the gravity parts of that experiment are still in effect. We're dancing between two different time zones.

MAIN

So... Ben and his team must be in the past, then? That means this derelict station is the present.

MAX

What's disappointing about all this is that the trans-mat device isn't a teleporter, then. It's the experiment chamber. What a rip-off. I want a refund.

MAIN

Well, hang on. We can still use that to our advantage. When I activated it, it took us to a different time period. It took us to the past.

ALIZA

What, you're thinking of changing the past? Didn't you see that the time effect only lasted a short while? It's like the short burst of gravity rectified itself after a minute or so.

MAIN

Right, so we may not be able to change my destiny, but we can take things back and effect the present in various ways. A seed in the past can make a tree in the future.

ALIZA

A metaphor where the future has many branches. I like it.

LIONE

That means we'll have to deal with the GP in the past. I don't think they'll see us as friendly if we snoop about as much as we will be.

MAIN

It'll be fine, Lione, quit worrying. If we can change the experiment chamber to an actual trans-mat device of some sort, then we'll be on our way to glory.

MAX

And how will we do that, bright spark? We can't just go changing things. What if we erase something important, like... well, me? Isn't that chamber important in the past?

MAIN

Yes, but not in the future it isn't. It's just a derelict piece of junk.

MAX

Well... yeah, and it's *still* a piece of junk, right now. That means we don't succeed.

MAIN

We won't know 'till we try, Max, so get rid of that negativity and put some gravity on the situation.

LIONE

There's a few things we can try, with this. We can take things to and from the past, influence some scientists of future decisions, and even leave Nova in the past for a bit.

MAIN

You see, now you're lightening up a bit, Lione! Right, let's head to the past... and, uh, please don't leave me there on my own.

PLAYER resumes control. Once they activate the pod, again, they will be thrown back into the past. BEN is absent from the room. PLAYER can move around the space station freely, except the GP will act as enemies instead of bizarre space creatures, which replace them whenever they move to PRESENT time, which they can do whenever they go back to the pod.

PLAYER must influence a few of the scientists into a few future decisions.

SCIENTIST

Ah, Doctor Nova! As a fellow physicist, what do you think of the fusion of Nethyrial mineral and dark matter?

OPTIONS:

MAIN

The best idea we've ever had!

SCIENTIST

I agree! We just need that mineral from planet Canary and the Genesis Grenade project can be put into practice. Thanks for your thoughts.

OR

MAIN

I'm indifferent, to be honest.

SCIENTIST

Well, that's maybe why V.Len put you in charge of the project. Disinterest breeds laziness. Too interested and you become obsessed, overlooking the minor details. That's V.Len's theory, anyway.

OR

MAIN

The worst idea since Slee delivery service! Coffee everywhere.

SCIENTIST

True... I sometimes wonder if this is really necessary. All those Nekissa... I-it just doesn't sit right with me.

MORE OPTIONS

MAIN

What's your role in the project?

SCIENTIST

I'm the test analyst physicist. That means my role is solely on testing the effects of the Nethyrial fusion. I'm thinking of recommending an experiment chamber on the space station. I'm telling those in charge it's cost effective and closer to us, blah blah blah. Between you and me, the real reason is to lighten the load on the Nekissa. I don't like it being tested down on the planet in non-protective areas. Even the other Canarians are at risk. Oh dear, look at the time! I'd better crack on.

OR

MAIN

Best to grin and bear it.

SCIENTIST

True. But I wonder how long those Nekissa, or even Canarians, will grin and bear it before the experiments destroy them? I don't think my conscience could bear it. Anyway, it was a pleasure chatting.

OR

MAIN

Why not just leave the project?

SCIENTIST

It pays well, and with two kids to feed, it's important I stick at a job I can actually do. Before here, I was stuck looking for work for a year. A full year of applying and getting nowhere, despite my qualifications, can you imagine?! Somehow, I beat my Nav-Tech rival, Charlie, to this position. I graduated and could get nothing.

EVEN MORE OPTIONS

MAIN

You can't have been looking hard enough.

SCIENTIST

They all said that. Even Charlie. Just leave me alone to get on with my work.

OR

MAIN

That's tragic.

SCIENTIST

I know. Those thoughts prevent me from jumping ship. So here I shall stay, working in favour of... slaves. I'd best get back to work.

OR

MAIN

Chin up. You've got some good work experience behind you, now. You'll be able to find somewhere morally better.

SCIENTIST

You think? Hmm, yeah, I guess you're right. Starting from tomorrow, I'll look elsewhere. I can't be doing with slave labour. I-it's just not right. Thank you, Nova. We could all do with a friend who listens, like you, every now and again. Now, best get back to work.

MAIN

(Quietly)

Maybe something changed in the future? Let's check it out.

[VARSH]

These events are in the past, after all.

IF CHOSEN, THE SCIENTIST WILL LEAVE WORK CHANGING THE FUTURE.

The SCIENTIST will cause the experiment chamber to be relocated down to Canary. The current chamber will disappear once PLAYER returns to the present, and be replaced by a room of circular pads on the walls, complete with buttons on the middle.

LIONE

Trans-mat pads by Nav-Tech.

KIM

Nav-Tech? Does that mean Charlie got the job, instead of that scientist?

ALIZA

Seems that way. So, what, we use these pads to teleport down to the planet?

LIONE

Press the button in the middle and it'll swap you with a pad down on the planet. It's kind of like a galactic yo-yo.

PHOENIX

And, what, we stay down there like a yo-yo in a "sleeper"?

MAX

Well, we either "throw down" or we stay put. I, for one, want to go "around the world".

PHOENIX

See, my excuse is entertainment was limited on Duskwight, as a cub. What's your excuse for knowing all those yo-yo tricks?

MAX

Entertainment was limited in the Nexus. Same story.

MAIN

Anyway, let's go "walk the dog".

LIONE

...

PLAYER resumes and will be teleported down to the planet once they grab a trans-mat pad.

An immense blizzard greets them and snowy landscape, cliff-faces and mountainside all around the crew. Two figures are alerted to their presence, one with a glowing tail. They look at one another, then dart off.

MAIN

What was that all about?

MAX

Who cares? My head's stinging like a bee-atch, right now. Why couldn't you land us better, Nova?

PHOENIX

There ain't time to "bee-atch" about trivial things. We're in the middle of a blizzard. Like a sand storm, it'll shred the feeling from your bones, so we need to get outta here.

ALIZA

(Shivering)

Even m-my puffy jacket isn't helping.

PHOENIX

Right. If they're people out here, then civilisation can't be too far off. Let's follow that pair and head North, before we freeze to death!

MAIN

(Shivering)

I-I don't want to be a popsicle. And I can b-barely breathe!

MAX

(Shivering)

W-wait. I-is the atmosphere noxious? W-what the fluff h-happened to my home world?!

LIONE

(Shivering)

L-look, t-there's an Ash Berry bush, like on Earth 2400. If we e-eat one, we can b-breath in the noxious atmosphere for about 5 minutes.

MAIN
 (Shivering)
 W-we'll keep eating them until we
 reach c-c-civilisation. Let's m-
 move out!

PLAYER resumes control in the snowy mountainside. A 5 minutes count-down timer will be in the top left of the screen, which will reset every time PLAYER locates and consumes an Ash Berry from snowy bushes scattered around. Eventually, they reach a small town in the snow. No one is around.

MAIN (CONT'D)
 (Shivering)
 D-damn it, I'm so cold, even my
 hands won't move. Everyone, into
 that Inn!

Story continues once PLAYER heads inside the empty INN.

[VARSH]
 Can we rest, already? My back's
 stiff from all that walking.

[ALIZA]
 Keep that up and I'll have to coin
 the phrase "can't be Varshed".

[VARSH]
 Man, all the women are so up-tight
 in this little group. It makes me
 wonder what goes on in their heads.

[PHOENIX]
 Don't bother figuring how a girl's
 brain works. It's like trying to
 defuse a bomb made out of
 spaghetti, ready to explode. What
 you need, Varsh, is a tranquilizer
 to calm your curiosity down. It can
 get the better of you.

LIONE
 Hell's bells, all you've done since
 being here is flap your mouths.
 There's a furnace over there. Let's
 stoke it, get warm, and cook
 something. I'm freezing!

PHOENIX
 Never send a man to do a fox's job.

PHOENIX ignites the furnace like stove and everyone surrounds it in warmth. Any count down timer stops. The furnace emits a steady glow - the only light in the room. The winds howl outside.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

Looks like it's connected to some kind of oxygen filter, so we can rest here for the night. No need to thank me. Well, maybe with some alcohol. No one's here, so... don't mind if I help myself!

PHOENIX rummages around behind the bar area, finding all kinds of alcohol.

MAIN

I thought this planet was inhabited? Where is everyone?

LIONE

Best guess, those Nethyrial experiments pushed the Canarians away, somewhere. Probably wrong, but it's all I have. Anyway, you're not alone, not with us. Be brave, Max.

MAX

"Be brave"...? At least you didn't say "Brave smile". Definitely a Canarian saying. Used to make me feel at ease, when I was younger, but these days just makes me angry. How did I forget that, until now?

KIM

Memory can be lost, but the feelings we have can remind us of lost memories. I think that's what will happen with Nova, and what can happen with me as I forge new ones!

MAX

Huh. A bleak and empty planet full of darkness... Yeah, this is definitely home!

ALIZA

That frosted glass doesn't let in enough light, and with that space station perpetually above, it's little wonder everyone disappeared.

MAX

I vaguely remember something about a lack of Vitamin D. I wonder where that memory came from?

MAIN

So, Max, what do you remember of your home? It's not like me, is it?

MAX

What, cold, grey and mysterious?
Kinda.

MAIN

No, I meant are your memories of
home like my own? Just out of
reach...?

MAX

No, I remember a lot of stuff from
when I was little. I remember my
dad, and how he walked out on us. I
remember that we all have shadow
type powers. I remember... other
secrets, too. There's some stuff
that's hazy, but that's down to the
Nexus, and how time passes there.
It's easy to lose some memory in
the Nexus fog, you know?

KIM

Mmmmm, Nannaroth meat. It's
starting to smell sooooo goood! I'm
so hungry, even my Hudokai
scanner's picking up readings,
here.

ALIZA

What? Is it possible? Hudokai on
this planet, too?... We'll have to
feed you, Kim, and make sure you're
all big and strong enough to take
that Hudokai reading, again.

KIM

I don't want to get "big"... and
fat.

PHOENIX

Get too fat and you might explode.
And with all this alcohol, we'd all
go up.

MAIN

I wonder where those two others
went? There's nowhere else to run
off to, so it's a safe bet they're
both in this town, somewhere. I say
we rest up, then check in the
morning.

ALIZA

Why bother with them, now we're
safe?

MAIN

They may know something about where the Genesis Grenade is hidden. Any lead will help.

LIONE

They could be gone in the morning. I say we explore the town after we've warmed up. If we get too cold, we're a stone's throw away from this Inn.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

There's no way I'm heading back out there! We just walked through a blizzard, Lione! At night!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We're staying here for the night.
In the morning, we'll then find
them and ask. It's safer that way.

AFTER OPTIONS:

PHOENIX

Yeah, I hate to break it to you, but I'm in no mood to head out into a blizzard, right now.

ALIZA

We risked our toes getting here. Blake says he's not risking his sanity, either.

PHOENIX

You take it from me, when a sandstorm hits, you take cover. A blizzard's no different.

LIONE

Hmph! I preferred it when it was just Nova. He's clueless in sound reasoning.

PLAYER resumes control. Story only continues once rested in the upstairs beds for the night.

A hushed voice is heard.

ITAMI

Koel was right. You've returned... Brarn. Like father, like son.

MAIN (NOVA) wakes up to find a bizarre cat being at the doorway of their room. It is the one with the glowing tail. Startled, she races out the room.

MAIN

Everyone, wake up. It's morning.

KIM

But it's still dark, Nova. Just one more shpeep to play with...

MAIN

Up, Kim! It may be dark, but it's morning. Those two people must still be here. Let's check out the other buildings in town.

PLAYER resumes control and can explore the town of SILVERFROST. Interestingly, there is one large tomb stone covered in snow to the right of the town.

LIONE

(To herself)

Oh, so this is where he put it...

MAX

What does it say, Lione? I need to know if it's "Aife Weylyn".

LIONE

No. It's someone else. Not important. What is are those two people, so let's keep loo-

MAX

"Here lies... *Lione Burgess*"?!

MAIN

W-what is this?

ALIZA

This can't be coincidental. There can't be two Lione Burgesses, can there?

LIONE

T-there's plenty of people with the same name in the galaxies. Anyway, it looks like someone was here, recently, and dropped a key. Maybe it was those two people?

MAIN

All right. Let's find the place this key unlocks.

Eventually, they'll come across a house with a locked door, where the key is used to open it.

Upstairs, a cat person stands above a sleeping figure. She isn't aware of the crew entering until they start speaking.

ITAMI

Shawk, you're so peaceful when you're sleeping. I have some news, though.

MAIN

Found you! Don't worry, we won't hurt you.

MAX

Not unless we have to, anyway.

ALIZA

Max!

MAX

What? I'm joking! Or am I?

ALIZA

Cut it out.

PHANTOM SHAWK

What's with all the racket, Ita? Can't you tell I'm still slee- oh.

PHOENIX

Wakey, wakey, mystery man.

PHANTOM SHAWK

A fox? Don't tell me you were hunted, *again*, Itami!

ITAMI

No, they followed me. I'm sorry.

PHANTOM SHAWK

You have me at a disadvantage. My life's in your hands. At least, for now.

MAIN

I already told you, we're not here to kill you. We're only here to find out what we can about the location of something important.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Not more purveyors of Nethyrial minerals. If you're with the GP, then you're messing with the wrong man. I ain't telling you nothing.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

We're with the GP. Fight me, bro!

PHANTOM SHAWK

I can see that, what with the red-head in uniform, over there!

OR

MAIN

We're here for something else. Do you know anything about the Genesis Grenade?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Where's the Genesis Grenade?

AFTER OPTIONS

LIONE

Nova! This needs a little more tact!

PHANTOM SHAWK

So, the GP's finally come for the big one, at last. I knew this day was coming. Ever since V.Len-

MAIN

Aha, so you *do* know something! Shawk, was it?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Something like that, yeah.

MAIN

Well, Shawk. The balance of harmony rests in our hands. We're here to take the Genesis Grenade before V.Len and his GP do. Capeesh?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Cap...what?

MAIN

See, Lione? It isn't just me who asks that!

MAX

Finally feel smart, do ya?

LIONE

Look, we're not with the GP. I may wear its uniform, but we're break-aways from them. If anything, we're fighting them!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Fancy that - a high ranking prison warden rejected from the Galactic Preservation! So, you're all lawless?

PHOENIX

"Lawless"? No, no, no, no... We're just High Octane Pleasure Enthusiasts.

PHANTOM SHAWK

"HOPE"? You call fighting V.Len's GP "hope"?

PHOENIX

Nah, I prefer to call it "having fun".

PHANTOM SHAWK

Well, whatever you call it, take it away from here. The Nekissa have enough to deal with without the likes of you drawing the attention of those GP, up there.

[VARSH]

That isn't going to happen.

MAIN

You don't mean they're watching us, scheming away until they know they can crush us?

LIONE

No, the GP don't have that kind of tech. This guy's just paranoid.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Paranoid? The only think I'm paranoid of is you lot ruining my operation.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

What will it take for you to spill the beans on the Genesis Grenade's location?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Fine, who cares about you, anyway?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We're not here to ruin anything.
We're here to help.

AFTER OPTIONS:

PHANTOM SHAWK

Oh, *really*? What a fine attitude.
 You only want me to tell you the
 'nade's location for your own
 selfish gains. Well, forget it!

MAX

When the going gets tough, the
 Shawk gets going. Is that how it
 goes, then? You walk away from
 those who want to help, never
 looking back? No wonder you're such
 a loner.

PHANTOM SHAWK

You...

(Beat)

Brave smile, kid. Brave smile. If
 you really want to help, then I
 have some tasks for you. Some
 that'll help us in our fight to
 stave away the GP from Nekissa home
 turf. Follow me East to Krakpoll.

MAIN

Now we're talking!

MAX

(A bit angry)

"Brave smile"...? Where did you...?

ITAMI

He's perceptive, like a shawk!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Heh. Anyway, believe you me, you'll
 have a hard time convincing the
 Nekissa of your aid. If you're all
 kicked out, don't say I didn't warn
 ya. Now, don't fall behind!

PLAYER resumes control in the snowy wilderness, gathering Ash
 Berries as before, until reaching a large crack in the side
 of a mountain.

PHANTOM SHAWK (CONT'D)

Here's the entrance. Let's go.

The entrance leads to a spiralling rocky area, descending
 into darkness. Any timer stops. Eventually, the thin tunnels
 expand into an enormous cavern, where walkway plates cover
 the rock faces and buildings emerge.

It's like a giant drill head of a life hiding beneath the mountain, and the place where Nekissa live. This is KRAKPOLL.

ITAMI runs ahead on the top plate, shouting down the side to the levels below.

ITAMI

Kurushimu! Sisters! I'm home!

Several excited cat people (Nekissa) rush to ITAMI, surrounding her, before they all turn to the new people who have entered their home.

ITAMI (CONT'D)

They say they're here to help us.
They smell funny, though.

[VARSH]

Um... hi?

One of the Nekissa immediately barges into MAIN (NOVA) and pushes him back.

MAIN

Hey! What's the big idea you feline freight train?!

ITAMI

No, Kurushimu! Let's at least give them a chance. I know you don't like strangers, not since one tried to cut off your tail, but we won't ever know if they can restore Peachy unless we give them a chance.

MAIN

Thank you. We don't intend to harm any of you. What did you say your name was?

ITAMI

Shawk likes to call me Ita. It's Itami to you, though.

MAIN

Itami, what's all this stuff about "Peachy"?

ITAMI

The Great Tree, Peachy. Many of us, who are in touch with nature, prayed to the Great Tree until... the GP happened.

PHANTOM SHAWK

So, one of the tasks I have for you, is to restore this divine tree for the sake of the Nekissa. Good luck with that, by the way, especially when the underground tree's razed to the ground.

ALIZA

Simple biology. We find some new seeds and restore it through time.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Didn't you hear me? "Underground tree". It's *not* simple biology. It doesn't grow on light and water and love. It grows on darkness and 1000 years of time.

MAIN

What?! So you're giving us impossible tasks?!

PHANTOM SHAWK

I said nawt about them being easy tasks, or even doable tasks. Just tasks. Still want to help?

PHOENIX

The only thing impossible is the comprehension of one's own strength. We can do this if we put our minds to it!

ALIZA

Right. "1000 years of time" means we just need to find that re-located chamber from the space station. Then we have all the time we'd ever need to grow this tree.

KIM

The air smells clean down here, too! We can take as long as we want for the cute cat people!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Oh. One of *those* chambers.

ALIZA

You know of them? Then why didn't you use them before now?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Look, messing with time is serious. It can have... disastrous consequences. It's a burden I must bare.

(MORE)

PHANTOM SHAWK (CONT'D)

I will never use those fluffing chambers, and neither should you.

ITAMI

...You're still worried about *that*, Shawk? It's in the past, don't worry. Us Nekissa are here for you.

PHANTOM SHAWK

And I'm here for you now, too. Never again will I leave you lot.

ALIZA

Did I miss something?

PHANTOM SHAWK

None of your business, darl. Fluff it, I don't care. You do whatever it takes with them chambers. Whenever you're ready to solve that, come to the base building. That's the town hall, and where I'll dish out your essential tasks.

The PHANTOM SHAWK and ITAMI dash off, as do the Nekissa, leaving MAIN (NOVA) et al free to explore the city. Story only resumes once they visit the city hall.

PHANTOM SHAWK (CONT'D)

Once you're done with them all, I'll tell you where the Genesis Grenade's hidden. So, what'll it be?

PLAYER can choose from five tasks. These five tasks can be undertaken in any order, and only once all five are complete will the next chunk of the story proceed.

TASK 1 - MAKE SURE HEIDI IS ALL Right.

PHANTOM SHAWK (CONT'D)

All right, listen up. I have a comrade underground, one of the few Canarians left on this planet.

MAX

Where did they all disappear to?

PHANTOM SHAWK

The population wasn't large to begin with. Many were turned into slaves, along with the Nekissa, but few survived the harsh conditions of the mines. They all mined for Nethyrial minerals.

(MORE)

PHANTOM SHAWK (CONT'D)

Except, Nekissa live in those dark places, and survived many of the noxious areas, the encroaching darkness and the desperate loneliness.

[VARSH]

I hate that.

KIM

Those poor Nekissa...

PHANTOM SHAWK

Yeah, well. I've put it upon myself to help them. Now you're going to help me in return. Heidi's an escaped slave of the mines. Canarian. She's holing up in an underground village to the West of the caves and I ain't seen her in a while, thanks to how busy I've been. Just make sure she's okay, right?

MAIN

Some compassion. I mean, you're not even going to see her yourself whilst we hold the fort, here?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Shut it and be brave, yeah? The caves are full of nasties en route. She's in a village called "Bread."

MAX

Bread? Really? Someone thought "hey, that'd be a great name for a town". Why not something tasty like Gravy or Flapjack? Imagine a town called Flapjack. Everyone would wanna go there.

PHANTOM SHAWK

See? Braveness brings a smile, and a smile brings joy. A brave smile goes a long way.

KIM

(Gurgling, excited)

I... want... fla... ja...

ALIZA

Kim's drooling so much, she's become incomprehensible. Way to go, Max.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Yeah, you do have a "way to go".
Keep going West. You'll find it...

PLAYER resumes control and heads west to the village of Bread, underground. There, they find the place empty of people, but full of wolves and other enemies. HEIDI's place is the largest building of all - a mansion in the town centre. STORY continues when they try to go through the front gate, where wolves surround them.

KIM

Those wolfies look so cute! Can we stroke them, Nova?

MAIN

Um, they look rather hungry, actually. No point in sneaking about if they can smell us, already.

MAX

What, you'd rather us be seen? Speaking of which, I think that wolf's giving you the eye.

MAIN

I guess I'm just too attractive.

MAX

If you're attractive, then what the fluff am I?

MAIN

Ugly.

KIM

I guess that mansion gate is Heidi's place? Maybe we shouldn't let the hungry wolfies through.

MAIN

Fine, we'll handle this, then.
Lione, you ready?

LIONE

Me? Why ask me if I'm ready?

MAIN

I wondered if you'd be fine beating up your own kind. After all, they're all dogs.

LIONE

Hell's bells, you sure know how to wind someone up good and proper! Now let's sedate them before you open your stupid mouth, again.

MAIN

No need to be such a... *"bitch"*.

PLAYER fights several wolves. After of which, the scene continues at the gate of HEIDI's mansion.

ALIZA

Wait! You're not just going to barge into her mansion, unannounced, are you?

OPTIONS

MAIN

Fine, we'll ring the doorbell.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Damn straight!

AFTER OPTIONS

A figure comes to the door - LLOYD the BUTLER. JIAN also appears, another BUTLER. Some of these lines are repeats from the BLACK WOLF PIRATE script, some are original.

LLOYD

Get off this property. You're not welcome.

JIAN

Lloyd, shut the fluff up before I punt you in the scock.

LLOYD

Master Heidi won't like only one butler running the house.

JIAN

She can deal with it.

PHOENIX

Wait, master Heidi? Is she a guy?

JIAN

Long story. She prefers "master" over "mistress".

MAIN

Anyway... we're here to check if Heidi is okay. The Phantom Hawk sent us.

JIAN

Is *that* what he's going by, these days? Ohohohoho my!
(MORE)

JIAN (CONT'D)

Well, my Ash Berries, come on in
and see for yourself!

PLAYER enters the mansion and is taken to HEIDI.

JIAN (CONT'D)

Oh, Master Heidi! We have visitors!
They've been sent by "The Phantom
Shawk"!

MAIN

My name's Nova, and we're here to
check if you're doing okay.

HEIDI

What do you care?

ALIZA

Um... well, because we're worried
about you, too, I... guess? Look,
he clearly cares about you, so
wants to know if you're all right.

HEIDI

M-mm. Yeah... I am.

JIAN

Master Heidi doesn't really trust
many people, so I must apologise.

ALIZA

It's okay. She evidently trusts in
you, her... boyfriend?

HEIDI

No! This is Jian, my butler!

ALIZA

There we go! If you're okay, we'll
head back to the Phantom Shawk and
tell him you're doing okay. Then
he'll help us.

HEIDI

...He's lying.

KIM

Huh? Lying? Why would he do that?

HEIDI

...

LIONE

Past affairs. I understand. Thanks
for your warning, Heidi. We should
be off, though.

HEIDI
Sure thing. Thanks.

JIAN
I must apologise for Master Heidi's temperament, today. I think it's time I gave her a delicious spanking. I'll get the paddle~

RIZUMU
(Disgusted)
This butler is creepy.

JIAN
Have a good day, now! You can see yourselves out.

PHOENIX
I feel so valued. Let's just head back to the Shawk, guys.

PLAYER resumes control and can return to the Nekissa town.

TASK 2 - EAVESROP ON THE GP VIGILANTE GROUP.

PHANTOM SHAWK
So, a GP VIGILANTE group has managed to trans-mat down here and invade the underground town of Sortheim to the South-West.

PHOENIX
And you want us to beat them up? Gotcha. Let's go.

PHANTOM SHAWK
Hold up. I heard foxes had smaller brains than humanoid folks.

PHOENIX
You heard wrong, wise-guy.

PHANTOM SHAWK
I just want you to eavesdrop on their conversations. I want to learn why they're down here and if you are as useful as you say you are.

ALIZA
Pft, that sure fills me with confidence.

PHANTOM SHAWK
Trust me, I won't let any harm come to you by the GP.

ALIZA

You'd best mean that, "Shawk". If there's one thing I can't stand more than anything else, it's having my trust broken. If you let those GP harm us, in that case, I'll shove you into darkness so fast, not even Max will be able to use his powers to get you out!

MAX

Ouch. Best not let her down.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Some say I'm good at that. Letting people down, I mean. In any case, I promise they won't harm you.

ALIZA

Good. Let's travel South-West, then.

PLAYER travels SOUTH-EAST through treacherous tunnels until they reach an underground town, once undoubtedly full of people but now full of GP VIGILANTE.

MAIN

Looks like we've found the GP.

KIM

(In pain)
Aaaaaaah!

ALIZA

Kim?! What's wrong? Did you locate some Hudokai?

KIM

I-I'm okay.

BLAKE

(Having Fronted)
Of course you're not. What's causing the pain?

KIM

H-him! Ahead...

LIONE

Wait. Keep your distance. That's Ben, the guy we saw back on the space ring.

MAIN

So here's still around this planet in the present day. We'll stay back, then, since I know you don't want to meet up.

(MORE)

MAIN (CONT'D)

Hmm, now we can actually see him, I recognise him from the Reality Council, when we met V.Len.

KIM

He's producing energy... it feels familiar...

LIONE

Ben is a teenage prodigy. He ascended the GP ranks with his unique abilities, until he became a Captain of the Vigilante division.

MAIN

Hudokai abilities? He doesn't look like he has any. Maybe you're just jealous?

LIONE

No, moron, he has infused abilities... sort of like Greg, thinking about it.

KIM

He's a Gear! Ben feels like a Gear!

MAIN

A Gear? Weren't Gears "technologically advanced Shi"?

ALIZA

I think the word "Gear" is attributed to anyone with Hudokai infused abilities. They must be few and far between... and dangerous.

BLAKE

We'd best steer clear of this human "Gear", then. Looks like Kim's headache's clearing up, too.

KIM

Every Gear needs a "Protector" to not just guide them, but make sure their Hudokai infused abilities develop. A Protector is emotionally linked to a Gear. Without a Protector, a Gear's ability will shrivel and become like... a shredded, wheaty cereal.

MAIN

And your protector became Tom... I wonder where Ben's Protector is, in that case?

BEN

(To his squad)

As captain of the base on this planet, I will not be made fun of.

GP VIGILANTE

Your monthly subscription to "Anthro Hotties Monthly" has arrived, sir. I hear this one has Tanya in!

BEN

Excellent. I will start on that, shortly. For now, if you see anything suspicious, report back to me.

GP SQUAD

Sir, yes sir!

MAIN

We've been told to eavesdrop on them, so let's sneak around and listen to what they have to say.

PLAYER resumes control. There are several conversations that occur when PLAYER gets close to GP VIGILANTE members when behind corners of walls or other hidden areas, nearby.

CONVERSATION 1

GP VIGILANTE

Who knew the Canarians moved underground, before finally leaving the planet, huh?

GP GUARD

Yeah. Not that there were many of them, anyway.

GP VIGILANTE

Shame. We could've done with their powers of darkness to help mine this Nethryial mineral. Would've made things way easier than the drain of resources those cutting lasers bring. Or Nekissa in the deeper parts.

GP GUARD

Well, maybe we shouldn't have forced the Canarians to mine with the Nekissa?

GP VIGILANTE

Don't tell me you're going soft! Who else is going to mine that far down? We need this Nethryial.

(MORE)

GP VIGILANTE (CONT'D)

Without it, we can't look into making new Genesis Grenades... it's for the future, remember!

MAIN

(Quietly, to himself)
New Genesis Grenades? This is bad...

CONVERSATION 2

GP GUARD

I don't see why we just don't look for the old Genesis Grenade.

GP VIGILANTE

Well, other groups of the GP are already on top of that. It's up to us to look into the original energy used to forge the first couple. Nethyrial minerals.

GP GUARD

They're buried too far in this planet. Makes me wonder how Nova and Jalfuzzy got to them before.

ALIZA

(To herself)
Nethyrial minerals... right, so they've taken the fight to the planet, itself. Darkness, this could get tricky.

CONVERSATION 3

GP VIGILANTE

Where do you think Koel is, now?

GP GUARD

Koel? That two-timing trickster? Who cares? He suggested the Genesis Grenade operation to begin with, then sabotaged the whole fluffing thing for his own sake!

GP VIGILANTE

It just bothers me that he got away with it all. After being so close to V.Len, and all...

GP GUARD

I hope he's rotting in the void. He'll back-stab anyone, he would.

GP VIGILANTE

Some say he worked with Nova to hide the second, stolen Genesis Grenade, you know?

GP GUARD

Wouldn't surprise me. Back-stab his best friend, V.Len, to help the one who blew up Galaxy 4... yeah, sounds about right.

GP VIGILANTE

Even more reason to find where Koel is. Then we'd know where the Genesis Grenade is. Then we'd beat those fluffing Nova outlaws at their own game.

GP GUARD

Then we'd win.

MAX

(Quietly)

Koel? That's... that's the name of my dad.

MAIN

(Quietly)

Sorry to burst your bubble, but I don't remember any Koel.

MAX

(Quietly)

What a surprise.

CONVERSATION 4

GP VIGILANTE

Canarians are a funny bunch, aren't they?

GP GUARD

What do you mean?

GP VIGILANTE

Well, they have these weird patterned arms, like cracked glass. They're almost like bird arms.

GP GUARD

Birds don't have arms.

GP VIGILANTE

You know what I mean, though, right? They also have these weird, dark powers. They can engulf things in darkness.

GP GUARD

Yeah, but it isn't strong enough to be useful. Kinda pathetic if you ask me.

GP VIGILANTE

I wish more of them stuck around.

CONVERSATION 5

MAX

Wait. This is... this is where my house used to be!

There is a large black crater about MAX's house size, in front of them. A couple of GP VIGILANTE are in the area.

GP GUARD

Looks like a Hudokai explosion happened here.

GP VIGILANTE

This and the Duskwight incident proves that Hudokai, when heated up, explodes violently.

GP GUARD

I was speaking with Jerry in accounting, and he reckons those caught in the explosions get sent to the void.

GP VIGILANTE

The place between dimensions? Between our galaxies? Get real! Jerry's been speaking whack ever since that Monkey fella kicked him in the scock.

GP GUARD

His fault for disguising himself as a field GP, like us, and getting out of his depth. He's on leave, still.

GP VIGILANTE

Speaking of people on leave, do you know where Warden Cyrril War went?

GP GUARD

Rumour on the grape vine is he also went to the void. He's just returned, or so I overheard Captain Ben say the other day.

GP VIGILANTE

You're full of scock you are.

MAX
 (Quietly)
 So... I'm from Sortheim. Figures. I
 was half hoping dad would be here,
 so I could get my own back on him.
 No one here but GP, though. Hmph.

AFTER ALL CONVERSATIONS

MAIN
 All right, I've heard enough. Let's
 report back to the Phantom Hawk.

Just as PLAYER is about to leave the underground town area,
 the PHANTOM SHAWK appears, blocking their path.

PHANTOM SHAWK
 Ah, just in time!

MAX
 What the fluff are you doing here?

PHANTOM SHAWK
 I came to drive the GP folks away.
 You can tell me what they all said,
 later. Brave smile, "Max". It's
 time to prepare yourselves.

PHANTOM SHAWK leaps out, alerting the GP VIGILANTE.

MAX
 For fluff's sake!

PHANTOM SHAWK
 Hello, fluffers of filth! The
 Phantom Hawk, here, ready to drive
 you off with my tools of
 destruction - a Gear and her army!

KIM
 I'm not a tool!

PHANTOM SHAWK
 And with that, I'll see you bread
 bins, later. Ahahahaha!

The PHANTOM SHAWK darts past MAIN (NOVA)'s crew just as the
 GP VIGILANTE group surrounds them.

GP VIGILANTE
 A rogue Gear?! Nova?! Get them!

PLAYER fights the GP VIGILANTES until BEN approaches. The
 remaining GP turn to him. As they do so...

MAIN
 Now's our chance. Run!

MAIN (NOVA) darts away with the others. BEN gives chase.

BEN

There they are! They will not
escape fate.

A Quick Time Event chase situation occurs until eventually
PLAYER loses BEN. Some of the GP VIGILANTE catches up,
however, just in time for the PLAYER to reach the PHANTOM
SHAWK.

PHANTOM SHAWK

All right. Time to show you the
power of a Canarian's talons!

The PHANTOM SHAWK rushes out and swipes at the GP VIGILANTE.
They all collapse, asleep. The SHAWK then darts off.

MAIN

His bird arms put them to sleep!
Let's head back to the Shawk and
give him a piece of our mind!

PLAYER heads back to the PHANTOM SHAWK in the Nekissa town.

ALIZA

What the darkness do you think
you're playing at?!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Relax, darling. I needed to know if
you were all strong enough to
handle it all. No point in carrying
on if you were all too weak.

ALIZA

You broke my trust! You sold us out
to the GP! You promised not to! You
mark my words, I'll make you pay
dearly for that... *darling*.

PHANTOM SHAWK

I promise a lot of things I don't
mean.

[VARSH]

I am aware.

MAIN

You'd best stick to that promise to
tell us where the Genesis Grenade
is, Shawk! I mean it!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Yeah, yeah. Now, what did you find
out?

MAIN

Canarians have bird-like arms,
V.Len is the head of this planet,
and a guy called Koel was his best
friend. He may know where the
Genesis Grenade is. If you could
direct us to him, I think we'd be
better off.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Koel, eh? You won't get any help
from that rogue. A waste of space,
he is.

MAX

Don't you think I don't know that?!
I'm his son, after all! Now, if you
know where he is, then tell me!

PHANTOM SHAWK

You're Koel's son? Yeah... yeah, I
see the resemblance, even if there
isn't much to go on. I thought
Koel's son was a kid called Brarn,
though? Brarn Weylyn.

MAX

...Yeah. Well. It's Max.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Prove it. Do something only Koel's
son could know, or do.

MAX

I know he's a backstabbing bastard
who left his son and sickened
mother when they needed him most.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Proof that you don't really know.
You know, he told me he left them
to keep the GP away. He'd gone
against V.Len and aided a criminal
in hiding the Genesis Grenade. The
GP were naturally attracted to him,
so he broke ties with his family to
stop them from being targetted or
getting involved. He did care for
them, but did what he could. He
left behind a future for his family
when he had none.

MAX

Bullcock! He left behind nothing
but a pair of rubbish daggers!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Whatever, kid. Either way, he's not about on this planet, anymore. He left a long time ago.

MAX

Bloody typical. Always running away. Always a coward.

PHANTOM SHAWK

So, anyway. Let's continue.

TASK 3 - PICK UP A PINT OF MILK.

PHANTOM SHAWK (CONT'D)

Right, I want you to get some milk.

ALIZA

Milk?! Like, from a cow?

PHANTOM SHAWK

No, from a Scentour. Those creatures with big noses that tour the planet. Right now, they should be in the Northern caves.

PHOENIX

I remember back on Duskwight, milk was really hard to come by.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Duskwight, huh? Yeah, I went there, once, years back.

PHOENIX

You don't say? Did you have business with the Capitarl?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Well, the only business I had was pinning the incident on Duskwight Peaks on them, haha!

PHOENIX

What did you say?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Duskwight Peaks. Back when the Reality Council were seeking the materials for a new Genesis Grenade, and back when I was working for them, we followed some energy readings to Duskwight, on Duskwight Peaks.

LIONE

You worked for the Reality Council?!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Long time ago. But now I'm against them, every step of the way.

PHOENIX

(Holding back inner rage)

Did you... did you by any chance bomb Duskwight Peaks?

PHANTOM SHAWK

I didn't bomb 'em, no. But, I did give the order to, yeah. No Nethyrial minerals, alas. The energy signals came from, what we now call, Hudokai.

PHOENIX

(Furious)

And you pinned that on the Capitarl?!

PHANTOM SHAWK

What's the dealio, scruff?

PHOENIX

The "dealio" is that I was on Duskwight Peaks that very day. You kil- you... What you did to Leo... I just can't believe *you did that!*

PHANTOM SHAWK

Is that why the top of your arm is metal, and the bottom made for gauntlets? Look, what I did then was a different time. A different me. Don't take it personally.

PHOENIX

I vowed to dismantle the Capitarl for many reasons, and that attack was just one! But now I learn you ordered that attack! No amount of time can undo that damage!

PHANTOM SHAWK

I said chill. No use crying over spilt milk.

PHOENIX

MILK?! I'll give you milk!

PHANTOM SHAWK

You sure will.

MAIN

All right, all right! Phoenix, let's just grab his stupid milk and reshape his face, later, right?

PHOENIX

Nova, I don't care if we need his assistance. I swear blind when this is over, I'm going to scar him the same way he scarred me, and my old team back in Chimera. He won't get away with his past actions.

PHANTOM SHAWK

(Yawning)

I'm so scared. Anyway, up North you go. Chop, chop.

PLAYER resumes control, up NORTH. They will eventually reach a blockade where once a tunnel was. A piece of technical mining equipment is next to it.

PHOENIX

Looks like it needs some kind of code to get working. Then we can drill through here for that... milk. That fluffing Shawkscock!

ALIZA

A code, huh? Let's try seeing what we can find in some of the other time periods through those chambers.

PLAYER resumes control, and can travel to the future and present, with some past, too. In all three periods, the tunnel is still blocked by rocks, but other areas are clear and others blocked off in different periods. Eventually, PLAYER will locate an area with... another LIONE in!

FUTURE LIONE

Nova! I-it can't be! After all this time! I thought you were...

MAIN

I'm what, Lione? Actually, where is my future self?

FUTURE LIONE

I see, you're from that incident back on Canary, 8 months ago. I remember. It's best you don't know.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

Tell me about my future!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Any tips to keep in mind?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
It's best I don't know.

AFTER OPTIONS

FUTURE LIONE
The best I can do is tell you "Lave
Eon". That should help.

PHOENIX
All it helps with is making me
confused. Tell me, Lione, are we
still fighting for the future? Was
it worth it?

FUTURE LIONE
...Phoenix, if only you knew. I
could spare you so much pain.

PHOENIX
Not ominous at all.

LIONE
Did I always look so... tired?

FUTURE LIONE
So fresh-faced. So naive. You've
got some growing to do, Lione.

LIONE
Pah! Charming!

FUTURE LIONE
I'm being watched. As always. I
must go. Everyone, no matter what -
keep holding hope. We'll win.

FUTURE LIONE runs elsewhere as several GP forces run in. They prevent you from chasing FUTURE LIONE as you engage in battle with them. After the fight, FUTURE LIONE is nowhere to be seen.

MAIN
Come what may, only we can change
the future, right? I think Lione
gave us the password needed to
activate the drill. Let's find a
capsule and head back to the
present.

PLAYER does so and can now continue onwards, where they will find an area of Scentour. After battling one, they will receive SCENTOUR MILK.

PHOENIX

We finally have some of Shawk's milk. Maybe he can drink it like a toddler from a carton? Let's head back before I blow the stupid stuff up.

PLAYER resumes control and can now head back to KRAKPOLL.

TASK 4 - ACQUIRE MINED HUDOKAI.

PHANTOM SHAWK

So, the GP still have some of the Nekissa mining in the deepest caverns. We've yet to penetrate these places and rescue them.

ITAMI

My sisters need freeing, but we haven't the strength.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Right. But with six or seven strapping folks like yourselves, it's time to rescue them... and find the Hudokai they've uncovered.

KIM

Hudokai? That must be the reading I picked up, earlier! Or one of them, at least!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Hmph, you're a Gear, aren't you?

KIM

H-how did you know?

PHANTOM SHAWK

Encountered them before, I have. One's closer than you may realise, in fact. You can use your powers for me and help find this Hudokai, in that case.

KIM

"Use"...? I'm not a tool! I'm a person!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Keep telling yourself that if it helps you sleep after killing so many innocents.

ALIZA

Hey! No one speaks to Kim like that! She's a changed Gear!

PHANTOM SHAWK
Whatever you say, darling.

ALIZA
"Darling"?!

OPTIONS

MAIN
Best cool off, Aliza. We need his help, still. Grin and bear it.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Talk to my team like that, again,
and we're not helping you at all!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Yeah! You tell 'em, Shawk!

AFTER OPTIONS

PHANTOM SHAWK
You want me to tell you where the Genesis Grenade is or not?

MAIN
Fine. We'll help you until you're ready to tell us. So you want us to grab the Hudokai the Nekissa have found?

PHANTOM SHAWK
That's about the sum of it, yeah. Head East from the Krakpoll centre, and keep heading down. Free the Nekissa and you'll find the Hudokai. Remember, you have a valuable tool. That Gear will be most useful to both you and my operation. Now, get going East.

The PLAYER will need to free ten Nekissa slaves in the caverns. Freeing all ten will grant them access to the elevator lift down to the southern-most cavern, where the Nekissa will have informed them of the uncovered Hudokai. Except, a figure is waiting there. NOVA... FUTURE MAIN.

KIM
There's two Novas!

PHOENIX
Oh man, he's multiplying.

MAX

Great. It's difficult enough
dealing with one fluffer!

FUTURE MAIN

Squabbling like children. Sounds
about right. The past still
surprises me.

MAIN

The past? So, you're from my
future? Oh man, I'm such a stiff.
Has Lione rubbed off on me *that*
much?

LIONE

Hey! I can be more charming and
humorous than you could ever be.
And all it takes is a one liner
joke.

MAIN

Prove it!

LIONE

The future, the present and the
past walked into a bar. Things got
a little tense.

MAX

...

MAIN

...

ALIZA

...

KIM

...

PHOENIX

I get it!

LIONE

Yeah, well, I have a whole bunch of
one liners if you ever need them.

MAX

Well, you out-charmed Nova, but
that wasn't hard. Keep 'em coming
wheneeeeeeever you want, Lione.

FUTURE MAIN

Trust me, I'm a year into your
future and Lione will definitely
"keep 'em coming".
(MORE)

FUTURE MAIN (CONT'D)
 Meanwhile, I have something more
 rewarding - the Aqua Hudokai you're
 looking for.

FUTURE MAIN (NOVA) gives MAIN (NOVA) the Hudokai.

MAIN
 (Jokingly)
 Aqua, huh? I guess we'll need
 waterproofs in future.

LIONE
 When I found out that my toaster
 wasn't waterproof, I was shocked.

MAX
 ...

ALIZA
 ...

KIM
 ...

MAIN
 ...

PHOENIX
 I get that one, too!

MAIN
 Lione aside, it's good to know I
 survive for so long, isn't that
 right, everyone?

MAX
 Eh...

ALIZA
 Well...

LIONE
 I suppose...

MAIN
 That's how much I'm appreciated,
 around here.

PHOENIX
 Well, it's not like we know each
 other *that* well. We could do with
 some high quality bonding.

MAX
 Speak for yourself, fox.

PHOENIX

If we're going to fight the Cult of Kai together, we may as well figure out something to get along by. What we used to do, back with new recruits in Chimera, was have a karaoke night.

ALIZA

There's no way in darkness I'm singing anything!

MAIN

Blake might, though.

LIONE

(Pretend raspy)

I-I think I'm coming down with something, I may just skip that one.

PHOENIX

I'm surrounded by nothing but cowards. There's real science behind it and stuff! They say karaoke bonds a group quicker than any other activity.

MAX

Who says?

PHOENIX

Well, I say so for a start.

FUTURE MAIN

I can't believe we used to be *this* fractured. If you don't glue together tighter, then the future may be emptier than you think...

MAIN

It can't be that empty if I'm still about in it, am I right?

KIM

Unless I kill everyone, like Adho wanted.

MAX

The fluff is wrong with you, Kim?!

FUTURE MAIN

Your future is not secure. I am from a potential future, one that may or may not happen, depending on your actions.

MAX

See? You can still die, Nova.

MAIN

Then why are you here? To warn us?

FUTURE MAIN

To offer advice. The same advice I gave myself so long ago. The same advice you may give yourself in the future. Trust in Tom. Forgive Kim. Save the future. And remember, Kim, you're not a tool...

FUTURE MAIN (NOVA) fades away.

MAIN

W-what do you mean? Is Tom still alive?! What about Kim?! Damn it, I'm such a teasing fluff!

LIONE

You're telling me.

KIM

Tom... but... I don't feel him. As a Gear, I should feel his emotions... I should know if he was alive... but...

MAIN

Worrying will make us uneasy. It's best we head back to the Phantom Hawk, now that we have the Hudokai. Let's go.

TASK 5 - ACQUIRE THE SEEDS FOR THE GREAT TREE, PEACHY.

PHANTOM SHAWK

You know what this one's about. Acquire the seeds for the Great Tree Peachy.

ALIZA

We'll head back in time to plant the seeds so that they'll sprout a new tree in the present.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Sure. However you wanna go about it. The tree was directly below Krakpoll in an underground shrine.

ALIZA

So, we plant the seeds down there, then a tree should be in the present day.

PHANTOM SHAWK

I doubt you'll find the seeds down there, though. You'll probably have to find the old Chippen Forest that used to be underground in the... Uh, well, beneath the shrine somewhere.

LIONE

Chippen? Like... Galaxy Fried Chippen?

MAX

Not this, again. Look, Lione, you have to get over your GFC addiction or you'll go nuts.

LIONE

Never!

PHANTOM SHAWK

You know, the reason now so few GFC chains exist in the three galaxies is because I linked them to the steady rise in obesity. The Intergalactic Health Committee was then despatched to shut many of them down.

LIONE

You... I can't believe you'd do that! I always wondered why so many closed, and now I know you're the reason.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Well, that was back when I worked for the Reality Council, anyway. I did a lot of shady scock back then.

LIONE

Unforgivable!

ALIZA

When this is over, we'll find a GFC and you can feast away your troubles, Lione.

MAIN

Right now, we're finding those seeds in the past. Let's head down the ladders to beneath the shrine.

PLAYER resumes control. Once beneath the shrine, they will be sent to the past and undergo several puzzles until they locate the entrance to the underground forest. A Nekissa NATIVE blocks the way.

NATIVE

You are not welcome here, you who
turned your back on nature and
embraced technology.

MAX

What a fine way to greet guests.
Get out our way, or we'll make you.

ALIZA

For darkness sake, Max!

NATIVE

You will not proceed unless you
prove yourself.

PHOENIX

Oh man, she's produced a deck of
Outlaws cards. Looks like we're
gonna have to play.

PLAYER fights the NATIVE in an Outlaws card game. Regardless
of whether they win or lose, the scene will continue,
although winning will provide an extra reward of goodies.

KIM

You're a past Nekissa! I like
Nekissa! We're after seeds, cat
person!

NATIVE

Seeds from the Great Tree, Peachy?

ALIZA

That's right. So, what's through
your side of the forest?

NATIVE

The seeds from the Great Tree,
Peachy. You may pass, but only this
once.

ALIZA

Cheers. Now, let's find those
seeds!

PLAYER locates the seeds at the very SOUTH of the forest.

KIM

Look, Nova! Seeds!

MAIN

Just what we're looking for. Let's
head back to the shrine, plant
them, then head to the present.

PLAYER regains control and can plant the seeds at the shrine.
Once back in the present, an immense tree will have sprouted.

KIM

The Great Tree Peachy has returned!

The Nekissa are all around it, worshipping the tree. The PHANTOM SHAWK walks in and finds the crew.

PHANTOM SHAWK

What are you lot all wasting time here, for?

ALIZA

You sent us to find the Great Tree Peachy seeds, remember? We grew this tree.

PHANTOM SHAWK

I did no such thing. This tree has been here for many, many years. Now, you promised me you'd do my four tasks. Quit wasting time and meet me at the town hall!

The PHANTOM SHAWK wanders off.

ALIZA

That's troubling. I guess because we grew the tree, he never needed to ask us to find the seeds in this new time line.

LIONE

Doesn't change the fact he wanted rid of GFC, though. I'll make sure he pays for that.

MAIN

Let's see what else he needs us to do before we get our hands on the Genesis Grenade.

PLAYER resume control.

AFTER ALL FIVE TASKS:

PLAYER speaks with the PHANTOM SHAWK in the town hall.

PHANTOM SHAWK

So, you've completed all four tasks? Very good.

ALIZA

Well, it was five, but you forgot the existence of one of them...

MAIN

If there's one thing I've learnt, Shawk, it's that you've fluffed a lot of people off.

PHANTOM SHAWK

What's new?

MAIN

Most shocking of all, you were close friends with V.Len.

PHANTOM SHAWK

It ain't surprising. We go back a long way. It was he who gained the position of head of planet Canary, though.

MAX

V.Len's this planet's leader?! No wonder it's become a pile of junk. A husk of its former self, even!

PHANTOM SHAWK

Like you'd remember, kid. It's clear something's happened to your mind. And your's too, Nova. After all, you don't even recognise me.

MAIN

Should I?

ITAMI walks in at that moment.

ITAMI

Yes, he's the man responsible for hiding the Genesis Grenade.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Ita, no! Enough!

ITAMI

They have to know! They helped us!

MAIN

You're...!

PHANTOM SHAWK

By the life of Peachy, you've ruined the veil, bloody Nekissa!

MAX

You're Koel. You're the man who ordered the attack on Duskwight Peaks, who uses Gears as tools, breaks people's trust, encouraged the Genesis Grenade's creation and worst of all, walked out on his family.

PHANTOM SHAWK

Fine! I admit it! My real name's Koel Dosne Weylyn!

MAX

(Furious)

You're my twisted, despicable
excuse of a father!

ALIZA

No way...!

KOEL

Yes way! And he's my ungrateful
excuse of a kid, Brarn Weylyn!

PHOENIX

Uh, isn't his name Maximillian
Judge? One hell of a name.

MAX

I... I really didn't want to reveal
this, but... look, Max Judge is the
name I took to distance myself from
my dad.

PHOENIX

Woah, so the truth's out there.
Anyone else have secret names?

ITAMI

We all have secret names. The
Nekissa threw away their old names
and gave ourselves new ones. They
remind us of what we've gone
through. Or what we will go
through. Itami is my new name.

KIM

My real name's 001.

MAIN

No it isn't. It's Kim. Because, you
see, we don't have to stay the
person we once were. We forge new
identities for ourselves. Otherwise
I'd always be the man who stole a
Genesis Grenade and killed
countless people, allied to V.Len
and this crook of a Canarian.

KOEL

We're all changed individuals.

MAX

Like hell you are! You even knew I
was your son, but decided not to
tell me! Not earlier, anyway. What
kind of father keeps secrets from
their son?!

KOEL

One that wanted the best for his son, so slipped away in secret. That way, the GP would never have need to harm you and your mother.

MAX

Utter garbage! You only left without telling anyone so we couldn't tell the GP anything! You didn't want us to lead them to you, am I right?!

KOEL

I had the interests of everyone at heart, kid.

MAX

The only interest you had was in yourself!

KOEL

Yeah?! And what of the Nekissa? Would a selfish man want to help the Nekissa out of slavery and against the GP?!

MAX

You mean your own personal army to fight against the GP with? That's your gain from this! Fighting the GP to keep them away from arresting you and taking the Genesis Grenade. You probably only want to sell it on the black market or something, anyway!

MAIN

Cool it, Max! He did look after the Genesis Grenade, after all! I entrusted him with it, so he can't have been all that bad... right?

KOEL

...

MAX

Stay out of this, Nova! I swear to the fluffing Peachy Tree, if I have to, that I'll kill that mother fluffer even if it's the last thing I do!

KOEL

If it's a fight you want, kid, then I'll give you the discipline you so desperately need.

MAX

Just you and me! Bring it... Dad!

BOSS FIGHT: MAX VS KOEL

In-battle dialogue:

KOEL

So, what's your next move, kid?

MAX

I've got two daggers especially for your throat. How about my next move is one that'll end it!

KOEL

Not likely! I think it's time you went to bed early, Brarn.

KOEL swipes MAX with his talons and puts him to sleep in-battle for a while. Eventually, when either MAX or KOEL has been beaten, the STORY will continue after the fight.

ITAMI

No! Koel has helped us so much! Please leave him alone. I will deal with him if I have to.

KOEL

Ita, don't you- Gwaaaaah! Forget it! I've messed around, enough! Not that you'd understand my predicament! I'll be back tomorrow. You all evidently need to calm the fluff down. Sleep on it. Brave smile, Max. Brave smile.

MAX

I'll give you a brave fluffing smile, you fluffing scockhead!

ITAMI gets between MAX and KOEL as KOEL walks out of the town hall area.

ITAMI

Please don't hate him.

MAIN

Easier said than done, right now. But he *is* right, we need to cool down before we carry on with anything.

ITAMI

It's getting late. You'll be spending the night in Monkey's Bar on the second floor. It has beds, upstairs.

(MORE)

ITAMI (CONT'D)

But before sleeping, I really,
really would like us Nekissa to
thank you for all you've done, so
far.

PHOENIX

A reward? Now we're talking!

ITAMI

Come to the bar when you're ready.
Monkey's a fun host and a great
story-teller. One of the few
Canarians left, here. See you
later.

ITAMI leaves. Story continues once PLAYER enters MONKEY's
Bar, fully of Nekissa.

MONKEY

So there I was, ready to smash this
GP guy in the nuts... when
suddenly, he pulls a cannon out to
my face. I could've punched the
cannonball out of the way, but
someone didn't let me. That someone
leapt out, two blades blazing.

ITAMI

And that someone was Koel! Saviour
of the Nekissa!

Everyone in the bar cheers at that.

MONKEY

That guy saved my bacon.

ITAMI

And then they ate that bacon,
after! Even I had some!

LIONE

Smoking will kill you... bacon will
kill you... but smoking bacon will
cure it.

PHOENIX

Another one liner? Want me to give
you some pointers, Lione?

LIONE

I already have ten and they're all
my fingers.

PHOENIX

Ba-dum-tsh.

MONKEY

So tonight, drinks are on the
house... and only tonight, here at
Monkey's Bar!

Everyone cheers and both MONKEY and ITAMI jump off of the
central table, with MONKEY heading behind the bar.

ITAMI

You made it!

PHOENIX

We sure did, my feline friend. So,
before I indulge in my favourite
past-time, and no doubt drink 'till
dusk if it's on the house, what's
our reward?

ITAMI

Karaoke!

PHOENIX

Oh fluff.

MAX

Well... you did say it was the best
way to bond, Phoenix.

PHOENIX

Yeah, and I also said to shut your
face, Max. I'll sing, sure, but not
before I've had a dozen drinks.

ITAMI

Sit on the front seats and we'll
get started!

ITAMI heads to the front stage, ready to get the Karaoke
list. PLAYER has free reign of the bar until sitting down on
the front seats, next to the stage.

ITAMI (CONT'D)

What would you like to sing?

A list is given of various songs. There are six (short
version) songs. One for every character. A Quick Time Event
will play out should any one of them be selected. A goody is
rewarded for every song completed. PLAYER has a choice to
continue the story after one of the songs, but can do all six
for the goodies at the end of each one, if they'd like.

SONG LIST:

FEELING EMPTY (HUDOKAI: DARK MATTER THEME) - MAIN (NOVA)

WALTZING MATILDA (ROYALTY FREE BUSH BALLAD) - LIONE

BOSS TUNE (HUDOKAI: DARK MATTER) - MAX

WEEABO THE MUSICAL BEST HITS (HUDOKAI: DARK MATTER) - ALIZA

ONE LONG SCREAM (NOT REALLY FROM ANYTHING) - KIM

LAGOON OF LIFE (HUDOKAI: DARK MATTER, BIORHYTHM) - PHOENIX

FEELING EMPTY

(MAIN NOVA)

Dark Matter,
It builds existence,
My mind tingles,
Yet I lack subsistence,
My body's hollow,
Like a black hole,
Supermassive,
White flag on black pole,
Hudokai;
Spheres of creation,
Full of data,
But I lack information,
Subatomic,
I'm central, yet I'm nowhere,
Incarcerated,
Yet free as a sun flare...

WALTZING MATILDA

(LIONE BURGESS)

Once a jolly swagman camped by a
billabong,
Under the shade of a coolibah tree,
And he sang as he watched and
waited till his billy boiled:
"You'll come a-waltzing Matilda,
with me."

Waltzing Matilda, waltzing Matilda
You'll come a-waltzing Matilda,
with me,
And he sang as he watched and
waited till his billy boiled:
"You'll come a-waltzing Matilda,
with me."

BOSS TUNE

(MAX JUDGE)

I am the one who will beat the
fluff out of you and
You are the one who will take my
scythe without a clue,
We are the team who will use some
fluffing Hudokai to
Rip you a-scocking-apart,
My name is Max and I have dark
powers or something,
These lyrics now aren't fitting the
song but I don't care,
(MORE)

BOSS TUNE (CONT'D)
 'Cause I'm gonna turn this into
 some heavy scock and
 (Death scream)
 DIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIEEEEEEEEEEE.

WEEABO THE MUSICAL
 (ALIZA LEGION)
 And now for Weeabo the Musical.

AN KONGA DAISKIIIIIIII!
 Baka Baka Waifu!
 Kamehamedaaaaaiiskkkiiii!
 Senpai notice miiiiiii!

Do you waku my kokoro?
 For I aishitaru you so much!
 Do you waku my kokoooooroooo?
 For I aishitaru you so much!

ONE LONG SCREAM
 (KIM SILVER)
 AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAHHHHHHH!
 AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAHHHHH!
 AAAAAAAAAHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHH!

LAGOON OF LIFE
 (PHOENIX FOX)
 Sweet, yet bitter, water of strife,
 O, can you heal a mortal's life?
 Sector 6 requests your presence,
 Two households feud without
 penance,
 Swords spit sparks but this king's
 crying,
 Citizens of his life dying,
 Give those dead a second chance,
 Give those who live a severed
 lance.
 (Beat)
 What the fluff is this? This isn't
 the one I was thinking of. The one
 I wanted had combustion and death.

AFTER KARAOKE CHOICE:

Everyone is sitting around a table as a BLAKE fronted ALIZA
 decides to sing the Lagoon of Life in the background (re-
 using the recordings from the BIORHYTHM world).

ITAMI
 Did you have fun, like I did?

PHOENIX
 Fun with a capital "F", "U", yeah.

MAX

Doesn't take my mind away from my dad, though. I should've figured sooner, but he looks... different.

KIM

Different? Maybe he's a changed person? People can change, right Nova?

OPTIONS:

MAIN

Everyone changes, given time.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Anyone but artificial Gears, 001.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We're all the same person beneath.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

If they want to change, they will.

AFTER OPTIONS:

KIM

Oh.

MAX

Even that phrase of his, "Brave smile" makes me feel so angry inside. Like it's just bravado to distract people from his true, selfish intensions. That and... like he knew it was mum's last words. Damn it!

KIM

Why do you hate him, Max? Is it worth hating others when we can protect them in our own way?

MAX

Whatever. I bet you all have plenty of questions for me. Fire away.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

Why did you hide your arms in bandages?

MAX

Oh, right. I keep them bandaged and never use their ability to put others to sleep. They reminded me of *him*. My dad, I mean. It felt better to cover the truth and make my own identity, than live in his shadow.

OR/AND

MAIN

Do you see Canary as your home?

MAX

It's funny. I've always thought home was important. "Home is where the heart is" has always been a motto I've lived by... but Canary doesn't feel like my home. Not anymore. The Nexus is a pale comparison, too. Everything's not how I remember it.

OR/AND

MAIN

What happened to your mom?

MAX

My *mum* got sick. Really sick. Mentally, I mean. She blamed herself for dad leaving, and whilst she's the strongest woman I've ever known, it just ate away at her.

When I started acting up in school, because I stopped seeing the point of studying for grades that meant nothing in the face of experience, my mum said "It's because you're a Weylyn" and "It's my fault I'm not smart enough". Both of those made me so angry, like I was stuck with my dad's genes and she blamed herself for not having a better husband.

She started thinking everyone accused her of being useless, and doing all sorts of things to prove them wrong, like unpaid overtime at the Silverfrost Boathouse or volunteer work at the Scentour farms. The Boathouse eventually let her go, and she kept blaming herself... and it was all because my dad left without a word.

(MORE)

MAX (CONT'D)

The last time I saw her, my mum, was when she went out to find work, desperate to provide for us. I was too young, myself. She looked at me and said "I'll be back when I have a job. Brave smile, Brarn." At that point, I knew. I knew she wouldn't be coming back, and I'd heard reports about a blizzard on the surface, but I smiled and let her go, anyway.

I never forgave myself. I never forgave my dad.

OR/AND

MAIN

Why did you set your house on fire?

MAX

It was my dad's, remember? After mum left, I didn't see the point in keeping the house about. It reminded me of my dad. Little did I know we had a piece of Hudokai tucked away, meaning the resulting explosion sent me to the Nexus. The Hudokai was ripped apart.

OR/AND

MAIN

I'm done. Thanks for sharing your story, Max.

AFTER OPTIONS:

MAX

I figured it was about time I was open. What about you, Lione? Do you feel it's time to be open about your name on that grave?

LIONE

...

MAX

Figures.

MAIN

So, do we still call you Max, or...?

MAX

Max will do. The name's from my favourite band, Noctane and the Baby Fish. The bass guitarist was always so strong, despite his slow decay through the tumour he'd developed. I thought "Yeah, I want to be as strong as that", and so I became Maximillion Judge.

MAIN

Is becoming someone else really the answer?

MAX

No, but becoming someone you want to be *is*.

LIONE

Amen to that. Let's drink... to family.

MAX

To family!

They all drink and the scene fades out with the sleeping sting playing, everyone resting up for the night.

SCENARIOS:

SCENARIO #1 - V.LEN HOLDS A MEETING

V.LEN is in the Reality Council space station, hosting a meeting with various CULT OF KAI members around a glass-floored room, the starts sprawled out beneath them. V.LEN sits in the most elaborate chair of all, in the centre.

V.LEN

Not every world leader is a member of the Cult of Kai. Not every Cult of Kai member is even here in this meeting, today. Guy is but one, as is Greg. Still, I have the power to call upon meetings of "my most esteemed colleagues" whenever necessary, as a guise for us members.

And so I open up this meeting with important news. Captain Ben has informed his superior that the Canary Nethyrial project has been successful, after all. The information, in particular, pertains to the second Genesis Grenade. He has a lead on an old "friend" of mine, Koel Weylyn. He knows where the grenade is.

(MORE)

V.LEN (CONT'D)

This information is reliable, as sourced by Ben and relayed to me by Ben's superior... Cyrril War.

Your ears do not deceive you. Cyrril War is alive. With his and Penny's experiments successful, it's time we moved to the next phase of "Operation Puppet".
Mmmhehehehe.

END OF SCENARIO

SCENARIO #2 - ITAMI TAKES A STROLL

ITAMI explores the glowing tunnels and to a barred area where she can't get passed. Several humanoid figures are hidden in the shadows.

ITAMI

I brought you some food from Monkey's bar. I know you don't like fish, but you have to eat to stay alive!

FIGURE

...

ITAMI

Don't worry, I'll have you out, soon. It's no fun being a prisoner. Some new friends arrived, today. One of them said she was a "Gear". They'll get you out, once I bring them here.

FIGURE

A... Gear?!

ITAMI

You know her?

FIGURE

Kim!

The FIGURE comes out of the shadows, mining equipment in hand. It is TOM SILVER. Scene fades to black.

SCENARIO ENDS.

SCENARIO #3 - VARSH AND KOEL

KOEL sits at the Great Peachy Tree Shrine, in the dark. Various floating lights light the area in low colours, pulsing as if magical in nature. KOEL is at the base of tree as VARSH approaches, providing the PLAYER has acquired VARSH (otherwise SCENARIO will not be an option to select).

KOEL

You're one of the Nova crew, right?
You've all fluffed me off, acting
like some... kinda trigger happy
wolf pack, out for blood. *My blood.*

VARSH

Those trigger happy wolf things
decided to assault you like a lynch
mob.

KOEL

"Lynch mob"? Yeah, sounds about
right. Yet, you've come to talk? I
guess you don't quite feel the
same.

VARSH

...

KOEL

Ah, whatever. Listen, I've done
bad. Captain Ben, of the GP,
finally caught up to me from his
pursuit, earlier. I... I may have
hinted about knowing the Genesis
Grenade. N-not that he knows the
location, but he knows that I know
of it. Just barely escaped, too.
I'm such a fluffing idiot! I almost
compromised the entire Nekissa
operation! If the GP seek me out,
it would mean the Nekissa won't be
ready to strike at the GP for being
put into slavery. They'll mop the
floor with us. If only I'd... kept
my mind blank and my mouth shut!

VARSH

Easier said than done. If I ever
blank out, I think I'll die.

KOEL

The thoughtful type, eh? Wish more
people were like you, Mr...

VARSH

My name is Varsh.

KOEL

Well, Varsh. Care to drink with me
for the evening? I could do with
the company. Even Ita's left me for
the night to s- Wait, who's there?

Someone approaches in the shadows. The figure is
unidentifiable.

VARSH
H-hello? Who's there?

KOEL
Come any closer and I'll be forced
to fight back, you hear me?

The figure leaps out to KOEL. VARSH escapes in fright.

KOEL (CONT'D)
You bloody coward! How dare you-
OOOOOOF!

Scene fades to black.

SCENARIO ENDS.

ONCE ALL SCENARIOS HAVE ENDED, STORY CONTINUES.

MAIN (NOVA) wakes up in the beds on the second floor of
MONKEY'S BAR.

MAX
Look at you all, with your
hangovers and your regrets. I
didn't drink, myself, so I'm fine.

MAIN
Someone shut him up.

MAX
Naw, I bet some brekkie is what
you're all craving after that kinda
night? Scentour sausages? Chippen
eggs? A side of shpeep waffles?

LIONE
Speaking of food, I've just written
a song about tortillas. Actually,
it's more of a rap.

MAIN
Someone shut her up, too.

PHOENIX
Been a while since I partied that
hard. Oh man, I barely remember
anything!

ALIZA
I went to bed early, so I don't
remember much, either.

KIM
I had so much sugar, I feel super
sleepy, now.
(MORE)

KIM (CONT'D)

Last night was an interesting display of affection and harmonious resonance. It taught me a lot about humanity and fun!

MAIN

My brain's pounding. It's too early for that sci-fi scock. Let's just find Koel and see if he's ready to show us the way to the grenade.

PLAYER resumes control. However, once they exit the building, no one is around.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Where is everyone? Let's check that tree shrine place. Someone's bound to be there!

PLAYER resumes control. Once they reach the Great Tree Peachy shrine, they find many Nekissa standing around a body. KOEL.

ITAMI

Why? Who could have done this to Koel? He only wanted to help us...

MAX

...

LIONE

Where there's a will, there's a relative.

ALIZA

Lione! Now's not the time!

LIONE

I was just trying to lighten the mood with a one liner. No, you're right. What happened, here? Is Koel okay?

ITAMI

You tell me.

ALIZA

What do you mean, we didn't do anything to Koel! I think. I don't really remember a lot of last night.

PHOENIX

None of us do. But... Look, we don't go around piling up bodies, right?

ITAMI

What about the Scentours and other creatures of Canary? What about their bodies you've piled up?

PHOENIX

Uh...

ITAMI

But you're lucky. Koel's not dead. He's still breathing! And we'll find out which one of you did this to him once he wakes up!

MAX

Dad's in a coma?! Damn it, I don't remember anything about last night!

ALIZA

But why? You didn't have any drinks. You also had a motive, Max. After all, you hated him... right?

MAX

What are you trying to say, Aliza? That I wanted my dad in a coma? That I actually do remember and am just pretending to forget? So what about you? You didn't drink anything, either! Don't you dare accuse me!

ALIZA

I'm just saying it's not impossible, that's all.

MAX

Didn't my dad break your trust, too? Wasn't that the one thing that you couldn't abide by? Didn't you say you'd get him back for it?!

ALIZA

So now I put Koel in a coma? A likely story, Max!

ITAMI

It was one of you. Us Nekissa owe our lives to Koel. Will one of us be next? We can't trust you!

PHOENIX

Now, now, everyone calm the fluff down! Why would any of us attack Koel? We need Koel to tell us the Genesis Grenade's location! He can't do that in a coma, can he?

LIONE

Are you trying to take us off the scent, Phoenix? Maybe it was you who did it? Koel did order the attack on Duskwight Peaks, after all. Seems convenient you'd forget all about last night.

PHOENIX

What?!

LIONE

It'd make perfect sense to want revenge on someone who took so much away from you. Once an outlaw, always an outlaw, am I right?

PHOENIX

Says misses "I'll kill him for shutting down so many Galaxy Fried Chippens"!

[VARSH]

The idea of not knowing scares me. The possibilities are endless!

MAIN

Enough! Truth be told, it could have been any one of us. We all had a motive.

ITAMI

Whoever did it has lost the trust of myself, their comrades, and the Nekissa. You're all so stupid!

MAIN

I can't deny that. Whoever did it wasn't thinking straight. This complicates things. Without Koel, we won't know where the Genesis Grenade is, and we need to beat V.Len and his GP to that finish line.

LIONE

That finish line is when the entire Cult of Kai are punished for their crimes.

KIM

Ah... my head! It feels like I'm already being punished! Make it stop! It feels like when we met Ben! Aaaaah!

Several figures have walked in since the blame game started. They are BEN and several GP VIGILANTE.

BEN
Mr. Nova. At last.

ITAMI
Koel said he accidentally told Ben he knew of the Genesis Grenade's location. He was worried he'd lead the GP to Krakpoll. Now it's finally happened... and we're not ready to fight back... only when the clocktower's bell sounds out will we be ready.

ALIZA
The one above the town hall...?

ITAMI
That's what Koel always said.

MAIN
So, the GP Vigilante division have finally caught up to us in the present day. If you have business with Koel, then tough, he's comatose.

MAX
You all right, Lione? I know you didn't want to meet with this guy.

LIONE
(Furious)
It's too late, now!

BEN takes a noticeable step back at seeing LIONE. There is a moment of silence.

BEN
...

LIONE
...

BEN
Lione Burgess...

MAIN
Nevermind whatever you two have going on, Ben! You do know you follow a corrupt leader, right? In doing so, you, yourself, corrupt the Galactic Preservation. You don't have to spread that virus.

BEN
Oh, that's right. You don't like viruses. Not that it matters, now.
(MORE)

BEN (CONT'D)

V.Len's plan benefits everyone and his plan is already in motion. It can't be stopped. Reports state my father has already returned to the Reality Council.

LIONE

Had it not been for your twisted father, Cyrril War, you wouldn't be in this mess, Ben. You're a child prodigy. If I were you, I'd use that to sentence your father. You know the difference between right and wrong. You're not stupid. Far from it. So don't you dare stick up for your dad and single us out as the villains, here.

MAIN

The warden has a son?!

BEN

Adopted. But I am forever in his debt for it. He taught me the ways of the Galactic Preservation. He made something out of me. I could never sentence that man to imprisonment. You all, however, are traitors, murderers and accomplices to the aforementioned. The only reason I'm not sentencing you on sight is...

LIONE

Don't say it, Ben. Don't say it. They mustn't know. I-I'm sorry for hiding. I know this must be a shock for you.

ALIZA

Huh? Mustn't know... what?

BEN

...I'm glad you've all come here.

LIONE

And anyway, it wasn't us who did this to Koel.

BEN

Then who made this wound?

ALIZA

Given how twisted the GP are, it wouldn't surprise me if you were the one who attacked Koel.

BEN

What a bleak suggestion. You accuse me? If only I could laugh.

LIONE

I wish you would. Maybe then you'd be more... human.

KIM

I feel more emotion than this boy does. I sense he hasn't had much of any childhood.

BEN

Silence. You murdered an innocent man... and stole something of worth.

MAX

Yeah, the Genesis Grenade's location may be "something of worth", but we didn't murder him! He's just in a coma.

(Sombre)

My dad's in a coma.

LIONE

Ben, stop. There's no need to arrest all of us if only one did this to Koel. Look, if it will help any... we'll look into who the culprit is. Once we have the evidence, we'll seek you out.

BEN

...

LIONE

Ben, please!

[VARSH]

Knowledge is power.

BEN

I'm not about to get my hands dirty. I leave this to you.

ITAMI

Everyone should meet in the town hall when the culprit has been found.

LIONE

Then we'll meet there. Tomorrow.

BEN and his squad march off.

MAIN

Right. It's down to me. I'll look for clues. It's best I search Koel's body, interview some of the crew, and then look about Krakpoll. I'll get to the bottom of this!

PLAYER resumes control and can ask about. Different Nekissa say different things. KOEL's body will also produce different clues, depending on where is investigated. All crew members will stay at the shrine whilst MAIN (NOVA) investigates. They can be interviewed.

EVIDENCE FINDING

QUESTION OPTIONS TO CREW MEMBERS:

MAIN (CONT'D)

What was the last thing you remember, before leaving Monkey's Bar, last night? I personally remember nothing after the bar.

LIONE

I'd drank more than I had in a long time and I was feeling sick. I left the bar to... you know. After that, it's all just black space.

MAX

I didn't drink, although I really wanted to. The Nekissa said I was too young, those fluffy fluffers. I was feeling down, so I remember taking a late night walk in the tunnels. Cleared the air, a bit.

ALIZA

I remember my voice feeling sore, like I'd sang one karaoke song too many. To soothe my ill feelings, I left to read a book. I felt pretty tired, and after reading a part about sleeping, I drifted off...

PHOENIX

You expect me to remember last night after that many drinks? Impossible. All I have are patches where I needed to fix up my mechanical arm. My gauntlet wouldn't work properly without it.

KIM

I had so much sweet stuff, Nova, I-I don't even remember much.

(MORE)

KIM (CONT'D)

I kept thinking about how much Tom would've had fun, here, and then I felt sad. My "emotions", I think you call them, were all over the place, so I left early. That's it.

[VARSH]

Shadow creatures... Alone... get to the bottom of all this madness.

AND/OR

MAIN

If Koel wasn't on your mind, then who were you thinking about? For me, it was... Anja.

LIONE

Ben B- uh, just Ben...

MAX

My mum. Aife Weylyn.

ALIZA

Aukaneck.

PHOENIX

The one who was struck hardest at Duskwight Peaks - Leo.

KIM

Tom...

[VARSH]

Elizabeth.

AND/OR

MAIN

Wo do you think put Koel in a coma?

LIONE

Phoenix. An outlaw and trained survivalist would be perfectly equipped to put someone in that state.

MAX

Aliza. My dad broke her trust after she warned him not to do so. She was off the rails after that.

ALIZA

Max. There's just too much pent-up rage over his dad. He's been going on about finding home and hunting down his dad since we met him.

PHOENIX

Lione. She has more experience of seeing this kind of thing than anyone. She'd know exactly how to do this *and* cover up her work.

KIM

You, Nova. Sometimes I've wondered if you're truly the protective type, ever since the Nexus. You have a criminal past, too, with connections to Koel.

OR IF PLAYER HAS ACQUIRED VARSH

KIM (CONT'D)

Varsh. His obsession to chronicle everything is suspicious, like he's plotting something all the time, and his enthusiasm is one of the few things that have genuinely scared me. I don't scare easily.

[VARSH]

Nova. Why are you such an enigma?!

AND/OR

MAIN

I think we're done, for now.

AFTER QUESTIONS OPTIONS:

PLAYER resumes control. The outcome of who caused KOEL's coma will differ on every playthrough, and will be randomised, with PLAYER's alignment playing a contributing factor in who the culprit is. It will always be one of the six crew members, VARSH discluded. PLAYER can now search for clues.

If MAIN (NOVA) is the culprit:

1: Datapad found on KOEL, with words "The one with the second place hair is out for me..."

ITAMI

Koel never had a datapad. Must be the culprit's, or stolen from Milk Graveyard's security hut on plate three.

2: Milk Graveyard's missing datapad point has force applied.

MAIN

Hmm... looks like force has been applied to remove the datapad. Force from a strong hand.
(MORE)

MAIN (CONT'D)

Looks like the pad controlled the security, here. If I can find the camera recordings before the pad was disconnected, I may be onto something. Looks like the wires lead down to the lower tunnels. If I follow them, they'll take me to the archive recordings of the footage... And the culprit!

3: Camera recordings found in archives, but fuzzy.

MAIN (CONT'D)

The image is fuzzy. But one thing's clear - the culprit had a metal hand!

If LIONE is the culprit:

1: No evidence found on KOEL.

ITAMI

I found no evidence. Someone must know how to hide their tracks. Maybe the camera archives have something? They're in the floor one tunnels, right at the back.

2: The camera archives show camera info for outside shrine.

MAIN

The best camera is outside the shrine. I can make out someone entering, but it looks fuzzy. Their hair is clear, though, and bright. Maybe it's worth checking the bar, for any witnesses of who left to go to the shrine?

3: Bar reveals witness in ITAMI.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Itami, did you see anyone leave early, last night?

ITAMI

Yeah, I thought she left to throw up, but... maybe not. I don't know her name, but as she left, she said "Alcohol is a perfect solvent: It dissolves marriages, families and careers." I don't know what that means, though.

MAIN

You've been invaluable, Itami.

If MAX is the culprit:

1: Dagger found on KOEL.

ITAMI

It has blunt edges, but its handle is weighty. Koel used to use ones similar, but this isn't his. Maybe it's worth checking the equipment store on plate two? Someone could have bought it from there to use on Koel?

2: Equipment store sign reveals store was shut last night.

MAIN

Whoever used that dagger didn't buy it from here, not when the store was closed last night. That means the culprit already had the dagger... and used its handle to knock out Koel. I doubt it was a sudden decision, though. They probably deliberated on it. Maybe it's best to search some of the hang-out spots, like that underground park on plate three?

3: Underground park reveals a bandage by the pond.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Whoever this bandage belonged to, came here to think about what they were going to do, next.

If ALIZA is the culprit:

1: Black (scarf) material found on KOEL.

ITAMI

That black material looks like it's made from material not from this planet. Reminds me of wool, like my old security blanket from Yarth! Maybe it's worth seeing if they lost any more material around the plates of Krakpoll?

2: Book found one plate three behind store.

MAIN

What's this? "Unconsciousness and how to render it"?! Looks like the culprit threw this away after reading it.

(MORE)

MAIN (CONT'D)

Time to check the Krakpoll book store for witnesses of who took this.

3: Poster of description of book thief in book store.

MAIN (CONT'D)

"Have you seen this book thief? Messy hair, deep voice and threatening arrows? Caught on camera breaking in last night."

If KIM is the culprit:

1: Strand of light hair found on KOEL.

ITAMI

It's a small hair. Could be anyone's. The real question is how the culprit knocked Koel into a coma? Maybe you should check if they used a weapon from the equipment store on plate two?

2: Equipment store manager confirms no knock-out weapons.

STORE MANAGER

We don't sell any weapons that merely knock anyone out. Only you lot have been in here since you arrived. Business has been slow.

MAIN

That means either the culprit had a weapon that did that, or they didn't need a physical weapon. They may have used other abilities. All right, I think it's time to check Monkey's Bar for who left early, last night.

3: Bar reveals witness in ITAMI.

ITAMI

Oh, you might want to know that one of your crew left early, last night. They'd had a lot of sugar and was practically bouncing off the walls, muttering "thumb" or something. I hope that helps.

If PHOENIX is the culprit:

1: Drops of oil found on KOEL.

ITAMI (CONT'D)

Yeah, oil. The only area with any oil on Canary is near the Krakpoll entrance, on the surface. You may want to check that out, Nova.

2: Several light hairs found on frozen oil reserves.

MAIN

The oil reserves are frozen, but there's several light hairs, so someone's definitely been here. If they needed oil and couldn't get it here, that means they sourced it elsewhere for whatever weapon they used on Koel. The only other place I can think of checking is the synthesiser at the Krakpoll forge.

3: Synthesiser info.

SYNTHESISER

Yo, I heard you were looking for clues. Late, last night, a guy with shining eyes pestered me to sell him oil outside of synth hours.

AFTER ALL EVIDENCE HAS BEEN SEARCHED:

ITAMI

I-I found one last piece of evidence for you. It may help. One of your crew is called Lione Burgess, I think.

MAIN

Do you mean the grave back in Silverfrost, on the surface? We found that, earlier.

ITAMI

I sometimes visit it and think to myself when times are hard. I've always wondered who she was, until now. But when I went there a moment ago, the snow and soil had been dug up! There's... something else there, now. Please come and see.

MAIN

I'd best gather everyone at an ATM and head to Silverfrost.

PLAYER resumes control. Everyone is now absent from the shrine, should PLAYER wish to add them to their party via ATM save points. Story continues when they reach the tomb stone back on SILVERFROST, on the planet's surface.

ITAMI

See? The ground's dug up! They could have hidden something in there.

ALIZA

Something that was there before this morning. A weapon used against Koel? Hopefully not... the Genesis Grenade.

PHOENIX

I think we'd all know if the Genesis Grenade was used on Koel. The explosion would've, you know, ripped the flesh from our bones.

MAX

I need to know. Is this grave yours, Lione? Or is this some relative? Were you named after your mum? Is this her grave? Is that it?

LIONE

No. My mum passed away when I couldn't remember her blood type. As she died, she kept insisting for me to "be positive," but it's hard without her.

MAX

...Really?

LIONE

Look, there are some things best left alone. Let's just head to Ben and report Koel's culprit, before-

MAX

Wait, someone's melted the snow around the tomb stone. I can read more than before. "Here lies Lione Burgess; a hated mother to *Ben War*."

MAIN

Ben's your son?! Lione, you didn't tell me you had kids!

PHOENIX

Does this mean you bow-chicka-wow-wowed with that Warden guy you all keep talking about?!

KIM

What's a bow-chicka-wow-wow?

MAX

Something to learn when you're older, Kim. Anyway, Ben said he was adopted by the Warden, didn't he?

KIM

Someone approaches. I can feel him...

MAIN

Hide!

Everyone hides behind some of the tomb stone and surrounding area. BEN approaches and looks at LIONE's tomb stone.

BEN

Mother. Today, you showed up with Nova. You did what you do best. You left me. I hate you. I came just to let you know that. I hate you with all my passion. Dad told me something, the other day. He said the more I visit your false grave, the more I cling to a false mother. He's right. But... I can't stop visiting. You're the only mother I ever had. And I can never forgive you for what you did to me. Good night. It hasn't been pleasant.

BEN walks off. LIONE slowly walks out from behind the tomb stone.

MAIN

Wanna tell me what the hell is going on? That was your son.

LIONE

I-I'm not sure I can. I don't want to burden you all with my history.

KIM

Please, Lione. If there's anything we've learnt since coming to Canary, it's that family is important.

LIONE

Oh, Kim. I forgot about you and Tom, too. Y-you're right. And Ben only found out I was still alive at the tree shrine, too. It must have been so shocking for him. He hates me! Oh, nevermind! This is my burden to bare! I-I don't... know... what to do...

PHOENIX

Easy, girl, just take it easy. If you bottle all this stuff up all the time, you'll eventually explode. Just gently let it all out... and tell us how this story began.

There is a flashback sequence showing the events of LIONE's past. No dialogue. It shows LIONE standing on the side of the road, at night. A vehicle pulls up next to her and she gets in. It drives off screen. The scene fades out and switches to LIONE giving birth. Scene fades out and switches to her exhaustively running away from some thugs with a young BEN. They catch up with her and beat her up, taking a reluctant BEN away from her. LIONE is heartbroken. Scene shifts back to modern day.

LIONE

They were hard times. I was young and homeless, s-selling my "services" for Chronoss to live, back on Delfa. The planet was always at war with Kernow-Theeta, and it financially crippled Delfa and many of its businesses. Every Chronoss went on the war. Poor folks like my family never stood a chance, and being too young to be drafted in... Meant my lifestyle was all I had. When I got pregnant, I knew I couldn't keep him... and I didn't even have the Chronoss to get rid of him.

MAIN

So he must've been taken to an orphanage. Probably one off-planet. Probably one that used to be here, on Canary. I see.

OPTIONS:

MAIN (CONT'D)

I'm sorry, Lione. You're a far stronger person than I ever gave you credit for.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

And you judged me for my shady history. You're just like me!

AFTER OPTIONS:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Everyone has a dark past we have to move beyond. Only by doing that will we change the future.

[VARSH]

If I were you, Lione, I'd approach Ben and do some catching up.

[MAX]

Don't complicate things. It's not easy to forgive a parent for that kind of situation.

MAIN

This... changes nothing. You're still Lione and we're still part of the same team.

LIONE

Thank you, Nova. B-but this isn't something I can forget so easily. There's also the matter of what was in that grave. Did Ben do this?

ITAMI

I don't know, but at least I know you really are the Lione Burgess on the tomb stone. He must have made this grave for preservation sake.

LIONE

Preservation... Protecting the future is what the GP should all be about. Ben's become twisted, thanks to Cyrril. I worry about him. Him knowing that I'm alive will screw him up even more.

MAIN

We can't do a lot about it right now. We have to meet up with him, anyway. We should present my findings to the Nekissa in the Krakpoll town hall. Let's leave this nightmare behind.

Story continues once PLAYER at TOWN HALL. BEN is present. It's important the PLAYER selects the correct answer in this CONCLUSION SCENE based on their findings, in order to acquire some decent HUDOKAI and other goodies before the story continues.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Thus, based on the evidence I've found, the culprit is...

The right answer is dependent on the clues, of course, but PLAYER will still have to select which character they think did it based on the evidence.

OPTIONS:

MAIN (CONT'D)
Lione Burgess.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Max Judge.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Aliza Legion.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Phoenix Fox.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Kim Silver.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
...Myself. I did it.

AFTER OPTIONS:

BEN
I know. I had to stir the truth of
its hiding place. And it worked.

LIONE
So you knew all along, Ben? That's
just like you, wanting Nova to find
the truth out and cause us
emotional distress. Like your
father.

ITAMI
But why do it? Koel is our saviour.

MAIN
The same reason as we discussed
earlier. We all had a motive, after
all. I guess that rage just built
up before any intelligent thought
took over. Otherwise we'd have the
location of the Genesis Grenade by
now. Ben, too, no doubt.

BEN

The fate of everything rests with that grenade. It belongs to the Galactic Preservation.

GP VIGILANTE

Sir! We have now taken Koel aboard the Canaring space station to stabilise his condition! We'll have the Genesis Grenade's location once he awakens.

ITAMI

You can't take Koel! We need him!

GP VIGILANTE

We're your masters, now. We need you to mine the place for Nethyrial minerals. Maybe you can find the Genesis Grenade as you mine, hm?

MAIN

So that's how it is, then? You think these Nekissa are beneath you? If you care about grabbing minerals to make a second grenade, or even the Genesis Grenade itself, why don't you lot mine for it?! You're nothing but a bunch of cowards! So what if we put Koel in a coma? The GP's own criminal record is far worse!

ITAMI

Its f-fine! Koel may have helped, but we Nekissa can think for ourselves! And we have a plan that will turn your smug face upside down! Just you wait.

GP VIGILANTE

I doubt you can do much without these guys are your trump card. Doesn't matter. You've already confessed to this crime... and all the others you've committed since the void.

LIONE

So, what? You're now going to arrest all of us?! If you think we'll 'come a gutser to your squad, think again, Ben!

BEN

Lione Burgess...

LIONE

Don't "Lione Burgess" me! Do you hate me *that* much that you can't even bring yourself to acknowledge I'm your mother?

BEN

Because you left me! You put me in that horrible orphanage. I was abused. For years, I thought no one wanted me. My opinion of myself was rock bottom. Then Cyrril, dad, showed up. He had business with the orphanage owner. He saw me for what I was - a boy turned man at an early age.

LIONE

No, he saw your innate Hudokai powers... and then he took you to the GP. You became Captain of the Vigilante division. You've done so well, Ben...

KIM

He is like me. He has been experimented on. That's why I've felt his presence so strongly.

GP VIGILANTE

Like it or not, our Vigilante Division surrounds the building. You *will* be coming with us.

PHOENIX

Outnumbered and outgunned, huh? Well, *like it or not*, we'll be fighting to keep our freedom! It doesn't matter who attacked Koel in the end, or how much we don't know about one another in our rag-tag group. When it comes down to it, we'll be fighting side by side against you creeps. Battle's what bonds us, not some bad karaoke!

LIONE

No! Ben's my burden as Koel is Max's! If we're going to do this... then arrest me and me alone, Ben. I defected and plotted treason against V.Len, right? You seek revenge. You have even more reason to arrest me over this lot. This doesn't concern any of the others!

OPTIONS:

MAIN

When we left the Void, together, we became a team. You've guided me through my darkness and out into the open. But now it's my turn. This is every bit my concern!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You're right. But as we're together in our mission and as Ben is currently our enemy, I say drop all concerns of the past and deal with the present.

AFTER OPTIONS:

BEN

You won't last long before they take you away, mother. Then you'll know how I felt.

LIONE

...

BOSS FIGHT: BEN and GP VIGILANTE SOLDIERS.

In-battle dialogue:

[VARSH]

It doesn't feel right hitting this kid... or any kid.

MAIN

He's absorbing our Hudokai attacks! How-?

BEN

I was born with latent Hudokai ability... Dad offered me to the Gear project. It was to draw out its power. Experimented on, like the Shi... and now Captain in the GP.

LIONE

You were born like Greg was...

BEN

The orphanage kids thought me a monster. I can now absorb Hudokai attacks... and use them against you!

Fight continues. Towards the end of the fight:

BEN (CONT'D)
...And now to end this.

BEN uses an attack which reduces everyone to 1 health. The fight ends. The warden, CYRRIL, comes up from behind the PLAYER, trapping them between him and BEN.

CYRRIL
Well done, my son. We have the place surrounded.

LIONE
C-Cyrril! Ungh...

CYRRIL
Yes, after you foolishly damaged my ship, I made for this planet instead of the council. Who knew I would see your filthy hides in my path again, so soon?

ITAMI
(Gasping)
Even the higher ups have been led to Krakpoll!

BEN
They are to be arrested. Then the court.

GP VIGILANTE
Leave the Nekissa. They haven't done anything.

CYRRIL
Why let the court decide their fate? Nova is a class A wanted criminal. He is to be executed!

BEN
The court will decide that... for the others, at least.

MAIN
I... can... barely breathe... Wait for us, Itami... we're not the bad... guys...

ITAMI
...

BEN
Squad. Arrest them all.

SCENE fades to black as everyone is arrested and taken to the Canaring. PLAYER can SAVE THE GAME at this intermission.

SCENE fades in as everyone is marched down an elaborate aisle and into a court room to be put on trial. NOVA is taken up for questioning, first. One of the many MATTs, that exist, is their defendant. The judge is a grumpy man in a loose shirt and with pointy ears, almost resembling an elf-esque race. STEVE. Dialogue will be much the same as the BWP script.

STEVE

Order! The court is now in session.
If any of you utter anything when
you are not being addressed, you're
gonna hear from one might fluffed
off Judge Steve.

Nova, you have been accused of
treason against the Reality
Council, who govern the three
galaxies. Listening in to this
trial are twelve residents of the
three galaxies, from the inner-most
solar systems. It would have been
four solar systems, except you
eradicated the fourth with a stolen
Genesis Grenade. Once they have
listened to all the evidence, the
jury will need to come to a
unanimous decision in whether you
are guilty, innocent, or somewhere
in-between. I will then announce
the final decision to determine
your fate.

Lione Burgess, Aliza Legion, Max
Judge and Phoenix Fox, you have all
been accused of aiding this class A
criminal and will be put to trial
to determine this and your
sentence. Kim Silver is too young
for sentencing, and will remain in
a prison cell overnight, following
this court session.

MR. PROSECUTOR

I, the Prosecutor, am ready.

MATT TANGERINE

I, Matt Tangerine, defending Nova
and his crew, am also ready, your
honour.

JURY MEMBER

We, of the jury, are also ready.

STEVE

Let's start by calling Mr. Nova to
the front, shall we?

MR. PROSECUTOR

Mr. Nova, is it not true that you and your "friends" were planning an attack on the Reality Council?

OPTIONS:

MAIN

No. We're after V.Len. The Reality Council is not our target. V.Len plans to obtain an explosive grenade and open a portal to the void between dimensions.

MR. PROSECUTOR

What a far-fetched tale. But you confirmed you were after V.Len - the Reality Council's head. So, by default, you were after the council.

OR

MAIN

Yes. But only because it's corrupt. V.Len, the head, runs the "Cult of Kai" with other world leaders. Not all of the leaders are cult members, but many are with V.Len to alter the three galaxies as we know them!

MR. PROSECUTOR

So you admit it. Thank you.

OR

MAIN

No. We're after the cult.

MR. PROSECUTOR

The cult?

MAIN

V.Len set up a group called "The Cult of Kai" who plan to use the rare mineral "Hudokai" in conjunction with an explosive "Genesis Grenade". By doing that, lots of people will die!

MR. PROSECUTOR

I don't believe V.Len is after death, Mr. Nova. Only life and unity.

AFTER OPTIONS

MR. PROSECUTOR (CONT'D)
 What did you plan to do, once you
 reached V.Len? Kill him in cold
 blood?

OPTIONS:

MAIN
Stop V.Len. It's more important to
stop him from achieving his goal,
than killing him. That would only
cause more unnecessary blood to be
spilt.

MR. PROSECUTOR
Stop him, how?

MAIN
Talking, Stasis Hudokai, I don't
know! I never thought that far
ahead.

MR. PROSECUTOR
I see. So anything could have
happened.

OR

MAIN
He had to be stopped. If that meant
killing him, then so be it. V.Len
would have reshaped the galaxies as
we know them! No one from the Cult
of Kai has had "just" reasons for
doing what they've been doing.

MR. PROSECUTOR
So you would have murdered V.Len.

MAIN
It's justified if it means saving
millions more.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
 There are other cult members. I
 would have talked them down or
 halted the pieces needed in their
 plans. Death isn't the answer. If I
 stopped the other members, V.Len
 would not have been able to do what
 he wanted, on his own. I would have
 stopped V.Len By default.

MR. PROSECUTOR

A man needs companions to succeed
in huge ambitions. Shame you
failed.

AFTER OPTIONS

MR. PROSECUTOR (CONT'D)

I believe the accused's actions are
clear to everyone.

STEVE

Members of the jury, you will now
start your deliberation. Is Mr.
Nova guilty of his actions, or
innocent? You must all reach the
same decision. Now, hurry up and
discuss the matter!

Depending on how the PLAYER answered, will determine one of
three outcomes, IMMEDIATE EXECUTION - GAME OVER, Execution
tomorrow, or a second trial due tomorrow.

The JURY MEMBERS will leave the room, for a moment.

STEVE (CONT'D)

Whilst we wait, I have an update on
your most recent situation. Koel
has been stabilised, and will
therefore live. Count yourselves
lucky. He's here on this very
Canaring space station. Once he
awakens from his coma, he will also
be brought into this court for his
crimes.

The JURY MEMBERS return.

JURY MEMBER

We have come to our decision.

STEVE

Your fate has been decided, Mr.
Nova. As my gavel comes down, know
that the evidence is conclusive.

RESULTS:

JURY MEMBER

*Nova is guilty of all crimes! He is
a dangerous and deceptive rogue.*

STEVE

You will be immediately executed.

GAME OVER.

OR

JURY MEMBER

Nova is guilty of attacks against various members of the council. The jury have deemed him a changed man from his genocidal past, however.

STEVE

You will face execution tomorrow. Enjoy your last day alive... in a Canaring prison cell.

OR

JURY MEMBER

Nova is... innocent of crimes against V.Len. The Cult of Kai claim seems truthful and should be investigated. That is our verdict.

STEVE

There is nothing immediate against your testimony. A second trial will take place tomorrow to determine your fate. In the meantime, you'll be held in Canaring jail.

AFTER RESULTS:

MR. PROSECUTOR

As for the fate of the accomplices, I'd like to call witness Penny Greyback to the front.

PENNY GREYBACK does so.

STEVE

Thanks for coming, yadda, yadda, et cetera. Get on with your testimony.

PENNY

That blasted Phoenix Fox, yes yes, Fox and crew, they burst into my lab on Duskwight, in the capitol city! They thought me, as in I, as in Penny Greyback, chief scientist of survival, was a member of this "Cult of Kai" and proceeded with violence!

MATT TANGERINE

Objection, your honour. I have video evidence from the lab's cameras. It may be fuzzy and without audio, but it clearly shows Penny attacking the crew before any further violence occurs. Penny is the malicious one in the video.

MR. PROSECUTOR

Objection. Without audio, there is no evident means of hearing if Nova provoked Greyback.

STEVE

Psh, this witness isn't getting us anywhere. Be gone from my sight. Let's get Lione Burgess up here and ask what happened before I die of boredom.

PENNY leaves and LIONE is brought up to the front.

MATT TANGERINE

Why were you there on Duskwight, at the Capitarl lab? Was it to help stop the large explosion that occurred just half an hour or so afterwards?

OPTIONS:

LIONE

Penny Greyback hosted an experiment to blow up the planet's crust. The explosion occurred from the impact with Hudokai beneath the planet's surface. That Hudokai is what the Cult of Kai want. With that kind of power, they will commit more than half a planet's worth of destruction.

MATT TANGERINE

So you were there to stop that.

OR

LIONE

Penny is part of the cult. The same cult that V.Len is a part of. With that nuke primed to blow, we had to take down Penny and stop the experiment. We were too late. The resulting scuffle is on that video.

MR. PROSECUTOR

Aha, so you do admit to attempting to take on the Cult of Kai, attacking Penny in the process. I rest my case.

AFTER OPTIONS

MATT TANGERINE

Let's try another question. Is it true, Miss Burgess, that Nova has reformed since he served his time from stealing two Genesis Grenades?

OPTIONS:

LIONE

Nova has changed. He once looked out for himself, the reports stated. He threw an experimental grenade into his own sun simply to save his own life from a virus. He wiped out his solar system. The Nova, today, would take that virus and seal himself away to make sure no one else died from it.

MATT TANGERINE

So he's a reformed man who saves lives. Thank you.

OR

LIONE

He's human. He kicks, he bites, he kicks up a fuss if things don't go his way, but in the end, he wants what we all want. He wants a life to live. He can't be guilty of that.

MR. PROSECUTOR

He can if he murdered millions just to save his own life, before. And now he plans to murder V.Len. He hasn't changed.

OR

LIONE

No. He's unhinged, but from being with Nova, I see why he does what he does. I've also been able to see how corrupt the Galactic Preservation are in their blame.

MATT TANGERINE

So it's the GP that have changed... and only for the worse? I see. So Nova hasn't changed, but then he had nothing bad to change from. Thank you, Miss Burgess.

AFTER OPTIONS

STEVE

I have one piece of evidence of assault and theft, at least, from Nova's crew. Whilst he couldn't be here for the trial, GP officer Cyrril War has provided this statement:

"Nova's scum of a crew brutally assaulted me, stealing my prison ship shortly after. One even... pile-drove me out of a window."

Whether that's true or not, it's a statement from an officer of the Galactic Preservation. So, jury, hurry up and deliberate, already.

The JURY MEMBERS leave the room.

STEVE (CONT'D)

I have more important news. My partner's pregnant and we're expecting a little Elefan back on Kernow-Theeta.

Everyone applauds. The JURY MEMBERS come back in.

JURY MEMBER

The jury has reached its unanimous decision. The crew members have been swept up with Nova's ideals, as evidenced by their attack against Warden Cyrril War. They are therefore somewhat guilty in criminal offences. That is our verdict.

STEVE

Lione Burgess has spoke for Nova's accomplices. They are to be sentenced to life in a Canaring prison. Have fun.

Court scene ends. Fade to black. Everyone is in different cells - a drab, dreary prison section on the space ring - Canaring.

MAIN

We don't know why we're here. Prison walls... lazer bars... my life a crime for-

BLAKE

That isn't funny, Nova.

OPTIONS:

MAIN
Shut up, Aliza.

BLAKE
Shut up, Nova. It's Blake.

OR

MAIN
Sorry, Aliza.

BLAKE
It's Blake, actually.

OR

MAIN
Sorry, Blake.

BLAKE
Don't worry about it.

AFTER OPTIONS

BLAKE (CONT'D)
And yeah, whilst we're at it, *well*
done. Now we'll *never* reunite with
Razz.

A GP GUARD enters and launches someone into PLAYER's cell.

GP GUARD
Get back to your cell. Parole's
over.

The GP GUARD closes the cell door and leaves.

TOM
Just when you think you can't lift
the pickaxe anymore, they make you
mine for another four hours...

MAIN
No way, you're-

KIM
Tom!

TOM
Kim?! What are you doing here?
And... Pug?!

OPTIONS:

MAIN
*Say that again and I'll break your
neck.*

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

It's Nova.

AFTER OPTIONS

TOM

Sorry. Nova, was it?

MAIN

I'm due for execution tomorrow...

TOM

Are you all right?

PHOENIX

Do we look all right, to you? I've got a severe case of the grumpies. That's what being condemned does to you... whoever you are.

ALIZA

This is Tom Silver. We met him on planet Tri-Alpha, and he's Kim's guardian, of sorts. Her Protector. The last we saw of him, he was protecting the planet from Adho.

KIM

Tom, I missed you so much! I thought... you were gone...

TOM

Kim... you're so emotional... like a real girl...

KIM

You're just as happy. I can feel it.

TOM

Yes... we're mentally connected, emotionally. I can tell you've learnt so much from travelling... I'm proud of you, Kim.

KIM

Duncan was right, I feel... stronger, now that we're reunited, Tom. My energy is rising, it's flowing through me! Tom, I'm evolving!

KIM explodes in a flash of light, forcing everyone against the back walls of their own cells. When the light clears, KIM has crystal-styled wings on her back.

ALIZA

Don't make me jump, like that!

MAX

Fluuuuuuuffing hell! Is Kim some kind of pocket monster?

KIM

I... I think I've evolved into the final form of a Gear... by being with Tom, I've achieved my final evolution! Look, Tom, I even have crystal wings! I wonder what they taste like?... I don't think I can hold this form, though...

PHOENIX

Why is your first question about what your wings taste like? I'm sure they taste delicious, like chippen wings, but come on, some perspective, Kim!

LIONE

Galaxy Fried Chippen...

PHOENIX

Aaaaaaand we've lost her. Again.

KIM

I can temporarily transform in battle. With my powered up skills, I can protect you all! It's my turn to look after you.

Nova's been looking after me, all this time, after all! Now, watch *this!*

KIM unleashes a massive blast of refractive air, warping the lazer bars - her new Overdrive in her Krystal Forme.

PHOENIX

Now *that* is an explosion! We're free! Kid, you've just solved all our problems.

KIM

Can we have some Galaxy Fried Chippen, now?

PHOENIX

Well, *almost* all of them.

As everyone exits there cells, warning sirens begin to blare. Then, before they can do anything more, Judge STEVE arrives.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

Hey, thanks for sentencing me to death, you fluff.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Come to blame us for the sirens?

AFTER OPTIONS

TOM

Who are you?

STEVE

Steve T'ordraggen. I came to aid in your escape, but it looks like you're well ahead of me.

MAIN

You expect me to believe that? Why would you want us to break out if you've already sentenced us?

STEVE

There isn't time to explain, right now! Look, we're in Sector D of the Canaring. As I understand it, you explored the since abandoned Sectors A and B. Sector D is where the cells for condemned prisoners reside. There's a reason I sentenced you here. Sector C is the medical section, where Koel is.

MAX

That's a lot of explaining scock for someone in a hurry.

STEVE

Shut up! Just find Koel before the GP finds you. East of here. Go.

MAIN

All right, it's time to break loose!

STEVE

I'll come with you and explain stuff later.

PHOENIX

Yay. Stuff. My second favourite thing.

STORY continues once PLAYER locates KOEL at the medical section of SECTOR C. KOEL is in a hospital style bed, hooked up to a machine, and in a deep comatose sleep.

ALIZA

Now what? Are we just going to roll his bed out, equipment still attached? He's still in a coma.

MAX

Dad. Wake up. Wake up, now.

PHOENIX

(Sarcastically)

Oh, look, that's done the trick - he's now awake! Great job, Max.

ALIZA

Sarcasm is the lowest form of wit... but the highest form of intelligence. So says Oscar Wilde, anyway. Now why don't you use that intelligence to figure out a plan, Phoenix?

PHOENIX

How's this for a plan, then? We use Kim's new Final Form Blowwy Uppy powers to jump-start Koel back to the land of the consciousness.

ALIZA

Brilliant, but with two minor flaws.

PHOENIX

Go on.

ALIZA

One; comas don't work like that, and two; *comas don't work like that*. I thought it was such an important minor flaw, that it was worth mentioning twice.

MAX heads to the bed, unsure what to do.

MAX

(Emotional)

I don't know if I just want to take him away from this madness, or pull the plug. Right now, should I be his son, or should I be a Death Bringer?

STEVE

If we don't step up the pace, they'll catch you. Me, included!

LIONE

What? Because you decisively helped us escape? Why put your neck in gallows after judging us so?

STEVE

...You want to take down V.Len. How could you possibly be condemned for *that*?

PHOENIX

What do you mean? V.Len's The head of the Reality Council... and the Cult of Kai. We're condemned because he's in a position of power.

STEVE

He's also the head of planet Canary, and neglectful of what few inhabitants remain there. It's no secret he's a terrible leader, and I suspect your claim regarding his leadership of the Cult of Kai being true. After all, that would explain why he's positioned this Canaring around planet Canary, as well as why he, a well-known scientist, decided to go into politics.

ALIZA

V.Len's a Canarian? I guess that makes sense. He must've been popular to rise to power, though.

STEVE

The previous planetary leader was mysteriously found poisoned in his mansion. The proceeding investigation was over-shadowed by the swift re-election campaign, where V.Len won by a landslide. Not that there were many to vote him in, in the first place, not after all those Canarians disappeared. It was weird, like it was planned. Then, the investigation went silent, once V.Len took over. It's clear, to me, he's a corrupt leader leading a corrupt policing force.

MAX

Wait, what do you mean "disappeared". I thought the Canarians all left the planet?

STEVE

They never made it that far. They just... disappeared, seemingly overnight. It's one of the most mysterious and unsolved cases in Reality Council history.

MAX

Now that you mention it, surely we'd have come across Canarians by now? They have dark powers, like me, and distinct arms. J-just where did they go?!

KOEL

I-I can answer that.

MAX

Dad! You're awake! Thank fluff.

PHOENIX

Aww man, so I guess no explosions were needed after all? What a bummer.

KOEL

I-I could feel the darkness come for me as I lay somewhere between life and death, stuck in my own personal purgatory. It showed me m-my past and all t-the horrible acts I'd done. My life stuck on repeat, playing out before me, and i-it sickened me.

MAX

Yeah, I bet.

KOEL

I-it's time I came c-clean.

Everyone does so, and surrounds KOEL's bed.

KOEL (CONT'D)

I-It's about the Nethyrial minerals. For years, us Canarians wondered why we were the only planet with it. It was a m-mysterious source of energy, and a key ingredient to the Genesis Grenade's creation. Then, one day, I found out.

MAX

I thought this was you coming clean? Or is that a lie, too?

KOEL

No. 'Cause it's not just all your lives I've screwed up, but all the lives of the Canarians, too.

MAX

Koel... dad. Did... did you...? Are you saying you killed all those Canarians?

KOEL

...

MAX

Speak to me, damnit! *Did you kill all those Canarians?!*

KOEL

Brave smile, Brarn. Brave smile.

MAX

Fluffing answer me! How did you do it? *Why* did you do it? Fame? Glory? Or is it just one more crime lost in a sea of never-ending scock by the Phantom Shawk?

KOEL

You're so damn emotional. Look, I... I didn't know it was going to happen. I saw what the GP were doing, turning us Canarians into slaves, mining the Nethyrial with our dark powers, and I thought it was wrong. We didn't fight back, we just... escaped. We left the Nekissa... bloody prejudiced ssocks we all were.

ALIZA

So that's what Itami meant, when we first met.

KOEL

Yeah, and also why I won't use them test chamber pieces of scock. The ones that transport you through time. 'Cause, you see, that's where we escaped to. We escaped back in the planet's history. Weird, right? We didn't count on the mass load of Scentours in the far past, though. We hid far underground, in Scentour territory, mostly for their meat. At least, that's how I reasoned it as. But them Scentours of the past... far more aggressive than today's lot.

(MORE)

KOEL (CONT'D)

Heidi, Jian, Lloyd and I all went out to go Scentour hunting one night, but our attack wasn't coordinated enough. It caused the strong and strapping Scentour pack to rampage towards our new little town. The other Canarians ran to the lower areas of the caves to escape, but it was for nawt... not when the Scentour's rampage caused a cave in. All them Canarians... Dead. Almost a whole race gone, overnight. Not that there were many of us to begin with.

MAX

Tsh...

KOEL

And so, in the present day, turns out Nethyrial came from the dead bodies of Canarians, their dark powers and life energy becoming the key ingredient for the Genesis Grenade. I have to live with that.

So now, do you see? The main reason I seek to protect Canary and the Genesis Grenade is because it's all my fault! I stick with the Nekissa to not just protect their kind and gain strength to fight the GP, but because I'm protecting the Canarians who've crystallised into Nethyrial minerals. That's how I'm repenting my actions, by protecting what remains of those I led to their death.

MAIN

So why tell us? Does it clear your conscience, Koel?

KOEL

'Cause, Nova, ol' buddy, ol' pal, the last time I used them time travel do-hickeys, was to hide the Genesis Grenade... in the far-flung past.

STEVE

Are you an idiot? You hid what is deemed "the most powerful weapon in creation" in *the past*?! Do you want to alter history by giving them something they didn't initially have?

ALIZA

Well, it's not like anyone knows where it is. If the did, I'd probably have read about it in one of Jozu's books, by now, back at the asylum. It's probably underground.

KOEL

It is.

MAX

This doesn't change the fact you're raising your own Nekissa army to do *your* fighting against the GP!

KOEL

They want to fight back. When the clocktower bell chimes three times across the caves of Canary, the Nekissa will ready their claws and fight back in revolution. It's my job to protect them and my people.

MAX

...

KOEL

Right, let's get out of here. Back to planet Canary. Then you can go back in time and find the Genesis Grenade whilst I organise the Nekissa to strike back, finally. Also, who the fluff is this Ele-van?

STEVE

What did you call me, you attention seeking scock?!

KOEL

Ele-van.

STEVE

It's *Steve*, and I'm an *Elefan*. Whatever! I'm here to help you escape. The trans-mat room is currently full of GP, so I'll be providing a distraction. When they're paying attention to me, you can trans-mat back down to the planet. V.Len needs to be dethroned, and an uprising like the one you're all a part of is the best course of action.

MAIN

All right, let's head to Sector B
trans-mat room and cause havoc!

PLAYER resumes control until they reach the trans-mat room,
as originally used to reach the planet surface. STEVE walks
in alone.

STEVE

Ahem. Ladies, gentlemen and
everyone in-between, the Sector A
Galaxy Fried Chippen has re-opened!

GP VIGILANTE

Oh man! About time!

STEVE

If you'd like to follow me, we can
delight in chippeny goodness!

STEVE leads the GP VIGILANTE out of the room in a stampede.

PHOENIX

Whoa, where do you think you're
going, Lione?

LIONE

But he said...

PHOENIX

That's his *distraction*. As if the
Sector A GFC would have re-opened!
It was in ruins when we passed it,
after we first landed here.

LIONE

(Disappointed)
Oh, well, yeah, I-I knew that.

KOEL

May be worth stealing a couple of
them trans-mat pads, actually. I'll
leave that to you, blue-suit guy.

TOM

It's Tom.

MAIN

Let's go to the planet.

PLAYER resumes control. Once they teleport down...

MAX

Back in toxic darkness. Just how I
like it. So, what now?

KOEL

Now, I'll go to the Nekissa. It's time. You go back to the past.

ALIZA

How far back do we go?

KOEL

Exactly 100 million years.

ALIZA

W-wwwwhaaaatt?!

KOEL

Stupid in hind-sight, I know. Once you're done, come see us. We could use your help. You lot ain't so bad in combat, after all.

MAX

Using us 'till the very end, huh?

KOEL

Brave smile, Brarn. Brave smile.

KOEL walks off towards the KRAKPOL entrance.

MAIN

Right, just gotta activate one of these chambers and hey presto, we're back 100 million years. When you're ready, everyone, let's go.

Once PLAYER activates one of the chambers, they'll be given a choice to travel to various periods of time already visited, on the planet, as well as the new option - 100 million years in the past.

MAIN (CONT'D)

From all the clues we have, the Genesis Grenade is deep underground. Let's find it!

PLAYER resumes control in this new world of lava, changed rock-faces and deep, dark caves. Many Scentour enemies will reside here. Eventually, the PLAYER will reach a tunnel with fallen rocks blocking its end.

ALIZA

This must be where Koel was talking about. Those poor Canarians...

EALA

(Muffled)

H-hello? Is someone out there?!

KIM

Hello? I didn't know rocks could talk! What's your name?

EALA

My name's Eala. Please, save us!

MAX rushes to the fallen rocks, looking for a way to get the Canarians out.

MAX

Are you deaf, Nova? Don't just stand there! Help me get them out!

OPTIONS:

MAIN

We can't. They're the future.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Nah, let's let them die.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

All right, let's save them!

AFTER OPTIONS

LIONE

Max. These Canarians are a part of the future, now. Their bodies become the Nethyrial minerals for the Genesis Grenade. I'm sorry, but...

MAX

Shut up!!! Don't tell me they "have to die"! Don't you *dare*! On the other side of this rubble is what remains of my race.

ALIZA

Don't you see, Max? If we rescue them now, the events won't play out as they should do in the future. It'd become a distorted mess. We won't even have the second Genesis Grenade to find, anymore, either.

MAX

...

EALA

(Muffled)

A-are you still there?

MAX

Yes.

EALA

(Muffled)

Thank goodness! We've been trapped down here for hours, now. Some have been crushed, but many of us still live! If you could do anything to help us get out, we'd be forever thankful!

MAX

Listen, Eala. My name's Max; a Death Bringer, a Canarian. I'm from your future. There, your death becomes an important part of history. For that reason, I... I must do my duty as a Death Bringer, a-and... leave you to die.

EALA

(Muffled)

B-but... you're Brarn, aren't you?

MAX

...

EALA

(Muffled)

I'd know your voice, anywhere. You probably don't remember me, but I was your mum's best friend, and she was mine.

You... you should hear this. She told me she didn't know what to do with you, torn between you and your dad. In the end, she chose to look after you as best she could.

MAX

You don't need to tell me that.

EALA

(Muffled)

I guess not. It's poetry, really. The kid I always babysat, when you were younger, has come to deliver me to my death. That's fine. I'd rather it Aife, herself, but her son is a reassuring substitute.

MAX

I'm sorry. The least I can do is spare you the pain of starvation and suffocation with my Death Bringer skills. It's a ranged ability. Goes through rocks.

EALA

(Muffled)

You want to put us to our deaths, yourself? Can you live with that?

MAX

I-I don't want to, but i-it's the most humane way, Eala.

EALA

(Muffled)

Then deliver us to our deaths, Brarn. I trust in you.

MAX

Brave smile, Eala... brave smile.

MAX uses his DEATH ability. There is the familiar sound of the DEATH skill beyond the rocks, and then all falls silent.

MAX (CONT'D)

...

LIONE

We can't help everyone, but everyone can help someone.

MAX

That's your best one-liner so far.

ALIZA

Let's carry on and keep heading down.

MAIN

Brave smile, Max. Brave smile.

PLAYER resumes control and can keep heading down to one last cavernous chamber, its walls lit by luminous substances. They pulse a warm green around them, the Genesis Grenade hovering in the centre of the cavern.

[VARSH]

Such a beautiful structure.

MAIN

The Genesis Grenade. The second one I stole from V.Len and the Reality Council. All this trouble for something so small. Was it worth what I did in the past?

(MORE)

MAIN (CONT'D)

I don't know. But this time I'll make sure my actions are worth it.

LIONE

Don't you hate it when someone answers their own questions? I do.

PHOENIX

Keep working on those one-liners and soon you'll be referred to as Li-One. Or something.

MAIN

Now we have what we came for, let's head back to Koel and the Nekissa.

SCENE fades to black as the PLAYER is transported back to KRAK POLL, and specifically, the Great Tree Peachy shrine.

ITAMI

Us in Krakpoll are the forefront of a revolution. We will ring the old clocktower bell and signal out the start of our fight against the GP!

The clocktower, above the KRAK POLL town hall rings out.

KOEL

Nekissa! The time has come! On this holy eve of Cantide, which occurs only once every 100 years, the Great Tree Peachy will absorb the nutrients from the soil and produce the Fruit of Life! This fruit will be what provides you the strength to fight back against the Galactic Preservation - your oppressors!

ITAMI

Yaaaaaaay! Koel! We will smash those GP and win our freedom!

ALIZA

So *that's* why Koel wanted us to restore that tree. Without it, the Nekissa stood no chance of victory.

ITAMI

It's starting!

The Great Tree Peachy glows brightly as its roots suck up immense balls of light from the ground. With an ethereal burst of energy, fruit resembling tear-drops sprout from the branches.

KOEL

Now, eat the Fruit of Life!

The Nekissa do so, swarming over the fruit like excited kittens. They all begin to juicily munch on the fruit.

PHOENIX

Anyone would've thought it was cat nip or something. Look at them go!

Suddenly, the Nekissa begin to glow, before bulging into muscular cat-like creatures, their claws long and their forms bulky.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

Eh... I'm sure there's a fetish for that out there, somewhere.

ITAMI

(Energetic)

Koel! I feel so strong, now! Like I've just woken up from a week's worth of naps! Hail the Great Tree Peachy!

KOEL

Holy fluff! It's like you've been on protein shakes and bench-pressed for a decade or something. I guess I shouldn't be too surprised. This energy would be potent, having been taken from the Nethyrial in the ground, after all.

KIM

It's a good thing we let those Canarians die!

MAX

...

KOEL

Your ships are ready, my Nekissa friends! Now we board them and take the fight to them on the Canaring!

ITAMI

Yeaaaaaaaaaaaaaaah!

KOEL

I trust you'll join us, Nova?

OPTIONS:

MAIN

Fluff off.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Sure thing, Koel!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We'll sit this one out.

AFTER OPTIONS

KOEL

Bahahaha, then I'll join you for a spell. Beat up some GP and that.

TOM

Good. He can replace me for a bit. I'm gonna head out back to Tri-Alpha and see what I can do to help against this "V.Len" guy. The more people who know, the better.

KIM

Tom? You're... leaving so soon?

TOM

Don't worry, Kim. I see you have everything under control. I'll be back soon, I promise. Here, take this.

KIM

What is it, Tom?

TOM

It's a spherical trans-mat. Nav-Tech developed it. It teleports people to another spherical trans-mat. I have the other one on me. For now, keep that with you. It will lead me straight back to you, later.

LIONE

Oh, so you followed Koel's advice and took some from the Canaring? If Kim has one, you could also swap locations with her if you ever wanted.

TOM

Yeah, but we won't be doing that. I know there are two more back on Tri-Alpha. They could be handy. Right, I'm gonna steal one of those small ships, out front.

PHOENIX

Won't the Nekissa need those to strike against the GP?

TOM

Yeah, and this is a matter of life
and shut the fluff up. See you all
soon!

TOM leaves, but mere seconds after he does, an explosion
erupts outside the shrine, in KRAKPOLL.

MAIN

What the fluff was that? Do you
think it was Tom?

PHOENIX

If you ask me, the expert on
explosions, I'd say... no. Let's
check it out.

PLAYER resumes control and can save before exiting the
shrine. When they exit back to the centre of KRAKPOLL, Warden
CYRRIL WAR and BEN WAR await them, BEN in tow.

CYRRIL

Koeru, you've evaded the Galactic
Preservation long enough!

KOEL

It's Koel and, yeah, I'll keep
evading you for as long as it
takes, Cyrril!

TOM

(Struggling)
Who are you?

KIM

Tom! D-did the GP get you?

BEN

Don't move. He wears an explosive
collar. You move, he dies.

ALIZA

A hostage situation? And what are
your terms for freeing Tom?

CYRRIL

I need Koeru to lead me to the
Genesis Grenade.

KOEL

At least get my name right...

CYRRIL

Well?

KOEL

Follow me. It's in the shrine.

CYRRIL

There's no time to waste! Ben, stay here and deal with these vile misfits. I'll head to the shrine and bring the Cult of Kai to our destiny!

KOEL leads CYRRIL down to the shrine. BEN blocks the path of the others from following. It doesn't take long for yelps to be heard from the shrine, however.

BEN

Dad?!

BEN rushes down to the shrine. PLAYER resumes control. STORY continues once they climb back down the shrine.

CYRRIL is surrounded by bulky Nekissa. He rushes to the Genesis Grenade at the base of the Great Tree Peachy, but ITAMI darts out and slashes him, sending him sprawling to the floor.

ITAMI

You want some more, you big bully?

CYRRIL

Pesky cat!

KOEL

You see, GP? The Nekissa have become strengthened by their sacred tree's fruit. They are well-equipped to fight back. So, what you gonna do, now?

CYRRIL

Win!

CYRRIL fires third level COMBUST HUDOKAI at the Great Tree Peachy, knocking off various fruit and setting the tree alight.

ITAMI

The tree! No! Our symbol of hope... and that warden's eating the fruit!

ALIZA

Darkness, no!

CYRRIL suddenly beefs up in an explosive wave of light, his already immense torso buffing up to extremes. His arms bulk out and he becomes almost feral in his wild visuals.

CYRRIL

Hahahahaha!

ITAMI

You won't get away with this!

ITAMI leaps at CYRRIL, only for him to blast her aside with powerful HUDOKAI. This time, it's effortless as she flies backwards and smashes into the shrine wall.

KOEL

ITA!!! You motherfluffing bastard!

CYRRIL

Silence!

CYRRIL shoots more COMBUST HUDOKAI at KOEL, who is detained by putting the fires out, on himself. CYRRIL then brushes aside those Nekissa that then decide to attack, him making his way to the Genesis Grenade.

MAIN

We have to do something! We can't
let the warden get a hold of the
Genesis Grenade!

With a wave of his hand, CYRRIL combusts the remaining fruit on both the tree and the ground, before turning his attention to the Genesis Grenade.

CYRRIL

At last, the hidden Genesis Grenade
will be mine. Once I head retrieve
that mini supernova waiting to
happen, everything will change.

KOEL

Brarn...! Help us!

MAX

...

KOEL

Brave smile, Brarn. Brave smile.

MAX

You got it, dad. Nova, the odds are
against us, but damnit I've come
this far and I've still got further
to go. Let's fight these bastards
with all we have... and put on a
brave smile.

LIONE

Ben, if you get in our way, I'm
going to have to use discipline.

MAIN

They're not going to back down, and
neither are we. Everyone ready?

BEN

You will never escape here alive.
Good night... mother.

BOSS FIGHT VS. FRUIT OF LIFE CYRRIL, BEN and TOM.

In-battle dialogue:

BEN (CONT'D)

Such a shame. Your friend will kill
you. Or will you kill your friend?
You will be condemned if you do.

TOM must not be KO'd or killed in the fight, otherwise it'll
be GAME OVER. PLAYER must keep curing him but attacking BEN
and CYRRIL to win the fight.

Further in-battle dialogue:

KIM

Tom! Attack Ben, not us!

BEN

(To TOM)

Attack me and I'll activate your
collar.

LIONE

Ben, you will stop this madness.

BEN

You will never command me.

LIONE

Please, Ben.

BEN

You may be my superior... you may
be my only mother... but you will
never be my family.

At the end of the fight:

BEN (CONT'D)

Playtime's over.

FIGHT ENDS.

ALIZA

Felt like you've had enough, yet?
Even the fruits' effects are
wearing off on you, Cyrril.

KOEL

The Fruit of Life is designed for
Nekissa bodies, and technically
Canarians. Not so great on anyone
else, at least, not for long.

CYRRIL

W-we've got to move!

CYRRIL begins to scarper.

ITAMI
Everyone, after him!

All the Nekissa chase Cyrril out of the shrine, leaving the crew, TOM, KOEL and BEN inside, still, the tree on fire.

KIM
We still have the Genesis Grenade!

BEN
Fight over it and you will perish.

LIONE
After all we've been through,
you've still chosen to be against
us? At least you've let Tom go...

TOM
...

BEN
The fate of everything rests with
that grenade. It belongs to the
Galactic Preservation. So... take
it, mother.

LIONE
Ben, you're... letting us go?

BEN
Take it and leave... Just this
once...

LIONE
Ben...

BEN
Don't make me regret my decision!

LIONE
Right.

PLAYERS obtain the Genesis Grenade, once more.

KOEL
Now that you've seen what we, and
the Nekissa can do, why don't you
leave here for good?

BEN
Agreed.

BEN turns and leaves the shrine. Just as he is about to climb out, he turns back and gives LIONE one last look. He then turns and disappears out of the entrance.

ALIZA

I take it the Nekissa will ravage the Canaring with their new-found strength?

KOEL

That's the idea. They'll rip apart any GP that remain up there, as well as the structural support. They'll then return, victorious. It's what they've always wanted.

KIM

Will they always be bulky cats?

KOEL

No, the effects of the fruit are temporary. It should last a full day and night cycle for the Nekissa.

ALIZA

What'll you do now, Koel? Roam the planet in your own wallowing?

KOEL

Fluff that. And don't think I'm joining you, neither. I ain't cut out to be a dad to Brarn.

MAX

Ain't that the truth.

KOEL

But I'll tell you what, fighting ain't such a bad idea. Steve had a damn good point when he said V.Len had left this planet to rot, and I think that's the next step. We fight V.Len in our own way, where we can. I'll find Steve at some point, maybe grab a couple of us left on this planet, and do good.

MAIN

Well, the more who fight, the better. Now that V.Len's going to be aware of us having the grenade, my guess is scock's gonna hit the fan. He won't let this go.

ALIZA

All the more reason Tom should be heading back to Tri-Alpha and alerting the others, as well as grabbing some trans-mat pads.

KIM

Tom, are you going to head back to Tri-Alpha, now?

TOM

Yeah.

KOEL

Trans-mat to the Canaring and take one of the Nekissa ships from there. You should probably do that too, Nova. At least before the Nekissa blow up the Canaring.

TOM

See you all soon!

KIM

I'll miss you, Tom.

MAX

And you, dad, Koel. You're a bit of a scock, but you did the right thing in protecting these Nekissa.

KOEL

Heh. Get going, kid, before this gets too sentimental.

MAIN

All right, we're off. When the time comes, we'll rendezvous to take on the Cult of Kai's head, V.Len!

TOM leaves. SCENE fades to black. MAIN (NOVA) et al return to the Canaring, which is now over-run with Nekissa. They reach the prison ship with the Genesis Grenade, and get ready to take off in the cock-pit.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Are you okay, Max? Still introspective?

LIONE

Wow, I'm impressed you know what that is, Nova. And here I was thinking I wasn't rubbing off on you.

MAIN

Eww, I don't want you rubbing off, *anyone*.

LIONE

(Embarrassed)

No, I... rubbing off on... it means... oh, nevermind!

PHOENIX

(Laughing)

Lione, you dog! The best thing to do is just go along with it. Ain't that right... Max?

MAX

Yeah. Follow what's in your heart and all that rubbish. And for me, home's not Canary. Home's... here. You're more family to me than Koel.

MAIN

Max, if there's any-

MAX

All's gravy.

KIM

What's gravy? Am I gravy?

MAX

It's an expression. All is good.

KIM

Oh, I see! Like Lione's expressions! Struth! I still have a lot to learn about the colloquialisms of language and the intonations that will escalate me to the echelons of living beings.

PHOENIX

The hell, Kim?

ALIZA

Jozu always said he'd let me try gravy, one day...

MAX

Look, as much as I wanna hear you all talk about gravy, I'm just not in the mood right now.

PHOENIX

You know, for what it's worth, it's not karaoke or fighting that helps us bond best, but emotional family problems. Don't you all feel closer than ever after Canary?

LIONE

Struth, Phoenix, it was like a roller-coaster ride of experiences.

PHOENIX

Such as what?

LIONE

Such as me realising I'm done with one-liners. I've discovered they're not my calling. I should leave that stuff to you, or maybe Max. It's okay, though - I have other things I'm better at. Like serving true justice against the Cult of Kai!

PHOENIX

And Ben.

LIONE

And... Ben.

PHOENIX

He came good in the end. That's proof enough that you're good at being a sympathetic mother after all, Lione.

LIONE

Thanks, Phoenix.

PHOENIX

Sure thing. Now, how's about one last one-liner for the road?

LIONE

Throwing acid is wrong, in some people's eyes.

PHOENIX

Beeeeeeeeeeautiful.

KIM

I feel sorry for Ben. He has been experimented into a Gear, like me.

ALIZA

Which must mean the Warden is his protector. That would explain some things.

LIONE

I wish I could protect Ben... and in the end, he protected us by letting us escape.

PHOENIX

Try not to dwell on it. Lesser men have crumpled under the agony of family politics. Let's focus on the cult.

MAIN

Where now?

If PLAYER hasn't yet visited planet Yin (TRANSCENDENCE ALLIANCE story), then:

LIONE

We've got the grenade, so now we've got to locate a cult member and start the take down of the cult.

MAX

Well, we already know where some are. But I guess they could have moved... they'd be ready if we returned.

KIM

Planet Yin is showing high levels of activity. It looks suspicious.

MAIN

To the north, eh? It's our only lead. Let's go!

If PLAYER has already visited and completed planet Yin, then the GALACTIC WAR story commences.

TRANSCENDENCE ALLIANCE (PLANET YIN, ARRA, THE TA)

CAMERA pans up from the concrete city streets, continuing up the side of a skyscraper, central frame. Dead of the night. The city skyline watches in the distance. Meanwhile, the mysterious VARSH speaks over the continued pan.

VARSH

I used to think that I understood life. I believed it was predictable. I've witnessed so many, born as a fiery blaze of infinite possibilities and then, all too quickly, reduced to cinders. All of them wandered aimlessly down that same road and every one reached the same conclusion, regardless - the one and only truth. How different would their lives have been if they knew what lay in store for them?

Knowledge is power; knowing something can change everything or give the beholder such potential, with which to reshape the very nature of the supposedly permanent... If they knew how to use it.

CAMERA reaches the top of the skyscraper. VARSH sits on L-shaped ventilation shafts, slightly obscured by the shadows. He is translucent in appearance, a ghostly figure.

VARSH (CONT'D)

My name is Varsh; I am a collector, an observer. I document that which many believe to be unimportant or of no value - the entirety of a person's existence. Every last moment.

But, it's wrong to assume you know everything. Despite how versed or educated you are, even going by how much careful attention you dedicate to the task, you can never know it all. Eventually you trip up, make a mistake and in most instances you'll probably regret it. I hate that.

The idea of not knowing scares me.

Equally, it doesn't pay to be too curious of matters that don't concern you, either.

(MORE)

VARSH (CONT'D)

What was that old saying?
 "Curiosity killed the cat". I know
 where that came from, by the way,
 it didn't always have that
 definition. It also has a rejoinder
 - "but, satisfaction brought it
 back".

A figure walks to the building's outer edge, old and sick of
 life. ARANOLD.

ARANOLD

I can't keep doing this, my life
 has no meaning, pointless. I've
 just wasted too much time. Nobody
 will care if I go, may as well end
 the suffering.

VARSH walks over to the edge, a little to ARANOLD's side. He
 makes notes.

ARANOLD (CONT'D)

Can I do it this time, or will fear
 prevent me once again...?

VARSH

I swear, Aranold, this is the sixth
 time you've come up here and each
 time you fail to make up your
 fluffing mind. Do you want to live
 or do you want to die? It's not
 difficult.

VARSH is no longer translucent, but opaque. Suddenly, ARANOLD
 appears to spot VARSH.

ARANOLD

W-who are you?!

VARSH

-! You can see me? You can hear
 me?!

ARANOLD

I-I say again! Who are you? W-why
 are you her-ah...

In his shock, ARANOLD loses his footing, falling to his
 death. VARSH jumps in shock.

VARSH

Oh, *SCOCK!* T-that isn't supposed to
 happen. Can I even record that?

(Beat. Panicking)

Elizabeth. *SHE'LL* know what to do.

A portal opens, like a doorway, and VARSH vanishes within.

The scene cuts to MAIN and the crew landing the PRISON SHIP in a river. It floats there briefly before the crew walk out, onto a sort of pier.

MAX

Great going. You've crashed the ship.

LIONE

I have not! Planet Yin welcomes crafts from space, but they must moor in the rivers around the city.

If Genesis Grenade not yet obtained:

ALIZA

We're after the Genesis Grenade and it could be anywhere... so where to first?

If it HAS been obtained:

ALIZA (CONT'D)

We're after any further leads on Cult of Kai members. They could be anywhere... so where to first?

After:

MAIN

Hmm, we need to find a lead on a hiding location, ask around and act on any rumour we hear. It's not much to go on, but it's a start.

KIM

I'm hungry...

MAIN

To be honest, so am I. It's been a while since we ate. Let's find a place to eat and drink, first, and ask around there on any info.

MAIN and crew walk off, leaving the camera to focus on a mysterious, translucent figure, watching them.

PLAYER resumes control. They can select a party and explore the city of towering obsidian looking buildings and high walkways above the concrete ground-level. Eventually, story continues when they find a bar, in the town-centre. V.LEN is outside, talking silently with EMPEROR PIKHAUL.

ALIZA

That's Emperor Pikhaul from the Reality Council, remember? What's V.Len doing here, talking with him?

If Genesis Grenade not yet obtained from BWP story:

MAIN

That's what I'm going to find out.
Change of plan, we're going to tail
V.Len. I bet he's here, looking for
the Genesis Grenade, too. He may
have a lead.

If Genesis Grenade HAS been obtained:

MAIN (CONT'D)

That's what I'm going to find out.
Change of plan, we're going to tail
V.Len. I bet he's here to meet with
another cult member. With any luck,
we can get two of them at once.

After:

MAX

There you go, being the big-shot
again. I'm guessing this guy is the
head of both the Reality Council
and the Cult of Kai? What if he
spots us, then what? We're fluffed.

MAIN

Not if we keep quiet, Max. Capeesh?

LIONE

At last, you finally understand the
meaning of that word.

MAIN

I think everyone capeeshes me.

LIONE

Maybe not. Let's just get going.

PIKHAUL leaves V.LEN and PLAYER resumes control, keeping to the shadows and following V.LEN. Every now and again, a translucent figure can be seen appearing and disappearing in the shadows, whilst PLAYER follows V.LEN around the town centre, making sure he isn't seen. Eventually, V.LEN goes into the bar. MAIN and the crew walk into the rowdy bar, following V.LEN. They see him descend a staircase at the end of the bar room and down through a basement door. Confused, MAIN turns to the others.

CHOICES:

MAIN

*We're leaving. There's no way we
can follow him down there and not
get caught or trapped. We'll keep
looking for what we need and bide
our time.*

If grenade not obtained:

MAIN (CONT'D)

There's a good chance the Genesis Grenade's on this planet if V.Len's here.

ALIZA

Not even V.Len knows where the grenade is hidden, remember? I think he's here on official business. He may be the leader of the Cult of Kai, but he's still also the leader of the Reality Council.

If it HAS been obtained:

MAIN

There's a good chance another cult member's on this planet if V.Len's here. We'll just have to wait.

ALIZA

I reckon V.Len's here on official business with the planet leader. He may be the leader of the Cult of Kai, but he's still also the leader of the Reality Council.

After:

KIM

I... feel... funny.

ALIZA

Are you okay, Kim?

KIM

A strange presence is down in that basement... I can sense it on my scanners. I don't feel good.

ALIZA

Then it's settled. We'll sneak down there and... one of you keeps an eye out to make sure no one follows us. We need to find out what's going on. Kim doesn't feel well and we know she can sense Hudokai and who else knows what, related to it. This is more than coincidence.

OR:

MAIN

We're going down there.

ALIZA

If we go down there, we'll need to
make sure no one follows us.
Anything could happen and we don't
want V.Len's cronies sneaking up on
us as we eavesdrop on their
conversation.

AFTER CHOICES:

PHOENIX

Nice thinking! I'll stay here and ensure that this, uh, liquor is "tactically useful" to us.

MAX

You gonna keep watch or are you just gonna drink? If anyone's gonna make sure Nova gets beaten up, it's me.

MAIN

Hang on a minute, you're jobs are to make sure we don't get attacked from behind.

PHOENIX

Yeah, yeah, we all get the picture, Nova, calm down. Come on Max, let's, uh, go analyse this bar... "tactically".

ALIZA

Now now, don't hold a grudge, Nova, we know Max just has a bit of friendly rivalry with you.

MAIN

Yeah, just as long as it doesn't get us killed! Anyway, let's head down there whilst the coast is clear.

PHOENIX and MAX head to the bar, apparently on "lookout", whilst MAIN, LIONE, ALIZA and KIM head down the basement stairs and through the door.

SCENARIOS; MAIN, PHOENIX AND ELZABETH. ONCE ALL SCENARIOS ARE PLAYED OUT, STORY CONTINUES.

SCENARIO #1 - MAIN AND CO. EAVESDROP V.LEN:

MAIN and co. enter a narrow corridor, full of pipes. It goes on for a while. At the end is a closed door with light seeping out of the window. They listen in.

KIM

(Whispering)

Look, a crack in the wall. We can listen clearly, and maybe watch them, too.

V.LEN is stood in a seemingly empty room, light shining all around him - the room is made of literal light. V.LEN steps back and a hologram appears of a cloaked figure. His face is showing, menacing. He appears to be old, yet young at the same time, wrinkles beneath his eyes, yet skin so young. GUY.

V.LEN

I see you are still afraid to exit your room of everlasting light.

GUY

The Shades of Rettam Krad will see me, otherwise. You know that. You also cannot enter the Transcendence Alliance without them knowing. We must meet here, where Rettam Krad has no eyes to penetrate the light

MAIN

(Whispering, to himself)

Rettam Krad?

V.LEN

Deep within my perspicacious intellect, like dark matter gravitating to form Hudokai, a magnificent plan has conglomerated.

GUY

Please, Viktor, you're so melodramatic. Have you come to seek my forbidden "knowledge"?

V.LEN

Do not call me by that name. I have discarded its vestiges to the winds of time. I look to my future.

MAIN

(Stifling laughter)

V.Len's first name is Viktor?

LIONE

It's no less inappropriate than Nova.

KIM

Or *Lione Burgess*. Your name sounds like Lion Burgers. Mmm... I wonder what lion burgers taste like?

ALIZA

You're obsessed with food Kim, for goodness sake, we'll eat later. Focus on the conversation - we may find out where the Genesis Grenade is hidden!

GUY

"Your future"? Your only future is the one I pull the strings of and I only see severed strings once we enter the void.

V.LEN

Never forget that I am the head of the Cult of Kai and you will obey me and me alone. Once we enter the void, I and Rettam Krad will emerge victorious...

GUY

Never put me below you, heathen. You living belong to me. My father need not be mentioned, do not speak of it. I am the superior being. My body is made of dark matter and filled with the energy of the cosmos, whereas Rettam Krad is simply dark matter alone. Just think, if my body was condensed dark matter, Hudokai, I would be more than the God I am now.

V.LEN

Your plan is to replace your body with Hudokai? A feeble scheme.

GUY

Not that a second-rate scientist will ever understand that, eh, Viktor? You seek only everlasting life, something I have almost attained in my state's perpetuity.

V.LEN

Your tongue is but a dagger to my metallic body. You are correct, however. My body is decaying. It can only be rectified once we enter the void. Penny and Cyrril have both confirmed that a devastating amount of heat will cause Hudokai to combust, gaining us access to the void we seek. The final puzzle piece is that missing Genesis Grenade. I need it for the good of the cult, Guy.

GUY

My Transcendence Alliance have kept a watch on all of creation. Every person and every "thing". All knowledge is relayed back to me. I have no information regarding the Genesis Grenade. Is that all you came for, Viktor?

V.LEN

I could shatter your Light Room and reveal you to the remainder of Rettam Krad's watchers, the Shades - the ones you have yet to exterminate with your "alliance".

GUY

But you won't. I speak only the truth.

V.LEN

I don't believe one who has re-written the history of the galaxies and stored them within his own library, but very well. I will leave. Don't think this is over, Guy.

GUY

If I were not confined to the Light Room, you know I would lead the Cult of Kai. As it is, you are the head. Very well, this meeting is over.

MAIN smashes down the door at that moment.

KIM

Nova, no!

GUY's hologram fades out, quick to escape.

MAIN

We've got you right where we want you, V.Len, trapped! I may not have understood your conversation, but I sure as fluff know we need to get rid of all members of the cult!

V.LEN

How nice of you to drop in, Nova. The last I'd been informed was that Cyrril dropped you off on Duskwight to die. How quaint. Now I get to purge you from existence, myself.

LIONE

Damn fool! Everyone, back Nova up,
otherwise it's lights out for us
all.

Suddenly, without warning, a figure appears between V.LEN And
MAIN, out of nowhere - the very figure who had been watching
the crew in the city, only now in full opacity, VARSH.

MAIN

Uh... you're in the way. Move it.

V.LEN

So, Guy had sent a spy to watch me,
after all. That pathetic traitor.

VARSH looks alarmed.

VARSH

You can see me? You can hear me?!
Damn it, not again. I've need to
better control these emotions - my
damn cloaking device has
destabilised. Um... hi?

KIM

Hello, my name's Kim. You seem
friendly, I like you!

ALIZA

Not now, Kim!

V.LEN beings glowing from charging up his own Hudokai powers.
Alarmed, VARSH dives out the way, but the others are hit.
Stasis Hudokai. VARSH turns to run, but then stops.

VARSH

Ngh, no. I'm not leaving you here
with this villain, Nova. I haven't
been "spying" on you, V.Len, but I
have been watching Nova, and if I'm
to obtain the knowledge I seek in
answer to my questions, I'm going
to keep him alive. V.Len, my name
is Varsh, d-don't take me lightly.

FIGHT with VARSH vs. V.LEN.

In-battle dialogue, after several turns battling:

V.LEN

My word is law, Varsh. The Galactic
Preservation are the law of the
three galaxies and I, the head of
the council, own them.

(MORE)

V.LEN (CONT'D)

One man and his crew of misfits will not be able to bring down that power, let alone the power I will acquire once I access the void. So be a good boy and back away before I use my power to rip your body in two.

VARSH

That isn't going to happen. I know what to do with you and it'll keep you away, for now. I'm not much of a fighter, but I can do things that you can't... like opening doors to other dimensions, for instance!

A portal opens, by VARSH. Confused and caught off guard, V.LEN is immediately pushed backwards through it.

V.LEN

A portal to another dimension? No, you wouldn't d-

The portal is closed, consuming V.LEN. The fight ends.

ALIZA

Huh? What happened? It feels like I blinked and missed something important.

KIM

I felt it around us. We were caught from the energy of some Stasis Hudokai. We were temporarily frozen in time.

VARSH

I've thrown V.Len into one of the other galaxies. No doubt he'll be back to hunt down Nova, but not for a while. It'll take him some time to get back to this dimension's Galaxy Two.

Choices:

MAIN

You let him get away? For fluff's sake, we needed to put him out of commission, for good.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You saved us! Thanks. Who knows what V.Len would've done when we were frozen there? I didn't count on him having some stasis Hudokai.

After choices:

VARSH

Yes... I figured you'd react in that way. I've been watching you for a while now, Nova. But we have to get out of here. It's not safe. Meet me on the Corporeal Bridge with the rest of your companions.

VARSH sneaks off, becoming invisible, once more.

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #2 - PHOENIX AND MAX IN BAR ROOM BRAWL:

PHOENIX and MAX waltz up to the bar.

MAX

Yo, barkeep, two sarsaparillas and keep 'em coming.

PHOENIX

You've gotta be fluffing with me, Max. You know sarsaparilla isn't alcoholic, right? I need a drink, not some plant puss. Something like Woozy Whiskey... Good ol' Woozy Whiskey...

MAX

What's "Woozy Whiskey"?

PHOENIX

W-what? You don't know what Woozy Whiskey is?! You know, that frothy waterfall of liquid joy that washes down your throat? Those tingly bubbles which explode on your tongue? That fire in your belly after you finish a bottle? You know, Woozy Whiskey?!

BARKEEP

Sounds like a Napple fruit drink with a shot of alcoholic Jacks, to me. Napple Jacks, we call them.

MAX

Great. We'll take a Napple Jack, each. Someone forgot to take his medicine, this morning, apparently.

PHOENIX

Oh yeah, Max? How'd you like it if they didn't serve your favourite drink, but some cheap knock off? You'd be pretty fluffed off, right?

MAX

I'm always pretty fluffed off, to be honest. That's why I stayed for a drink, to calm me down. You have no idea how much I've wanted to try something since being stuck in the Nexus.

PHOENIX

Get outta town, you've never had a drink, before? Oh, this'll be fun. We'll down this "Napple Jack" stuff at the same time. You ready? 3, 2, 1...

They both down their drinks.

MAX

(Spluttering)

Oh man, it's like I just swallowed some scock!

PHOENIX

Not... quite the response I was hoping for, but give it time and it'll work its magic. Hm. It kinda DOES taste like Woozy Whiskey. Maybe this won't be so bad, after all?

LEO

Woozy Whiskey? That takes me back to the days of war, fighting in the wasteland and wiling the night away with a good "friend" of mine.

PHOENIX

No way... it couldn't be?!

Standing next to PHOENIX, having snuck his way into the bar, is a broad lion man wearing an eye-patch and with a deep scar down the opposite cheek. He wears a large duffle-coat and has a large smile on his face. LEO STELAZZIO.

LEO

Phoenix Fox, looks like you finally won your freedom.

PHOENIX

Is that Leo Stelazzio?! No way! The last I saw of you was in the battle of Duskwight Peaks. You were swarmed by the Capitarl.

LEO

But what a hell of an explosion I gave 'em, you remember? Ahaha!
(MORE)

LEO (CONT'D)

It left me with a few scars,
though.

MAX

Oh great, another furry.

PHOENIX

Don't be such a sour scock, Max.
This is Leo - an old war buddy of
mine. And there I was, thinking he
died in that battle... now here he
is.

MAX

Yeah, yeah, it's a small galaxy.
Maybe one day I'll find my dad
again as easily as you found your
dead friend?

LEO

Life's uncertain. It takes those
closest to you but leaves behind
those you... hate.

MAX

Huh?

LEO

Oh, nothing. I was just lamenting.

PHOENIX

So anyway, have a drink with us. I
don't care how you managed to find
yourself on another planet. I don't
even care that you have a scar the
size of a planet on your face. All
I care about is having a drink from
an old friend. You'll indulge me,
right?

LEO

A Napple Jack each and we'll make a
game out of it. Whoever downs the
most bottles in 3 minutes wins.

PHOENIX

Ohoho! I'm gonna drink you down so
hard, you'll wish you died there on
Duskwight Peaks! You're on, Leo!

BARKEEP

I heard ya. I'll keep 'em coming.
You three ready?

MAX

W-wait, I'm not used to... my
head's spinning...

BARKEEP

Suck it up. Ready? Go!

PLAYER goes through a series of Quick Time Events to try and drink the most amount of Napple in 3 minutes. If PLAYER, being PHOENIX, wins, then they receive a trophy and several free Napple drinks. If they lose, they won't receive this. Story continues after the event.

LEO

You always were good at holding
your liquor, ahaha!

MAX

B-but... I'm not! I think I'm gonna
be sick!

MAX falls off of his stool and onto the feet of the person standing next to him, a beefy guy named JOE.

MAX (CONT'D)

BLURGH!

JOE

You gonna clean that up, or am I
gonna have to clean it up with your
face, chump?

LEO

Aw, hey now, he didn't mean it. The
kid's obviously not got the stomach
for it, yet.

JOE

Was I talking to you? Zip it, furry
scum.

PHOENIX

Furry scum? You've got no idea the
legend you're talking trash to!

JOE

Then fluff on this!

JOE socks PHOENIX in the face, sending him sprawling into the bar. PHOENIX quickly regains his composure, staggers, then launches himself at JOE, knocking him to the ground. JOE gets up.

JOE (CONT'D)

BAR ROOM BRAWL!

A bunch of large guys rush to JOE's aid. Some try and stop JOE's gang, but are pushed to the ground, only to then punch JOE's gang back. An entire brawl ensues.

MAX

Oh man, there's so many of them...

LEO

That's just your vision, scruff.
The drink's doing the seeing, now.
You ready to fight for your
freedom, Phoenix? Just like we used
to?

PHOENIX

Leo and Phoenix, back to back, just
like old times! Bring it on!

A series of fights take place with random people in the bar, including many of JOE's gang. Eventually, they take on JOE, who is much tougher than the others. Once taken down, the fighting slows down and eventually ceases.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

Hooooo, baby! That was
exhilarating! I live for this
stuff.

LEO

And it's a good thing I lived to
see you again, Phoenix. We have to
do this again, some time. Take my
com radio number, should you wanna
talk again. I've got matters to
attend to, so I'll be seeing ya.

PHOENIX

Leo, it's been a damn pleasure.
We'll have to kick some more
rookie arse some time.

LEO walks off and out of the bar, as if nothing ever happened. The bar is littered with broken furniture and knocked out people.

MAX

Oh fluff, I've got a pounding
headache and... weren't we supposed
to keep watch for Nova?

PHOENIX

If anyone asks, we kept watch the
whole time and as for the bodies...
uh, the Barkeep did it. Yeah.

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #3 - ELZABETH AND CYRUS:

A giant library. An old man with purple hair puts away a book. He wears a cloak and has a grumpy face. CYRUS. As he does so, a messy haired girl with glasses approaches, sporting a TA uniform and pale red hair. ELZABETH.

CYRUS

You know it's against the rules, to disturb someone depositing information for our leader, Guy. I thought better of you, Elizabeth...

ELZABETH

Well, I AM you daughter. I think you can make an exception, right?

CYRUS

Spit it out. It must be important - there'd be no other reason why you'd interrupt my duties.

ELZABETH

It's Varsh.

CYRUS

That delinquent, again. What's he messed up, now?

ELZABETH

Why do you always assume he's-

CYRUS

But he has, has he not?

ELZABETH

...Yes. He showed his emotions, let himself be seen, then caused the death of his observed target. But you know he can't control them, he's like me.

CYRUS

For his sake, I hope you assigned him a new target and altered his records accordingly. The only other avenue is death - Guy would want him dealt with.

ELZABETH

Yes, father. It'll be arranged. However, the reason I came... his new target... Nova. If he had anyone observe him before, they were "removed" for whatever reason. It's my job to sift through and organise the information on new and old assignments, but there's absolutely nothing on Nova. I don't understand. Is that even possible? I've also received word that he and others escaped the void.

CYRUS

The void? The TA do not observe anyone who enters that place. Too risky. This is the first time I've known anyone to escape it.

ELZABETH

You have a higher position in the TA, so please can you look into it, father. There's something unusual about this and it's setting me on edge.

CYRUS

Psh, my own daughter, begging me... Fine, but ONLY because you're my daughter. I must get going. The Astrology Group are to be sent on a new assignment in the coming hours - orders from "upstairs".

CYRUS goes to leave, then stops.

CYRUS (CONT'D)

Varsh is dangerous, Elizabeth. Be cautious of him and do not interfere with his activities where it can be helped. You have a tendency to get... emotional when he messes up. If you are to serve under Guy, you are to suppress your emotions. Your rationale drops and your decision making fails when flustered. Guy established that rule. Never forget it.

CYRUS leaves.

END OF SCENARIO

After scenarios, MAIN and co. meet back up outside the bar.

MAIN

Since we've now drawn attention to the bar, we're meeting up with a mysterious man called Varsh at Corporeal Bridge. Let's look for him.

PLAYER resumes control and can explore the city. Story continues once they arrive on the bridge. VARSH uncloaks himself and appears out of nowhere, once more.

VARSH

You... fascinate me, Nova. How is it that the galaxies only have one piece of recorded information of you - a GP report?
(MORE)

VARSH (CONT'D)

How is it that you have barely any memory of who you once were? How is it that you can use all manner of weapons so deftly? For someone who chronicles all existence, you baffle me, Nova.

MAIN

Ever since waking from stasis, I've become a new man. All you need to know about me is the here and now, which is that I want to live life free, amongst the stars... and the Cult of Kai plan to pervert that reality as they see fit, with Hudokai from the void. My mission is to stop them.

VARSH

I am aware. Like I told you, I've been watching you for a while now, since planet Duskwight, in fact. I never thought the devastation could be linked to Guy. That's why I lost my cool and subsequently, shorted out my cloaking device - emotional energy was never factored into their design.

PHOENIX

So... you're like a guardian angel or something? Just who are you?

VARSH

I'm Varsh and no, I'm not a guardian angel, more like a... historian. Yeah, a historian who, uh, gathers knowledge on one specific person.

MAIN

That's a bare-faced lie and you know it. I heard mention of Guy's 'Transcendence Alliance', earlier. You've got to be one of them.

VARSH

Okay, so that was a lie. Well, not entirely. More like a subtraction from the truth. I do, indeed, work for the TA. Our job is to gather information for our leader, Guy, who... until tonight, I saw as nothing less than a great and powerful being, who sought to rid us of ignorance and guide us into the light.

LIONE

Guy is the leader of planet Yin, but due to his paranoia, he only ever attends the Reality Council meetings in his hologram form. We now know he is hiding himself from whatever these "Shades" are... and that he is a member of the Cult of Kai. Truly despicable.

MAX

I see. And, what, you all look up to Guy as some kind of God or something? You're wasting your fluffing time. He's definitely twisted and has something against this Rettam Krad thing. Didn't Roke mention that way back when we first met, in the void, Nova?

MAIN

He definitely did. It makes me uneasy about what V.Len is planning, let alone Guy.

If Genesis Grenade not obtained:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Either way, we have to get one step ahead and find that Genesis Grenade, not just confront the cult members.

If Genesis Grenade HAS been obtained from BWP story planet:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Either way, we have to get one step ahead and confront the cult members, but do it when the odds are in our favour.

After:

VARSH

And I NEED to find out more about you, Nova. My position in the TA has been compromised, thanks to unveiling myself to you, but I've GOT to know.

PHOENIX

Curious by nature, are we? From what I understand of this "TA", I reckon the info of you showing yourself to Nova is gonna get you killed.

VARSH

That's extremely likely, but... I can't believe Guy is a member of the same villainous cult that V.Len leads. Why? It's as if... the one you've looked up to all your life, is nothing but a false prophet.

PHOENIX

Belief in yourself is belief enough. Your focus determines your reality.

VARSH

T-thanks, Phoenix. Look, I think we can help each other out.

If Genesis Grenade has NOT yet been obtained:

VARSH (CONT'D)

I NEED to know more about Nova and you guys NEED to know the location of the Genesis Grenade. As a member of the TA, I've gathered all sorts of information and submitted it to Guy's library. As it stands, I've been unable to pull any relevant data from the Archives, pertaining to Nova or the grenade. If it exists, we have information on it and it'll be stored in the restricted section for certain.

If Genesis Grenade HAS been obtained:

VARSH (CONT'D)

I NEED to know more about Nova and you guys NEED to know the location of all the cult members, in addition to how to take on Guy. As a member of the TA, I've gathered all sorts of information and submitted it to Guy's library. As it stands, I've been unable to pull any relevant data from the Archives, pertaining to Nova and equally, none on Guy. If it exists, we have information on it and it'll be stored in the restricted section for certain.

After:

ALIZA

Restricted section? Are you telling me that a large section of this planet is just...
(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)
a giant library full of
information?! I think... I'm in
paradise!

VARSH
This planet only contains a doorway
to the library. The library is in a
dimension of its own.

ALIZA
A whole dimension of books?!
Eeeeeeeee!

VARSH
The restricted section is not meant
for low ranking watchers, as far as
I know, so nobody but Guy is
permitted to enter. It's entirely
comprised of knowledge that Guy has
either read and absorbed, or
knowledge no one must know.
However, it's getting late. Now's
the perfect time to sneak in,
unnoticed - there'll be a shift
change with the guards.

ALIZA
I'm so excited!

MAIN
Calm down, Aliza, they're just
books. Fine, we'll follow you to
the library's restricted section.

VARSH
The library's inaccessible to
anyone who doesn't already know of
its existence, hasn't already been
there, or hasn't a "key" for the
matter it's made from. I'll take
you to its "physical" entrance,
after which you'll be able to pass
through my "Doorways" to reach it.

MAX
"Doorways"? Like the one you opened
and shoved V.Len through? Don't
make me use my scythe on you, you
sadistic fluff.

VARSH
The library's not of this world,
shall we say? It's physical
entrance is to the upmost north of
the city. You can't miss it.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once player locates
the "physical entrance" which is a giant library doorway.

When PLAYER reaches it, VARSH crafts a "Doorway", like a puncture in the fabric of reality, which PLAYER can then travel through to reach the actual library, which is a huge labyrinth.

PLAYER must navigate to the shadowed Restricted Section, hidden at the back. In the middle of the Restricted Section's curved and towering bookcases stands a central pedestal - a plinth where a book can be placed upon. There are different coloured books about. A scene plays out with each of the coloured books being placed on the plinth.

VARSH (CONT'D)

I've never seen anything like this!
I imagine if you place one of the
books on the plinth, it will
project its information in a
window, in front of us. Try it.

BLUE BOOK:

MAIN sees himself in a large window, on board the Reality Council ship, a strange dark-skinned person with him in a lab environment.

MAIN

I-Is that me? Is this my past?

The window plays out. Both figures go to up to two glass containers, both containing floating GENESIS GRENADES.

VARSH

Oh, I see... the Genesis Grenades
are powerful, used for trading
purposes, to create artificial Suns
for planets in need of the light.
They were incomplete prototypes.
One of the two still remain. This
is fascinating, I'm excited! The
truth is coming out!

PHOENIX

Woah, calm down there, Varsh. The
truth normally isn't THAT exciting.

VARSH

Of course it is! To unravel the
secrets of the universe is what
gives life meaning; the quest for
knowledge leads us to progression,
it inspires the imagination.
Knowledge, after all, is Power and
those who wield it can do
remarkable things.

PHOENIX

You ever tried a tranquilizer,
Varsh? Maybe then you'd get some
beauty sleep and calm down.

VARSH

I don't think sleep would do much
to quench my thirst for knowledge -
it's all I've ever known. There are
so many interesting secrets,
questions to be answered and this
is the most fun I've had in a long,
long time. Try another coloured
book! Until they're all gone, I
want to see more.

LIGHT BLUE BOOK:

ADHO is shown on TRI-ALPHA, bodies scattered around him.
DUNKAN runs away from ADHO, only for ADHO to strike him with
electricity. DUNKAN falls over, gets up, then slowly hobbles
away.

KIM

Planet Tri-Alpha! Duncan! Does this
mean Tom failed? Tom... no...

Suddenly TOM SILVER enters and rescues DUNKAN from one last
lightning bolt. He places DUNKAN on the road, who is
unmoving. His fate is uncertain. TOM steps up to ADHO.

KIM (CONT'D)

These events feel familiar. I am
emotionally linked with Tom.

ALIZA

It's possible you felt so upset
back in the Nexus because these
events were going on at the same
time. You felt Tom's emotions.

VARSH

These events are in the past, after
all.

HELEN is seemingly struck down by ADHO. TOM unleashes a
devastating attack which decimates ADHO at long last. The
window scene ends.

YELLOW BOOK:

RAZZ can be seen apprehended by several GP enforcers, on
president MALKA's shuttle. The controls blow in the resulting
chaos. The ship crashes in a jungle. RAZZ emerges, injured
and dazed.

ALIZA

Razz is still out there. At least we know why he didn't reach the Reality Council, now. I need to find him...

RED BOOK:

The Genesis Grenade is shown, underground.

VARSH

And here is the Genesis Grenade, recorded in a book on Planet Canary's history... But nothing more on Nova. This is aggravating. Why are you such an enigma?!

LIONE

Planet Canary... V.Len rules that planet.

If PLAYER has already obtained the Genesis Grenade from the BLACK WOLF PIRATES story:

MAIN

And we stole that Genesis Grenade right from under his nose!

VARSH

(Frustrated)

I know, I watched you take it... but still, there's nothing more on you, Nova. That isn't right. I-It doesn't make sense. If it exists we would know about it, there should be something here. How?!

MAX

To be honest, it sounds like any data on Nova wasn't stored away, hidden, but utterly destroyed. Who even knows where his home originally was? They say history makes a man. What does that make you, Nova?

LIONE

Better than you, Max. At least he's moved on from his past. So, stop it.

If PLAYER has yet to obtain the Genesis Grenade:

MAIN

It looks like the Genesis Grenade is hidden underground, somewhere, on that planet.

VARSH

I can't tell which planet that is.
I have travelled around quite a bit
across different worlds, so I must
have been to that planet at some
point, but... hm. The ground looks
familiar... but where from?

KIM

The book is a record of planet
Canary's history. It must be planet
Canary! Half a planet blew up,
Varsh. If we don't reach the
grenade, first, V.Len will reach
the void and transform the future
in cataclysmic ways! With it, he'll
re-enter the void.

After:

MAIN

And that makes me, and all of us,
heroes of the three galaxies, if we
take down the cult.

MAX

The Cult of Kai will use the void's
Hudokai to ravage everything. Each
one of those cult members are
ruthless. Just look at Foltix and
what he did before even entering
the void. He killed countless in a
war on Roke's homeland, that sick
fluff.

VARSH

A recount from Roke Zephyr? I knew
someone who watched over Roke, as
their "Target" like when I was
assigned to you, Nova.
Unfortunately, when Roke was sucked
into the void, he could no longer
be observed.

GREEN BOOK:

A window shows ROKE's planet. Everyone is fighting. FOLTIX
cuts down people around him. ROKE and his partner desperately
fight impossible odds, until FOLTIX disarms the scythe from
ROKE's partner. The scythe lands away from them. FOLTIX then
cuts ROKE's partner down, killing him.

MAX

So, the Death Bringer planet was
wiped out by whatever army Foltix
was with, back then?

VARSH

Those Death Bringer scythes wield incredible power, looking at them! If I understand this window, rightly, Foltix was part of an army that wanted that power - the power to not only reap the dead, but bring back their own souls if they were killed in action, providing they held the scythe whilst dying.

MAX

What happened to Foltix's army, in the end?

They watch on, only to find GEARS attack the army, wiping them out.

KIM

Gears! Foltix worked for an army which were attacked by Gears and wiped out, themselves.

LIONE

There's so many unjust monsters, out there, each one stronger than the last - the Gears, the Cult, maybe even that "Rettam Krad" thing.

The same book reveals a colossal dark monster, taking them all by surprise.

MAX

So, we see it at last, the very thing Roke warned us about back in the Nexus. Rettam Krad.

RIZUMU

That's a Rettam Krad?! It's a monster! T-that's scary... it's bigger than Razz... and I bet it's just as nasty!

VARSH

Rettam Krad is... pure darkness?! This is what Guy has such a vendetta against?

KIM

Analysis of the name Rettam Krad reveals that it spells Dark Matter, backwards.

VARSH

Oh, of course! All dark matter is said to come from the void, because in the void lies a being made from total darkness. So, it comes from Rettam Krad.

MAIN

But we were in the void. There's nothing else there but a town and a load of Hudokai.

VARSH

No, look.

A window opens, revealing the Nexus town. The perspective changes, showing what is beneath the town, in the darkness - a huge being of blackness, slumbering... and beneath it, a large shining sun.

MAX

I lived in the Nexus void for a long time and I never saw something that fluffing large, but apparently Roke must've done... and kept it secret until recently.

VARSH

And I bet you never saw the Quasar beneath the town, either.

KIM

Analysing... complete. A quasar is a large star at the centre of the universe, in the middle of a supermassive black hole, in the middle of everything.

PHOENIX

Which so happens to be the Nexus void. I get it. But what I don't get... is how a little girl can tell us that, but not know the first thing about any kind of food! Seriously, you're clueless about simple things like porridge!

KIM

What's porridge? Is it tasty?

PHOENIX

You see!

MAIN

I don't like where this is going.
We all know Hudokai is made from
dark matter, so what if V.Len's
plan extends to Rettam Krad,
somehow?

Once all books have been looked at, TA story continues.

VARSH

None of these books have any
information on you, Nova. Let's get
out of here before we're- wait.
What about that one? We haven't
checked them all. Try that last
coloured book - it could have
something!

One last book makes itself known. It's brown in colour.
PLAYER takes it to the plinth. Another window opens, showing
a female dressed in similar clothing to VARSH. She is
evidently another member of the Transcendence Alliance (the
TA). GUY is with her, in the window.

VARSH (CONT'D)

Guy? Elizabeth?

ALIZA

Elizabeth? A friend of yours?

VARSH

In the TA, yeah. She was the one
who took me under her wing, taught
me all that I know. She saved me
when I was a child; my family
were... slaughtered by a race of...
shadow creatures - the "Shades"?
Even my brother was dragged into
darkness by the "Shades".

They watch ELZABETH amongst other TA members, who sneak up on
various people who look similar to VARSH in some way. The
other TA members undoubtedly kill their targets. ELZABETH
approaches VARSH as the others around VARSH die, but decides
to not kill him. Someone who looks similar to VARSH is
dragged into the shadows by cloaked figures. ELZABETH is seen
placing the very book brown book into the restricted section,
looking shiftily around her as she does so. The window scene
ends.

MAX

I didn't see any "Shades" doing the
killing, but members of the TA,
instead. It looks more like this
"Elizabeth" saved you from...
herself.

VARSH

E-Elizabeth? What?! The TA killed... everybody, not just my family, my entire race. Why?!

PHOENIX

Battle, war, these things have their consequences. I know you're freaking out right now, but you've gotta see the positives. Elizabeth didn't act on Guy's instructions and kill you. It's best you don't dwell on that past and look towards the future.

VARSH

(Through gritted teeth)
A future in which Guy is pulling the strings of? Fluff! I don't have any answers on Nova, instead I've only got more questions! I can't... no, I need to compose myself. Get a hold of my feelings. I need to speak with Elizabeth and find out what's going on. Let's head to the library's entrance.

PLAYER resumes control. They can save the game at this point. They don't make it far before the next scene plays out, just outside the restricted section.

MAIN

Urgh! My neck's been dripped on by icy water!

A female figure materialises on the ceiling, upside-down.
AQUARIUS.

AQUARIUS

It oughta cool down you little cocks.

KIM

Her body appears to be fused with Hudokai... like Greg was. Is she... one of Penny's experiments?

Another figure appears from nowhere, thin in stature and cold in nature. His eyes pierce through any warmth. SCORPIO.

SCORPIO

The kid knows too much. No matter. She is but a compass to them or a radar of Hudokai. De-Neo will resolve that.

ALIZA

"De-Neo"? Like on Earth 2400?
Memory erasure?! You can't! She's
just a little girl!

SCORPIO

No - a tool which needs down-
grading.

VARSH

(Hushed, to the others)
Hudokai-infused...?! I've heard
about these guys. Everyone, when I
say run, we run, understand?!

MAX

What's wrong with you? We can take
them.

VARSH

They've gotta be the elite
"Astrology Group". Now, *RUN!*

MAIN and VARSH rush forward, only to be knocked aside by a
burly bull of a man, charging in from nowhere. TAURUS.

TAURUS

You thought we wouldn't know that
you were looking in the library's
restricted section? Fwahaha! What
idiots! I say we execute them right
now!

AQUARIUS

Use your brain, you fluffing moron.
Only Varsh is a member of the TA.
He'll be the one to face execution
for breaking Guy's law.

SCORPIO

Therefore, De-Neo is the punishment
for the others. Much more painful
than death... right, Nova?

MAIN

W-what? You're saying this has
happened to me, before? No wonder
my memories are all over the place!

PHOENIX

Damn! We're not going to be able to
get out of this, alone. I'm using
the com radio. Only one person can
get here quick enough and help us
out of this mess... Leo.

AQUARIUS, SCORPIO and TAURUS all stand there, confidently,
simply watching PHOENIX make the call.

LEO (O.S.)
(Over Com Radio)
Hello?

PHOENIX
Leo, it's Phoenix! I hate to do
this, but I need your help!

LEO (O.S.)
It'd be... my pleasure, Phoenix.

LEO walks out from behind TAURUS.

KIM
What animal is that?

LIONE
A lion.

KIM
Ooooooh, does this mean we can now
have some lion burgers?

ALIZA
You can't just go around eating
people, Kim...

PHOENIX
Leo, all right! That was even
quicker than I thought you'd be.
Now help us take out these goons!

There is a pause. LEO doesn't move.

TAURUS
Fwehaha! We're here BECAUSE of Leo!
Now, no more waiting, let's bruise
their bodies!

LEO
But not before their egos, right,
Phoenix?

PHOENIX
I don't under- oooooh. Oh, you
traitor. You dirty, lying traitor!

LEO
Scarred and left for dead, I never
stopped blaming you for what
happened to me on Duskwight Peaks.
I've been ever so eager to claim
vengeance. You're gonna burn alive,
Phoenix!

PHOENIX
Ah, but you forget that the phoenix
can never-

TAURUS charged into PHOENIX and wallops him out-cold.

TAURUS
I grew impatient.

LEO
Lock Varsh up until his execution
for disobeying the laws of the TA.
As for this sorry bunch, take them
for interrogation before De-Neo.

FADE TO BLACK.

SCENARIOS - BETWEEN VARSH and NOVA.

SCENARIO #1 - MAIN NOVA INTERROGATION:

MAIN wakes up, clamped to a metal table, holding him vertically up-right. Only he and LEO inhabit the small, metal room.

LEO (CONT'D)
Finally awake, huh? Answer to my
satisfaction and you'll be spared
from my power.

MAIN
Your... power? Don't tell me - your
Hudokai power, the one infused into
your body.

LEO combusts MAIN, before quickly extinguishing the flames.

MAIN (CONT'D)
Argh!

LEO
That's for speaking out of turn.
We, at the Astrology Group, are the
elite members of the TA, spliced
with Hudokai by Penny Greyback to
make the ultimate living weapons.
After my incident, back on Planet
Duskwight, Penny saved me, on
condition I serve the Cult of
Kai... and through serving Guy, I
and the others have held our end of
the bargain. Now I'm gonna use this
power to flush some answers from
you... and that damned fox.

A health bar appears at the top of the screen, with MAIN's face to its left. PLAYER must NOT allow themselves to be combusted too many times, as every time they do, MAIN's health will drop. If it reaches 0, it's game over. Generally, the POSITIVE ALIGNMENT OPTIONS will result in COMBUSTION, reducing their health. It is a fine balance.

LEO (CONT'D)
Why did you come to the library?

CHOICES:

MAIN
I'll never answer to you!

LEO
Then burn.

LEO combusts MAIN once more, before extinguishing the flames.

MAIN
Ha... you'll have to do better than
that.

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)
To learn of my past.

LEO
Your past has been... scorched.
That knowledge isn't for you to
know.

OR:

MAIN
For Varsh. His idea.

LEO
*And you followed, like a lamb to
the slaughter.*

LEO combusts MAIN once more, before extinguishing the flames.

After CHOICES:

LEO (CONT'D)
Such an unpleasant man. You should
have stayed locked in stasis.

LEO combusts MAIN again, before extinguishing the flames.

LEO (CONT'D)
Now tell me, why'd you go to Planet
Yin?

CHOICES:

MAIN
The Genesis Grenade...

LEO
Your trailing sentence shows
insubordination.

LEO combusts MAIN once more, before extinguishing the flames.

OR:

MAIN
The Cult of Kai...

LEO
(Enjoyably)
That's unfortunate to hear.

LEO combusts MAIN once more, before extinguishing the flames.

OR:

MAIN
For fun...

LEO
"Fun"? Are you having "fun" now?

LEO combusts MAIN once more, before extinguishing the flames.

After CHOICES:

LEO (CONT'D)
Don't even try to escape, none of
ya. I'm a skilled tracker. I even
tracked you here, to the library,
following Phoenix's "scent" and...
ahem, my other methods. So before I
leave you in the most capable hands
of my compatriot, Scorpio and his
De-Neo procedure, I have one last
question. What knowledge did you
gain from the restricted section?

CHOICES:

MAIN
None of your business!

LEO combusts MAIN once more, before extinguishing the flames.

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)
That my friends are still alive.

LEO
Yeah, but they'll be reduced to
vegetables, like you were. If
that's everything, I'll be going
now.

OR:

MAIN
Rettam Krad.

LEO
*The originator of the Shades? You
 know too much.*

After CHOICES:

LEO (CONT'D)
 I'll leave you with one last gift
 to warm your heart, Nova.

LEO combusts MAIN once last time, before heading to the door.

LEO (CONT'D)
 I'll retrieve the next of your
 companions from stasis. The red
 head next, I think...

LEO leaves MAIN alone in the room. SCENARIO ENDS.

SCENARIO #2 - VARSH BREAKS OUT:

VARSH is locked in a cell, alone.

VARSH
 Alone in a cell... and talking to
 myself... How am I supposed to get
 out of here when my Entry-Band's
 been confiscated?

SHADE (O.S.)
 (Whisper)
 The darkness watches... the
 darkness helps.

VARSH
 H-hello? Who's there?

SHADE
 (Whisper)
 No one and everyone...

VARSH
 Please, tell me who you are! Can
 you help me?!

SHADE
 (Whisper)
 We protect our fellow brothers...
 we protect those who remain... we
 will help...

A click sounds. The cell door opens. VARSH is free.

VARSH

The cell door's unlocked. I can't thank you enough, whoever you are!

SHADE

(Whisper)

When time most suitable presents, we will be revealed...

VARSH

That... wasn't creepy in the slightest. But now isn't the time to think about it. Right now, I've got to rescue the others, otherwise I'll never get to the bottom of all this madness. And... still talking to myself.

PLAYER resumes control as VARSH. Open lab and cell rooms. They will eventually find themselves in a large room of green domes holding LIONE, MAX, PHOENIX, ALIZA and KIM. A panel releases them. The room is empty. Story continues when panel is activated.

LIONE

Were we locked in stasis? My neck's so stiff.

PHOENIX

Cheers, Varsh. Now I can show Leo what I'm made of!

VARSH

No! We can't take them on. They're the elite forces of the TA. Barely any of us have seen them before, because they work undercover and so skillfully. We need to grab Nova and run from here.

PHOENIX

Run? We'll NEVER outrun Leo, trust me. We were war buddies back in the day, that back-stabbing bastard... He was the best of the best at tracking Capitarl. He'll track us down no matter where we run. We have to stand and fight, now!

VARSH

I have a plan. Our TA entry-bands have trackers on them. It was risky to go to the library, but... look, I think Leo tracked us on his entry-band device. There's no way he followed our "scent" into a different dimension.

(MORE)

VARSH (CONT'D)

He'd only have followed his nose,
once he was here.

PHOENIX

Yeah? And?

VARSH

They have my entry-band. They can't
track me if we flee to another
dimension, again.

ALIZA

Your entry-band got us here,
though. Without it, we can't
dimension hop.

VARSH

Except we CAN "dimension hop" out
of here - we'll use the library
doorway systems, over at the
library entrance. They're used for
travelling to our targets'
destination at first, while our
entry-bands are only really for
getting back to headquarters. The
panels are located at the front.
Let's grab Nova and get out of
here!

SCENARIO ENDS.

SCENARIO #3 - V.LEN AND PHYLLIS:

PHYLLIS's run-down apartment. Her open-plan kitchen looks out
onto her small living room. PHYLLIS is in the thin kitchen
section, looking in the fridge.

PHYLLIS

Hmm... maybe just ONE more
Klawcalot bar won't hurt...

V.LEN stumbles into the living room.

V.LEN

Phyllis, I have returned.

PHYLLIS

(Annoyed)

What time do you call this, Mr.
Len?

V.LEN

(Furious)

Time for revenge. One of Guy's
lackeys catapulted me into the
remnants of another dimension.

PHYLLIS
(Mournfully in thought)
Galaxy 4... Home.

V.LEN
I felt like a bit part in a musical. Like Seymour manipulated by a Desert Rage, much like in "Libel Chop of Horrors." It was humiliating, Phyllis. I've never felt more insignificant.

PHYLLIS
Well... you DID make me eat my weight in Klawcalot bars out of worry. That's HARDLY "insignificant".

V.LEN
You would have caved, regardless.

PHYLLIS
No I wouldn't! That's it! I'm not your friend, anymore.

PHYLLIS turns her back to V.LEN, cross with him.

V.LEN
(Threateningly)
You dare goad me...
(Then, lightly)
Hahaha... That was surprisingly hurtful, Phyllis.

PHYLLIS
No, you're right. That was a cheap shot. I know you ain't got any other friends.

V.LEN
Hmph. Your shots become cheaper, still. It's like they're on sale. Still, there is truth to your words. So, what happens now? If I'm no longer your friend, are you going to kick me out your apartment?

PHYLLIS turns back to V.LEN.

PHYLLIS
(Sighing)
Ooh, calm down. I don't mean it.

V.LEN
I do not wish to be kicked out into the cold, just like all others have done in my lonely life.

PHYLLIS

...Even though you no longer feel the cold.

V.LEN

I still feel emotion, though, and your quips hurt when I'm already down.

PHYLLIS

Ah, you got me. I'm sorry, Mr. Len. You know I'll help you achieve your goals and unlock the secrets of life, itself. After all, you are my proudest achievement. So, what you gonna do to get back at Guy?

V.LEN

I will refrain. The matter is already being dealt with...

PHYLLIS

So, uh, what do you want to do?

V.LEN

I wish to "unwind". Prepare a playlist of your favourite music.

PHYLLIS

Fluff yeah! Here comes some Noctane and the Baby Fish!

END OF SCENARIO.

AFTER SCENARIOS:

VARSH enters MAIN's interrogation chamber, at long last.

ALIZA

Nova!

MAIN

A-aliza? Kim! Lione! Phoenix! Varsh! Even Max.

MAX

You say that as if I'd leave you to die and, yeah, okay, if it wasn't for these guys I probably would, but don't make me out to be some sort of villain, Nova.

VARSH

We're getting out of here. The front of the library has several dimensional doorway panels. They can get us out and to safety...

VARSH breaks MAIN out and PLAYER resumes control. Save point. Leaving the room, the PLAYER is at the bottom of a large stair case which leads up to the main floor of the library. It isn't long before they encounter TAURUS.

TAURUS

Well lookee what I found, here!
It's a good thing I was going to
Nova's chamber to torture him,
before Scorpio arrived, Fwahaha!
I'm a pretty impatient guy.

VARSH

Run! RUN!

They run past TAURUS.

TAURUS

You're not escaping!
(On Com Radio)
Leo, Aquarius, Scorpio, they're
escaping!

LEO (O.S.)

(On Com Radio)
On my way. Tail them, Taurus!

TAURUS starts to chase the PLAYER. Eventually, LEO, AQUARIOUS and SCORPIO catch up and continue the chase across aisles, climbing bookcases and across the bookcase tops. If PLAYER is caught by one of the Astrology Group, they are thrown into a battle.

In-battle dialogue:

VARSH

We have to run, now!

If PLAYER doesn't escape, they will die and get a GAME OVER. PLAYER will also reach a Quick Time Event when they reach the library lobby.

VARSH (CONT'D)

Grab one of the panels! I've gotta
think of dimension co-ordinates,
quick, quick!

PHOENIX

This isn't over, Leo, I'll be back
for you!

LEO

Not if I can help it!

VARSH is typing co-ordinates into the panel and LEO leaps into them as a portal opens. The portal closes behind MAIN, co. and LEO. They all land in a dumpster and trash bag, where a cleaner is working in a shopping mall.

They take him by surprise. Momentarily, after, LEO falls out of the portal, and smashes into a shop window, drawing a lot of attention to them. Immediately, LEO has disappeared, his entry-band making him invisible like TA members use to observe people.

VARSH

Leo's followed us through. Keep running.

PHOENIX

If Leo's made it through, then we can't possible escape.

VARSH

Just... keep running.

There is a chase in the mall, where people are knocked aside by the invisible LEO. PLAYER must run through a maze of people and shops, across escalators and through a clothes shop. Eventually, LEO catches up.

LEO

Thought you could escape me, huh, with my experience and tracking skills?

PHOENIX

Never. I've got you right where I want you, Leo!

PHOENIX sends a discharge from his gauntlet and into LEO, electrocuting him. There is a spark. LEO is revealed, no longer invisible.

LEO

What the-? My entry-band... you've busted it... oh, you're asking for it.

PHOENIX

Try dimension hopping now, hot stuff.

VARSH

Phoenix you idiot! Now you've trapped Leo here with us.

KIM

Aliza... this planet's atmosphere is draining my energy...

ALIZA

I wonder if it effects Hudokai or those with Hudokai infused in them...?

MAX

I'll use my Blinding Night
planetary power to cause a
distraction. Then, we run for it.

MAX does so, but it barely does anything.

RIZUMU

Maxy, that was fun and flashy!
But... it didn't do very much...

ALIZA

Not gonna lie - that sucked.

MAX

It worked better in my head. I
think this planet's atmosphere is
draining our ion energy - our
Hudokai's gonna be virtually
useless, here.

MAIN turns around and notices a large crowd of people have
been watching, absolutely in awe and confused in what's going
on.

PERSON

W-what the fluff are they?!

PERSON 2

Is there some kind of cosplay
convention in town?

PERSON 3

Who invited people dressed in
animal costumes? That lion's fur
looks so fake.

LEO

My cloaking device... my entry-
band... you've really ticked me
off, Phoenix!

LEO launches a tiny combustion, which simmers out almost
immediately.

PHOENIX

Aw, will you look at that? The
lion's reduced to a kitty!

VARSH

Leave him. We need to get out of
here and hopefully his now
undoubtedly tiny sense of smell
won't be any use to him, not on
this planet.

The crowd get in the way as LEO attempts to follow the others
rush away from him.

LEO shunts some of them out of the way, but there are too many. LEO is trapped within the crowd as MAIN and co. escape in a taxi bus.

SCENE CUTS to ELZABETH during this transition. A portal opens and she arrives at the stasis holding section in the library.

ELZABETH

Oh fluff, I'm too late. Varsh has escaped... they all have! That means the Astrology Group are most certainly after them. Father will help.

She opens a portal and arrives deep in the TA. CYRUS is there.

CYRUS

Let me guess - Varsh?

ELZABETH

Word's out that he was captured for breaking into the restricted section. I went to find him and investigate, but it looks like he's already gone. Escaped.

CYRUS

Captured? Only the Astrology group specialise in that field of work.

ELZABETH

You've got to do something, then. The Astrology Group are under your command.

CYRUS

Not if their orders were from "upstairs". Guy's word outranks my own. There's nothing I can do.

ELZABETH

Fine. If you can't stop the mission, then... then I will!

CYRUS

Elizabeth! Do not be so foolish. You will not locate him before Leo does, you hear me?

ELZABETH runs out of the room as he shouts after her.

CYRUS (CONT'D)

(To himself)

She definitely has my blood running through her veins.

SCENE CUTS back to MAIN and co in taxi bus, which is now travelling out of town and down a country road area. Several wooden huts jut out of shallow water and fields. They look dirty. These are blatantly slums.

MAIN

Stop.

The taxi bus does so. MAIN walks out. Everyone follows. LIONE pays the driver.

LIONE

I wouldn't normally ask, but is everything all right, Nova? Ever since arriving, you've been deep in thought. It's not like you.

MAX

Yeah, you're normally brain dead, Nova.

MAIN

It's just... this place. It seems familiar, somehow.

MAIN wanders towards the huts as the taxi bus drives away. Everyone is confused, turning to one another. MAIN looks down a pier section. Screen flashes.

Flashback. Same area. MAIN runs into the slums, away from a crowd. He hides in a hut. The crowd look around, then wander back off. Present day.

ALIZA

Varsh... what is this strange planet?

VARSH

I didn't always observe Nova. Before him, on Duskwight, I watched a man named Aranold Jeskins. That was before an, ahem, unfortunate "mishap". He... passed away. However he lived here, on this planet - Planet Arra, twin planet to Yarth in Galaxy #3. In other words, this was-

MAIN

-My home.

KIM

This run-down place was your home, Nova? Did you have anywhere to... lay down when you felt... drained?

MAIN

I-I think so! Everyone, follow me.

PLAYER resumes control. The town can be re-visited, to the right, if the PLAYER wishes. Otherwise, they can explore the slums. Story continues once PLAYER locates a specific hut. Screen flashes.

Flashback. MAIN is cooking dinner with someone, a character who will be known as JALFUZZY. Their hut is a broken mess. Screen flashes back to the present.

MAIN (CONT'D)

This is it...! This is where I lived.

LIONE

Trust you, Nova, it's a tip. I'm surprised it has gone unused for such a long time.

MAIN

I'm surprised I lived in such a dump, but there must have been a solid reason be-

Screen flashes.

Flashback. MAIN is aboard the Reality Council space-station with the other - JALFUZZY. Both are examining two Genesis Grenades in their capsules, floating in suspended animation. A man walks into the lab area of the space-station, looking weak and wearing a red cloak. V.LEN. JALFUZZY goes to tend to V.LEN as he lays on a table. MAIN continues to check the Genesis Grenade. MAIN turns around and watches V.LEN briefly. He slowly turns and walks towards the wooden grave stone in the same room. MAIN is silent. Suddenly, there is banging on the doors and an angry crowd of protestors can be seen as the doors open. One gets in along with a fellow scientist. MAIN quickly pushes the protestor back as he tries to run towards the Genesis Grenades. Screen flashes. Present day.

MAIN (CONT'D)

V.LEN had been afflicted by the M4 virus, like my family, but forced my colleague to try and extend his life... I don't remember my colleague's name. I feel I should.

VARSH

The penny drops... and what a golden coin that is.

MAX

Yeah, Nova's life is worth one Chronoss. So, you hid out here with some other scientist woman because people didn't like the power of the Genesis Grenades. Figures.

LIONE

The grenades were only supposed to provide light and heat to sustain life on planets too far away from a star. It was supposed to provide life, not death. People were scared of it.

VARSH

Excellent! Finally, I'm finding out more and more about your past. So, uh, I don't suppose any other memories have surfaced? Anything at all? Anything... "strange"?

MAIN

Nothing yet... But I'm eager to unlock more memories. If we explore the town we escaped from, I'm sure I'll remember more.

VARSH

...And maybe we can find a way off this planet and to Elizabeth, as I still need answers. For starters, what are the "Shades", why did Guy have my people wiped out? I have too many questions, big ones, and Elizabeth has the answers. I'm sure of it. Let's explore.

PLAYER resumes control. Story resumes when they located a CREMATORIUM. Screen flashes.

Flashback. MAIN exits the building slowly. His sprite closes its eyes, then he runs off. Back to present day.

MAIN

This is where my mother was cremated. She passed away from the deadly M4 Virus. I was so broken, that day, that I vowed to rid my solar system of virus. Someone tried talking me out of it, that scientist - Jal... Juh... I don't remember any more... Except a tower... a crystal tower. I'm sure we can find it if we keep looking.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the bridge which leads to the large Crystal Tower.

MAIN (CONT'D)

T-this tower! This is the one I remember!

Flashback. Many people are on the tower, which looks incomplete.

They are passing blocks of crystal to those higher up, hammering the blocks into place. Some people fall from the tower, dead before they hit the ground. A figure walks out... GREG! Suddenly, the people, who still have the energy, surround GREG and begin to push him back.

MAIN (V.O.) (CONT'D)

Greg used to be this planet's leader! He made us, his oppressed people, build this crystal tower. His tyrannical rule killed many, and we'd had enough. We revolted against Greg, causing what I thought to be a small explosion... He must have been attempting to use Hudokai in the Crystal Tower's construction, as we now know that very explosion sent him to the void... of course!

Present day.

VARSH

This "Greg" must have been constructing some sort of trans-dimensional portal... How ingenious.

ALIZA

That would make sense - the Cult of Kai were looking for ways to access the void between dimensions. It's actually kind of ironic that Greg never finished this tower and was blasted away by Nova.

MAIN

This was all before I became a physicist for the Reality Council... and I reckon we revolted WHEN we did to make sure Greg never used the Crystal Tower. It was nearly finished.

VARSH

Perfect. That tower is our ticket off this planet and back to a working entry-band, as well as Elizabeth.

LEO (O.S.)

Your little chit-chat sure makes for some *INTERESTING* listening.

KIM

It's lion burgers!

LIONE

...

PHOENIX

Poor kitty, reduced to skulk around and eavesdrop.

LEO

It's no better than a low ranking TA member, I must admit, but it doesn't stop me staying one step ahead of YOU, Phoenix.

PHOENIX

Planning to climb the tower before us? Then I'll make sure we're the thorn in your paw. Any step ahead's gonna be a painful one for you, Leo.

KIM

Despite his muted senses, he still picked up our scent, whilst I still feel drained... I'm impressed!

PHOENIX

Seriously, kid, don't encourage him.

LEO

I'm sure Greg's device is in there, somewhere. See ya'll up there, Idjits.

LEO runs ahead and into the tower entrance.

MAIN

All right, let's climb the tower and look for a way out of here. Home is... not as good as I remember.

PLAYER resumes control and is now able to climb the Crystal Tower. Several puzzles await them, inside. There are several staircases on the outside of the tower, also, as they climb. Eventually, PLAYER will the top of the tower and a central room. Within, sits GREG's doorway portal, inactive.

VARSH

Such a beautiful structure, it's a shame it was meant for such corrupt purposes.

KIM

(Happily, kind of creepy)
This technology... if the Gears found this, the planet would be ravaged with death and destruction.

ALIZA

How... ominous, Kim. Still, it looks like we've reached here before Leo. Let's activate this portal and get going.

VARSH

This technology is ancient! I mean, compared to the TA equipment, which technically is older, so in that sense my wording was poor. I meant flawed, er, immature... I'll stop. There must be some way of operating the door - it can't be too dissimilar to the TA system. That's it, I've got it - primitive! The word I wanted was "primitive"! This technology is primitive.

PHOENIX

Remember what I said about getting over-excited and needing a tranquilizer, Varsh? Stay focused.

VARSH

Right. It's just... so primitive, I can't quite figure this out. It's VERY different to the TA's, fluff! I think I can turn it on, at least, but it'll resort to the pre-set coordinates.

The doorway activates, producing a black portal beneath its archway. A figure leaps from the shadows, clapping.

LEO

Well done. The curious one figured it out. I couldn't make heads or tails of it.

PHOENIX

I should've known it was too convenient that we made it here, before you. So what now, you're gonna make sure it's safe for you to cross by shoving us through, first?

LEO

Oh, but Phoenix, that's just too predictable - not me at all. I want to play a little, how's about a dare?

MAX

Phoenix, your girlfriend wants to play truth or dare with you.
(MORE)

MAX (CONT'D)

Don't you feel lucky you've hit it off so well?

PHOENIX

Shut it, Max. All right, a dare. I dare you, Leo, to go in first!

LEO

Now you're playing my game. I dare you to follow after me, urge you, even. Come and find me.

LEO walks backwards into the portal, beckoning them in. He disappears.

RIZUMU

I like hide and seek! Doesn't that sound fun, Kim?

KIM

You know, I don't fancy eating lion burgers, anymore... I'm put off them. I don't want to follow him.

Suddenly, they are surrounded by other Astrology Group members.

SCORPIO

But you will, stubborn girl. All of you will play Leo's game, or it's game over for you right here and now.

They go through the doorway. A flash of light. They all seem to be in the same room, but everything looks... a little different, more alien. The portal closes behind them. LEO is not present.

ALIZA

Does Leo want us to find him? Has this turned into a game of hide and seek?

KIM

Ooooh, Adho used to make me play that when I was younger, with humans! Do we get to kill Leo when we find him?

ALIZA

...I'm starting to worry about you, Kim. Thank Darkness you started afresh when you were devolved and raised with Tom's influence. Anyway, it looks like we're in a similar tower. Let's climb down and explore outside.

PLAYER resumes control. Save point. Party can be switched per every save point, as per usual. The world outside the tower is as black and dark as can be. All the structures gleam of obsidian-esque structure. They glimmer purple from a dull moon. A cloaked figure greets them.

HOODED FIGURE

Leo has become... "side-tracked".
Please, follow me.

The figure walks away. PLAYER must follow the figure across the obsidian buildings to a courtyard. A monument stands in its centre, showing others who look like VARSH. A list of names is present at its base and a message is etched on the structure - 'To have lived would have been a greater reward. Eternity is just a prison.' The hooded figure vanishes, mysteriously.

MAX

Just how potent is Woozy Whiskey, anyway? Does it cause visions and black buildings to appear when you least expect it?

KIM

My sensors indicate that was no vision. This is a list of the dead.

More ASTROLOGY GROUP members appear, at this point, surrounding the crew.

LEO

See, my tracking skills are pretty good, I've found ya. You guys are lucky, but that luck's run out as of now - I was sent somewhere else. I guess Greg's system wasn't quite up to scratch. Doesn't matter. We've got you pinned down.

MAX

Maaaaan, I'm sick of your constant meowing. Now, are we gonna fight, or am I gonna have to reap your soul like the Death Bringer I am?

LEO

Death Bringer? Those were wiped out, long ago. I should know. Now, my orders were to bring you in alive... but they didn't say I had to do in one piece. We've still got some question for ya'll. My game's not finished, yet. Let's say we play for a while. Don't disappoint me, now.

BOSS FIGHT 15: LEO.

In-battle dialogue:

PHOENIX

Do you seriously want revenge on me that much? Wake up, Leo, that explosion was an accident!

LEO

It's grown beyond that, Phoenix. My vision isn't blurred by Woozy Whiskey, like those wasteland nights, it's clear like the day. Under Guy's rule, my life has purpose.

Once LEO has reached less than 50% health, a portal opens up and a figure leaps out - ELZABETH!

VARSH

Leo, what did you mean" I should know" about the Death Bringers? You wiped them out?

LEO

I was involved. You could even say we all were, at the TA, a long time ago.

VARSH

(Holding back rage)
You murdered a whole race of people? You slaughtered because... what, because Guy ordered you to?!

ELZABETH

W-what? My entry-band's fizzled out. Varsh! You've got to get a handle on those emotions, it's getting ridiculous. You've deactivated my cloaking. Got room for another?

LEO

E-Elizabeth, what are you doing here!?

ELZABETH

Well, I didn't mean to be revealed, just yet, but... I'm acting on my own reasons, but whatever you have planned for Varsh, it's not happening.

LEO

This will affect your position in the TA, you realise? There are rules. Not even your father can prevent-

ELZABETH

I've decided. Now don't take me lightly, I am the daughter of Cyrus Fervourlast, after all.

LEO

You're gonna regret this, gal.

The fight continues with ELZABETH, who can manipulate her blood into strong weapons and control, giving them the upper hand in the fight. Eventually, LEO is defeated (but not killed, of course). The fight ends.

The remaining Astrology Group members (the elite members of the TA) close in on the crew - SAGITTARIUS is an Archier humanoid with long, brown hair. CAPRICON is a goat-man. ELZABETH activates her entry-band and a portal is made. They all jump in, leaving the Astrology Group behind. They appear in living quarters.

ALIZA

Where are we? Wait, is this the TA? This is the worst possible place we could be!

VARSH

The closer we are to danger, the farther we are from harm.

ELZABETH

Did you just quote...? Nevermind. He's right, though - at the moment, this is the last place they'd check. We have time to formulate a plan.

MAIN

Where are we, exactly? Is this where all the TA members live?

VARSH

Yeah, this is the living district for the inhabitants, or members, of the TA. My home isn't far from here. Let's get off the street.

PLAYER resumes control. VARSH's house is the only one with an open door, so PLAYERS can't go too wrong, here. Story continues once they enter the house and, specifically, the living room area, which is covered in NAPPLE bottles.

LIONE

This place is filthier than your place, Nova. Look at all the Napple bottles and the... old man on the sofa. This place is a dump.

The old man gets up and angrily strides to LIONE. He pauses.
CYRUS.

CYRUS

I'm no danger to you, be calm. Let
us sit.

They do so.

CYRUS (CONT'D)

My name is Cyrus Fervourlast. You
need not introduce yourselves. I
know who you are, besides Nova,
which puts me on edge.

OPTIONS:

MAIN

I'll gut anyone who crosses me. I'm
not scared of some old man. I think
you're scared of me, in fact.

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Judge me on my future. My past has
come and gone. I'm not the man I
was. Don't let it worry you.

OR:

MAIN (CONT'D)

I stole two Genesis Grenades. I was
a physicist. I even watched my
family die to the M4 virus. I'm a
fighter, fighting for peace and
avenenging my family, that's the
kind of guy I am. As long as you're
on our side, Cyrus, you needn't
fear me.

After OPTIONS:

CYRUS

I'm hardly "afraid". I have worked
at the TA for centuries, Nova, but
I have never come across a specimen
such as yourself.

MAIN

Specimen?

CYRUS

...Subject. Someone to be observed,
recorded, documented. There appears
to be absolutely nothing on record
about you. How is that even
possible?

ELZABETH

I have to side with my father on this. As things stand, I'm not sure I can trust you, Nova.

VARSH

Guys!

MAX

Where?!

VARSH

Not 'Guy', urgh. Everybody please calm down. Relax. None of them are a threat, I can assure you. I know more about Nova than any of the records state and he is a good man. I trust him.

ELZABETH

If Varsh trusts him, I trust Varsh's judgement. By the sound of it, he's done his research, father.

CYRUS

(To VARSH)

We've never met, Varsh. You have caused me nothing but ...concern, for my daughter's safety, but I respect her choices and do what I can to assist her. Regardless of the fact that you are not officially of the TA and I have never approved of your problematic behaviour, if she believes your conclusion then I will acknowledge it.

VARSH

Erm, thanks? There is one greater concern, however. Cyrus, the Astrology team are under your leadership...

CYRUS

I was never informed about these recent events. I merely directed this operation. I believed you to be just another critical target - someone that needed to be dealt with immediately. My agents received their orders from the top, I had no reason to question them.

ELZABETH

Guy? They got orders directly from Guy?

CYRUS

It's not uncommon.

VARSH

Just like how you received direct orders from him to eliminate my people... and me? Elizabeth, please, I need to know some things...

ELZABETH

...

CYRUS

How do you know about that? That information shouldn't even exist.

ALIZA

The restricted section of the library. It was full of all sorts of exciting books! Ahem, and one of which chronicled events on Varsh.

CYRUS

So, you know. Under my guidance, invisible to the eyes and ears which seek solidarity, Elizabeth hid that information in the one place Guy could never notice or read it - in the restricted section, where only books already read and examined are stored, left to gather dust.

ELZABETH

It was the only way to keep you alive, Varsh.

VARSH

I've been to the restricted section, I saw what you hid in there, Elizabeth. My past, my race, why didn't you tell me?

ELZABETH

Guilt, mostly. To know the organisation, that I'd pledged my life to, would do something so corrupt and morally wrong... We have rules, guidelines. Up until that day I thought we were working peacefully amongst the civilizations of the galaxies. I was wrong, of course, but I had little choice; once a member, always a member. There are only two ways out.

VARSH

Did you kill-

ELZABETH

No! I didn't kill anybody! I couldn't. They had done nothing to deserve it, YOU had done nothing to deserve it. My job was to observe you, I... I'd developed an attachment. You were far too young. That didn't make any of it right, but I couldn't let them hurt you. Varsh I-I'm sorry.

VARSH

...

PHOENIX

Oh, would you look at that, hey - some Napple Jack to take the taste of tension away! Just what I need, right about now.

ALIZA

I'm sure Elizabeth did what she could with only the purest of intentions, Varsh.

VARSH

...I'm not upset with Elizabeth; she's done so much for me, given me a chance to live! But I need to know why the deaths of so many were ordered... by Guy.

CYRUS

Guy, yes... anything of that magnitude could only be of his design. Nobody has ever questioned him... Nobody that wasn't quickly extinguished.

VARSH

And what about these "Shades"? Guy fears them, or has reason to dislike them enough that he'd hide from them. They were there, at the time.

ELZABETH

I had never seen them before that day, from out of nowhere they came and took people, it was terrifying! I assumed the TA had more secrets that even my father didn't know about, but I later heard we were to consider the Shades our enemies.

(MORE)

ELZABETH (CONT'D)

Dangerous beings. 'Avoid them at all costs!' so I was told.

VARSH

I'm not buying it, it doesn't make sense. I HATE not knowing. Too many things don't add up; I need to find out who they are, why they were there, and why Guy's got a problem with them.

LIONE

From what I understand, the Transcendence Alliance is run by Guy, who is both a Reality Council member; leader of the planet Yin, and a Cult of Kai member. If the leader is corrupt, then so is the TA. Nothing good will come of criminals.

CYRUS

It was never my intention to be a "criminal", miss ex-vice warden of the Galactic Preservation. Don't condemn me when your own leader, your warden, was corrupt, commanding you with twisted imperatives! Ask yourself one thing, Lione Burgess - if you'd known your leader was a member of the cult, would YOU have happily followed him?

LIONE

...No. So, I take it you've looked into a few details of our crew before meeting us? You're a well prepared man. It's true, even when Cyrril started doing some scrupulous things, I just assumed it was for a greater justice and purpose, within the Galactic Preservation. I refused to believe he was a criminal, himself, until... it was too late.

CYRUS

Hmph. Then you'll understand my position upon receiving Guy's questionable instructions. I trained my team, trained them to become killers, it seems. Faith can blind us to the truth. It's our hearts that we should, and must, follow.

VARSH

Then I've decided. My heart's
telling me to go back to that
shadowy planet from before.

MAX

Why do you wanna go back there?
Nothing but death and bleakness. No
doubt all the residents are emo and
listen to screamo rock.

LIONE

Sounds like someone I know...
called Max.

CYRUS

Be quiet, all of you! Why return to
a planet of death and darkness?

VARSH

For that exact reason. The memorial
had members of my race on it. Why?
I didn't live on that shadow world.
There's also the question of that
mysterious hooded figure. Whatever
my race has to with anything, the
Shades are closely involved. And
Guy dislikes them. I gotta find out
why.

ELZABETH

Then I'm coming, too.

CYRUS

You will not! Whether you trust
Varsh or not, he only continues to
grab you by the hand and lead you
into trouble, Elizabeth. Sleep on
it. Your minds are no doubt murky
with today's information. It's
late. You'll think more clearly in
the morning.

VARSH

I'm serious. We'll rest up and then
we're going, back to that shadow
world.

CYRUS

...Fine. The Astrology Group would
have left, by now, so no immediate
danger awaits your arrival. I will
return to the Zodiac Sphere for the
evening, and have them report to
me. If I'm to help my daughter,
then I will divert the Astrology
Group, as best I can.

VARSH

Good luck, old man.

PLAYER RESTS and then RESUMES CONTROL in the morning. Once they leave VARSH's house, having saved and selected a team, ELZABETH will use her entry-band to transport them back to the shadow planet. They appear somewhere new.

ELZABETH

We're a little off from the monument, this time. We have to make sure there are none of the Astrology Group still about. The monument's south of here. Let's go.

PLAYER resumes control through the corridors of traps and random encounters, as always. Story continues when they reach the monument in the courtyard, once more. They are surrounded by SHADES. The cloaked, hooded figure finally appears. He drops his hood to reveal ARTEMIS.

ARTEMIS

It's nice to see you again, little brother.

VARSH

Little... b-b...

ARTEMIS

Haha!

MAX

You're that boy those cloaked "Shades" abducted, in the past, right? We saw it from a book. We all thought you were dead.

ARTEMIS

Correct.

MAX

"Correct?" You were dead?

ARTEMIS

No, correct - I was that boy taken away.

KIM

So Varsh's race weren't all killed by the TA? Does this mean the "Shades" aren't evil people?

ARTEMIS

I've been in the care of the Shades for as long as I remember.

(MORE)

ARTEMIS (CONT'D)

Not quite the upbringing you'd expect - they're far from any normal living creature, but their intelligence and knowledge is vast... seemingly limitless. I'm sorry I couldn't reveal myself to you before now; there were reasons for that, some you may have even just come to realise.

VARSH

Guy?

ARTEMIS

Specifically, his goals and what they mean for everything in existence. He's trouble, on a scale so big it's difficult to comprehend. Please, come with us and we will explain more. Maybe you can help us? Meet me in the spire. We'll talk more, there.

ARTEMIS walks to a cathedral-esque spire. PLAYER resumes control and can do the usual - save, change party, etc. Story continues once they speak with ARTEMIS in there.

ARTEMIS (CONT'D)

My name is Artemis. Who are you?

LIONE

We're fighting the Cult of Kai, which Guy is a part of. That's all you need to know.

ARTEMIS

That is excellent to hear. I wish to discuss that subject, precisely - the take down of Guy. He is a being so powerful, that he was in fact created from the very dark matter that consumes the void.

MAIN

You're not possibly suggesting Guy was created by Rettam Krad, are you?!

ARTEMIS

In its very image, in fact, yes. Rettam Krad, creator of virtually all in the universe from his dark matter, first created Guy - a being in its very image that could do what Rettam Krad could, just on a smaller scale.

(MORE)

ARTEMIS (CONT'D)

Like an infant, Guy mimicked his parent and began to create things of his own design, through manipulating dark matter.

PHOENIX

Heavy stuff. So, surely Rettam Krad realised it made something too powerful?

ARTEMIS

Correct. Guy was their very first creation, a being of unintentional sentience. Easy to make mistakes without practice. He manipulated dark matter and left behind cracks in the universe. Rettam Krad, realising this, created more beings like Guy, but with more limited power - the Shades. It was their job to watch over Guy and keep him in check.

VARSH

Like siblings watching over their brother...

ARTEMIS

(Smiling)
Quite right, too.

ALIZA

So, Guy fears the Shades because they were supposed to keep him from using his power?

ARTEMIS

And the Shades could see into every shadow, wherever darkness touched, observe they would. From across the universe, they would watch Guy's every move... and yet, they didn't realise the most important thing - Guy was Rettam Krad's first creation. He was the prototype. He could do something the Shades could not, unbeknownst to all but Guy, himself - he could absorb light. And he did. He absorbed light, an energy source, from the cracks he created in the universe. His body became a container, a shell of solid dark matter and his insides, his organs, became light.

(MORE)

ARTEMIS (CONT'D)

Suddenly, Guy could manipulate powerful light energy, not just dark matter, and began to not just create things like his Shade brothers, but twist what was already created, perverting their work and making it his own. Guy began to manipulate and reshape the universe.

MAIN

So why's he stuck in some room of light if he's that powerful? Is it so that the Shades can't see what he's up to?

ARTEMIS

They can only see that which lay in shadow. This is why Guy resides in his Light Room and commands his Transcendence Alliance to do his bidding. He does not want the Shades to find him, or see what he's up to.

ALIZA

Sounds like an ego-maniac, to me. He's like some twisted puppet master, sitting on his throne and making people do the dirty work for him. No one should belong to anyone else.

VARSH

Artemis, b-brother, it's good to see you again, but this is a lot to take in. I have so many questions. How do you even know all this?

ARTEMIS

These beings you see around us, they are the Shades that remain, my dear brother. They have told me everything. We must strike him down, Guy mustn't be allowed to continue his work!

SHADE

Greetings, Varsh. We meet again.

VARSH

So that's who you are! The whispered voices, the ones who helped me escape back at the library. Thank you.

SHADE

We cannot stop Guy within his Light Room. We cannot physically deal with a being which wields light. His tampering of the universe derives from his own delusional ideals. He reaches for control of everything. We need to reduce him to nothing. We need you.

ELZABETH

You need us?! The Shades... need *US*.

SHADE

Guy does not ordinarily look humanoid. He has shaped his dark matter shell by the light source within. We must shatter his shell. We must break him open. We must make him lose his light.

ARTEMIS

We've waited for so long, here, waiting for help. I'm so glad it was you who came, Varsh. You're the best we could hope for.

VARSH

I'm nothing special, but I'll do what I can.

ELZABETH

My family bloodline is strong. My father and I not only have immense power, but we replicate our blood at an accelerated rate and can shape it into weapons. I'm just as much involved in this as you are, Varsh, there are too few of my race left to let Guy control us. We'll take him down together.

MAIN

The odds may seem stacked in Guy's favour, but with all of us working as one, we can take down this Cult of Kai member. I guess there's only one place Guy would be, right now, and that's his Light Room. Let's go.

ELZABETH opens a portal on her entry-band and they all head to the TA. They are, once again, in the large confines of the TA... except it is devoid of all people, this time. Empty.

KIM

I'm sensing... no life. Where did everyone go?

ELZABETH

This is ... impossible. Suspicious. The TA resides in its own pocket-sized dimension. There's nowhere to go to. I'm worried about my father... let's find him, before we do anything else. Head north and we'll find the Zodiac Sphere, it's his base of operations.

PLAYER resumes control in the empty TA. There are random battles in a mostly empty environment. Eventually, they reach the Zodiac Sphere, where a note sits, waiting. The area is much like a training ground, but equally an observatory with models of the universe and the stars. The building area is raised above group level, much like an observatory, also. When PLAYER reads note:

CYRUS (NOTE)

I haven't much time. I have gone to confront Guy, our false God. Run. Run and hide from the TA, Elizabeth. Our bloodline must remain safe, it must survive.

- Cyrus.

ELZABETH

That... fluffing fool!

ALIZA

There's still time. If we run to Guy's "Light Room" place, we still can save him. We're heading to face Guy, after all, ourselves.

TAURUS bursts in, at that moment.

TAURUS

Fwehehe! You'll never make it in one piece. We have orders to send Nova and his crew into oblivion!

The other Astrology Group members enter, every single one of them, looking smug and victorious.

AQUARIUS

You fluffing fluffers, fluffing up all the fluff.

PHOENIX

Er... come again?

LEO

Yeah, I *HAVE* come again..

LEO enters, looking a bit battered from their last encounter.
He spots ELZABETH.

ELZABETH

Back for more, Leo? My father was the who trained you. I have strength similar to his own, I could beat you in a fight, that much we both know. Drop the scock and let us pass. I haven't got time to waste with the likes of you!

LEO

Cyrus may lead us, gal, and I might be second in charge here, but... but our orders are from the top. Guy is our one true saviour.

MAX

You don't actually believe he is your God, do you? You're even more naive than I thought.

ARTEMIS

It's not his fault. Guy has manipulated thousands, twisting the beliefs of beings all over the galaxies into serving him, making them believe he was a God. That's how he acquired so many followers at the TA. They truly believe they are recording information of the cosmos for their God, who will reshape the mistakes of his past and into a better future. A promised land.

LEO

I don't recognise your new friend, but it doesn't matter. I-I'll fight to the death and defend Guy from runts like yourselves. He need not waste his time on vermin - that the job of lesser men... and lions.

PHOENIX

You can still give up, Leo. I'm not the one holding the grudge, here. You can join us in our fight against Guy... and the Cult of Kai.

LEO

I-it's too late. I will fulfill my duty... otherwise, I'll face imminent death from Guy.

PHOENIX

So you don't believe in Guy as your God, after all? Come on, Leo, drop the-

LEO

Silence! Taurus, Scorpio, Aquarius... back me up. Let this be our last fight, Phoenix. Let us die... together.

BOSS FIGHT 16: LEO, TAURUS, AQUARIUS and SCORPIO.

AQUARIUS creates defensive measures for LEO, SCORPIO creates buffs for LEO and TAURUS charges at the PLAYER, debuffing them and preparing them for LEO's attacks. LEO has far more health than the others.

In-battle dialogue, at end of fight:

LEO (CONT'D)

(A tear in his eye)

My game has been played ... I-I'm done, I've lost. There's... there's nothing for me, now. Just the end...

PHOENIX

You don't have to do this, Leo! We're not going to kill you!

LEO

Never doubted ya... but that isn't your purpose. Allow me to fulfil mine.

FIGHT ENDS.

The other Astrology Group members attempt to help LEO.

LEO (CONT'D)

Let go of me! L-let me stand alone.

PHOENIX

I told you, already - we can stand together! Come on, we'll beat Guy and then have a bottle of Woozy Whiskey each, just like the old days.

LEO is silent as he stumbles towards the edge of the Zodiac Sphere. He stares out into the sky and open window around them, before turning to face PHOENIX and the others.

LEO

T-thank you Phoenix, for being an... an inspiration.
(MORE)

LEO (CONT'D)

B-but my heart'll never forgive
you, even though my brain does.
It's too late for me. Now that
I've... stood alone, I must... fall
alone..

LEO raises in arms, either side of him, and falls backwards,
silently, into the abyss and down from the height of the
observatory.

PHOENIX

NO!

The other Astrology Group members turn to one another, having
lost LEO.

TAURUS

Fwehe...he... I guess Leo couldn't
hold on... any more. Nothing else
to live for... even his freedom
puppeteered by Guy.

SCORPIO

You have shown us true strength. I
believe you can take Guy, with the
help of Cyrus. None of us truly
wish to serve beneath him. We never
had a choice, before now. Head
further north and you will find his
Light Room. We will see you there.

The Astrology Group leave.

ELZABETH

My father is waiting. Without the
TA, Guy is nothing. I don't care
what my father wrote, we're going
to help him, the Astrology Group
and the Shades defeat Guy.

PLAYER resumes control to continue throughout the TA.
Eventually, PLAYER will enter a large, white room, seemingly
without borders. GUY floats ahead of them, somehow central.
CYRUS is facing GUY, to the side. He turns to face the PLAYER
as they enter.

CYRUS

I knew you'd come, because you're
my daughter. Damn stubborn.

ELZABETH

(Chuckling)
No more stubborn than you, you are
my father after all.

CYRUS

(Chuckling in response)
Haha...

MAX

Look, Nova, they've gone insane.

CYRUS

Not insane, just relieved. Elizabeth is still safe and now by my side. I have requested that Guy let us go, that he end this foolish game of his. I have been ignored.

ELZABETH

So this is the "God", himself? I've never seen him in the "Flesh" before, being led by the faith he spread, you could say. He doesn't look all that impressive to me.

VARSH

Is he just going to stand there watching us?

(To GUY)

Shade got your tongue, Guy?

GUY

Too predictable.

ELZABETH

Excuse me?

GUY

You're all too predictable. I was waiting to see what you would do, once in my presence. If I were expecting a surprise, I'd have been disappointed. You have all played straight into my physical palm, ready to be crushed... even Nova.

MAIN

We've "been played"?

ARTEMIS

No. You aren't serious...! We were lured here?

GUY

I have no need to joke, particularly with the lower life forms of the universe. You've realised far too late, Artemis.

VARSH

Lured? No, I refuse to believe that we've been nothing more than marionettes, puppeteered by your strings. What would you have to gain from that, Guy?

GUY

I shall indulge your curiosity, Varsh, and I shall rob you of your hope, Nova. You were all merely pieces in my game - pawns. Did you truly believe that I was ignorant - too blind to see what was happening within my own alliance? I was well aware of the events that transpired with Elizabeth and yourself, Varsh. I've known all along. Every "overlooked" mistake; every attempt to hide information from me, has been because I have allowed it. I have seen it all. Wherever light may shine, my gaze is upon it.

ELZABETH

No way, that can't be true. After all these years, after everything I've done to protect Varsh... you knew

GUY

A valiant effort, but unsuccessful all the same.

ELZABETH

...Scock.

GUY

I look at you all, you who stand before me now, and I laugh. The shades have undoubtedly brought you here on tales of truth in my upbringing and creation. Those ghastly brothers of mine, those Shades, have only done so because I will it. You are all here because I want you here. You all forget that I am a God, I control all things! Who was it that created the TA to observe the universe whilst I hid in this room of light? Me. Who was it that used the TA as his hands, to murder so many of those jealous Shades? Me. And who was it that made sure Elizabeth would not kill her target, just another Shade, but enlist him in the TA? Me. Varsh, you are here because I command it. You are but one Shade I never killed, just disregarded.

VARSH

What?!

ARTEMIS

...It's true, Varsh. You and I were created by the Shades for the soul purpose for striking back at Guy. We are "vessels" for the Shades to inhabit, to possess, as their shell and body - we are Shades to come. When Guy absorbed the light from the cracks in the universe, he became able to manipulate matter in a way the Shades could not... and also became something the Shades could not strike back at so easily. The Shades need our bodies to do this. We are both the Shades that Guy never managed to kill...

MAIN

So you're saying that Varsh and Artemis are... made of the same stuff as Guy and the Shades? They're essentially dark matter?

ARTEMIS

We have the potential to manipulate darkness and use power on a similar level, yes. But we were never complete without the Shades. We were created by them as a "vessel"... a vessel to carry a Shade when the time was right.

VARSH

This is all too much, I'm having a hard time taking it all in.

ELZABETH

You lead us here so you could remove Varsh and Artemis, is that it, Guy?

GUY

I need not answer a question so stupid with an answer so obvious

MAIN

It isn't just Varsh and Artemis, Elizabeth, it's the entirety of the Shades! Guy used their association with the Shades to lure them all out... so he could kill all those remaining Shades!

GUY

The last who remain, yes. Which leads me to you, Nova. Why, I have played the long game with you.

(MORE)

GUY (CONT'D)

Those Genesis Grenades, which you created, were destructive. Too destructive. That low-life, Viktor Len, would have used that power to access the void and gain control over me. I would never allow that to happen. I must enter the void alone and through my own means. So, I had to remove you until the time was right. Stasis served you well.

MAIN

You couldn't possibly have known Cyrril would crash my prison ship into the void, though! And now I'm back, ready to rid the cosmos of all members of the Cult of Kai. The universe will not be shaped by your ego-mania.

GUY

Despite the fact it was I who gave Cyrril the idea to crash the ship and awaken you from Stasis? Your disbelief blinds you, Nova, I'm simply two steps ahead of your pitiful comprehension. I needed you woken up, so I gave Cyrril a push to do so, since he was clearly too happy with my idea to heat up Hudokai to immense proportions. I needed you to gain some of your memories back before leading you here, so I could now gain the location of the Genesis Grenade. It's time. I require access to the void and your knowledge has the means to do so. Viktor Len will no longer be able to follow me.

VARSH

Are you saying... you manipulated events so that I would watch Nova, once he came out of the void, and cause the whole chain of events from planet Yin onwards?

GUY

Correct. I have lured you all here, including the Shades. They have followed you to my dimension and have chosen not to use you as "vessels", instead trusting in you to destroy me... but now they're trapped here. I have succeeded in gathering together all who oppose my ultimate goals and in due course, I will dispose of them.

ELZABETH

Not if I can help it! Guy, we won't stand by and do nothing; it all ends here, enough is enough! You will feel the fury of a hot blooded Fervourlast.

ELZABETH launches a devastating attack on GUY with her blood powers and multiple blade slashes. GUY looks on, unimpressed, taking the brunt of the attack and not even flinching. He then sounds out an immense shockwave, knocking everyone back, all except ELZABETH and CYRUS, who only fall back a little, clearly strong enough to take the shockwave.

GUY

Do you not understand what I intend to do? I wish to bring order to the chaos of the universe - create perfection. I have gathered information for centuries, storing it for the purpose of re-shaping it. Information, knowledge... it originates from the nothing from which it came. Everything came from my father, Rettam Krad. It is all a piece of him. Knowledge is power. With the right understanding, with the ability to control and manipulate it, knowledge taken from history, at nobody else's finger tips but my own, I can use it to recreate this confused and tangled universe. And with you here, Nova, ready to open the way to the void even if Viktor can not, I will have enough power to do this with ease. No more waiting. Give me your knowledge regarding the Genesis Grenade so I can create the suitable eruption of heat to rupture a direct portal to the void.

MAIN

That information... is classified! There are some things not worth knowing about, from the past, including perhaps my own history.

GUY

What little you know. The future is perfect.

ARTEMIS

Perfection is subjective, it's an unreachable delusion.

(MORE)

ARTEMIS (CONT'D)

By attempting to organise and change existence as we know it, you're upsetting the delicate balance - chaos and disorder are the natural order of things. All you'd be doing is fulfilling a corrupt desire to control and maintain everything; no free will, no room for evolution.

GUY

You're all so pathetic; Tiny, insignificant, distractions.

GUY appears before ELZABETH, instantly, and grabs her neck.

ELZABETH

Father-

There is a snap, a crack. ELZABETH falls to the floor, unmoving.

VARSH

(Desperate, furious)

No! Elizabeth! ARGH, GUY!!!

GUY

Nothing more than disposable pieces, fragile, wasteful.

PHOENIX

Disposable?! Now I understand what you Cult of Kai members do - you take the free-willed and forge them into tools for your own needs! Leo was wasted on you guys! Wasted! And now... now, you've snapped the neck of an innocent young woman! A free future is what I'm fighting for, and it damn well isn't the one you're crafting, Guy!

CYRUS looks at his daughter, silently, before exploding with rage.

CYRUS

ARGHHHH!!!

CYRUS unleashes a huge attack on GUY, taking him by surprise.

GUY

Cyrus? I did not expect such treachery.

CYRUS

(Tearful)

My daughter...

(MORE)

CYRUS (CONT'D)

I'll make you suffer for this, Guy.
I'm not weak, you should know.

CYRUS launches boiling, bloody blades at GUY; a seemingly ceaseless barrage of circular blades. Every blade that strikes GUY explodes into a cloud of steam, obscuring all vision of GUY. A fierce onslaught. Eventually, CYRUS tires and the steam clears. GUY emerges, still alive, but wounded.

GUY

I-impossible.

CYRUS

My strength... is spent. Varsh,
please. For Elizabeth. Don't fail
me.

VARSH

(Equally emotional)
I intend not to.

SHADE

We can help... we crafted your
body. You are like we. Your body is
refined dark matter. Be the shade
who defeats Guy. You can craft his
destruction. Create, like us.

The screen flashes. Everyone looks confused. VARSH is in an emotional state.

CYRUS

Varsh, your emotions...

VARSH

I-I feel it. This power... of
course, I understand, now! My
emotions have shorted the entry-
bands because I'm essentially a
Shade. I have their power! I can
reshape dark matter to my whim in
this emotional state... and I can
pull you apart, Guy!

GUY

Remember, I established the rule
that your emotions were to be
suppressed. That entire rule was
designed for you, Varsh. I could
not allowed you to discover such
power, should you try to defy me
before I led you here. I took such
precautions... all wasted! I am
wounded... by mere mortals.

KIM

Such power, but we should only
fight when we are ready.

(MORE)

KIM (CONT'D)

I sense Guy will not strike until we do, first.

PLAYER can save the game and change their party before continuing. Story continues once they speak with GUY, who stands there, floating.

GUY

Ungh! This is impossible. You are nothing! I am a God! Astrology Group, disembowel these wretched creatures!

AQUARIUS

You fluffing kidding me? We've decided we're no longer your "pawns". Leo's gone, because of you. We're just here to watch you twisted son of a scok destroy himself.

GUY

Curse you, Aquarius! Then I must sully my hands and prove why no mere mortal can ever stand against their God. Prepare to fall.

BOSS FIGHT 17: GUY.

At the end of the fight, the SHADES, ARTEMIS, CYRUS and VARSH launch in and complete the final blows to GUY. GUY's outer shell dissolves and unleashes his absorbed light into the open. In-battle dialogue:

GUY (CONT'D)

My light... NO!

GUY dissolves into nothingness. The fight ends.

VARSH

The TA is no more.

LIONE

Guy was the third member of the Cult of Kai to receive his comeuppance. Leo and Elizabeth can rest easy, now.

ARTEMIS

How do you feel, brother?

VARSH

Like a weight has been lifted from one shoulder, but the other still weighs heavily. Guy slaughtered millions. Who's to say the rest of this "Cult of Kai" won't do the same?

ALIZA

They have. They will continue, too,
unless we stop them.

CHOICES:

MAIN

Elizabeth's death isn't your fault.
I just want you to know that,
Varsh.

VARSH

I-I won't stop blaming myself for
Elizabeth's death. I can't. I let
her lead us here. I watched as her
neck was snapped.

PHOENIX

Then do yourself a favour. Join us.
You'll never have to watch,
helplessly, as someone dies in
front of you, again. You can be an
active member in the take down of
the cult.

VARSH

If they're all like Guy, then... I
have to. I've got to fight, for
Elizabeth. The Cult of Kai are
vicious. They must be stopped.

OR:

MAIN

We led Elizabeth to her death. We
could have stopped her and we
didn't. This is our fault.

VARSH

I-I watched on as she died. I felt
so helpless... but I've found new
strength. I've decided. I must
rebuild the TA in her honour.

ALIZA

Rebuild the TA?! Are you insane?

VARSH

The TA can be used for good. We can
undo Guy's work and with my power,
I can make it happen. Once the deed
is done, we'll then dismantle the
TA for good.

After choices:

CYRUS

You do whatever is right in your heart, Varsh. All I care is that you do it for Elizabeth. I will support that decision. You aren't quite the delinquent I first thought you as.

VARSH

Thank you, Cyrus.

CYRUS

I... would like a burial for my daughter. Varsh, please carry her. Follow me.

VARSH picks up ELZABETH and carries her out of the Light Room. MAIN and crew follow.

FADE TO:

EXT. PLANET YIN - SUNSET.

MAIN and the crew, along with VARSH, CYRUS and ARTEMIS, watch ELZABETH's body drift across the opening of the river, to the sea, in a boat. The boat sets alight. They watch as a sorrowful tune plays. Silence for a while.

VARSH

Elizabeth protected and guided me. Now it's time we remember her and move on, her memory continuing to guide us, always.

CYRUS

I must return. Leo also fought valiantly and I feel there is much to fix. Are you ready for your future, Varsh?

If VARSH has decided to come with the PLAYER:

VARSH

Nova has helped us with so much. The least I can do is travel with him and help in the fight against the Cult of Kai. In Elizabeth's memory.

If VARSH has decided to stay:

VARSH (CONT'D)

Thank you, Nova. You've helped us immensely. I now have the strength of dark matter to reshape things at the TA.

(MORE)

VARSH (CONT'D)

I wish you all the best in your
quest, to destroy the rest of the
Cult of Kai. Good luck, my friend.

After options, if PLAYER has the Genesis Grenade:

LIONE

Our next stop is a planet close to
my heart. The next stop is...
Delfa.

If PLAYER has yet to receive Genesis Grenade:

LIONE (CONT'D)

Now we know that the Genesis
Grenade is hidden underground on
Planet Canary, we will head there,
next. We need to reach it before
V.Len and his cult do.

After:

MAIN

Now... onwards, to a better future.

They jump into the prison ship and it blasts off. END OF TA.

GALACTIC WAR

MAX

Thinking about it, it seems a coincidence Ben came from the same planet as me.

LIONE

He didn't. Our home planet was Delfa, nearby. Ben was transferred to the planet Canary for the orphanage.

MAX

Seems weird.

LIONE

Not really... My home planet was always at war with its neighbour, Kernow-Theta, for resources. I lost most things to that war... when I was given a chance at the GP, I set out to right my wrongs, become the law... and never return to Delfa.

MAX

So Ben was transferred for safety... seems legit. So, like, no one answered, earlier - where now? The Cult of Kai's secret HQ of secretness?

[VARSH]

Secret base? How exciting! I'm certain we can amass the information of its location. We then take the fight to their front door.

LIONE

Wait... something big's come up on the radar.

MAX looks out the window.

MAX

You don't need a scanner thing to figure out what's out there. Fluffing hell!

PHOENIX

There must be at least 50 ships out there heading this way! Ready to fight for our freedom?

LIONE
None of those ships are registering
signs of life. They can't be...
kamikaze ships?!

An EXPERIMENT enemy attacks MAIN from behind.

ALIZA
Nova, watch out!

MAIN fights an EXPERIMENT. After fight:

MAIN
I'm not waiting around to find out
why that experiment was on this
ship. I'm willing to bet they're
more that have boarded the ship.

LIONE
The alarms didn't go off... and no
life-signs are being registered but
us!

KIM
Those ships must be full of those
experiments!

Choices:

MAIN
I'll take them all down!

MAX
Not before I do!

MAIN
Is that a challenge?

MAX
We'll go across the ship with Kim
[and Varsh].

KIM
I-I'm scared. I wish Tom was here.
I wish I could stay with Lione.

OR

MAIN
Lione! You take them down.

LIONE
*I'll need help. Aliza, Phoenix -
with me!*

[VARSH]
*Phew. For a minute, there, I
thought you were gonna pick me.*

[LIONE]

You too, Varsh. You could do with a work-out.

PHOENIX

Meanwhile, I'll reckon you should concentrate on sealing the landing bay, Nova, so no more can get on.

After options:

[VARSH]

All this excitement exhausts the mind. Do I have to do this?

MAIN

If you want to live, you'll follow orders. Let's go.

PLAYER must travel on the ship with the chosen team, taking down all the EXPERIMENTS. Story resumes when all have been gotten rid of and return to the cockpit.

KIM

They're all gone. The ship is protected, once more.

[VARSH]

Phew! It's been a long time since my muscles have had such a work out. I know from surveying experience that those experiments are just the scout party. The cavalry are coming!

Camera peaks outside to show lots of ships materialising in the vicinity.

MAX

It's the fuzz! Get down! It's almost like they were summoned to our location or something!

KIM

I felt an energy signal. It made the ships come here.

PHOENIX

There's no way this is coincidence. The Capitarl used to use this trick on Chimera, all the time. Their guard often had wrist cuffs which would absorb energy and turn it into an external energy signal to draw more Capitarl to their location. This stinks of Penny Greyback's technology.

KIM

A message is coming through on the monitor. Maybe it's... Tom?

Screen appears with PENNY GREYBACK on - the scientist and weapons specialist from Planet Duskwight and the Cult of Kai.

[VARSH]

We get signal.

PENNY

How are you, gentlemen?

PHOENIX

All your ships are explode by us.
You have no chance to survive. Make your time-

PENNY

No, stupid fox, all the Hudokai are belong to us - the Cult of Kai.

PHOENIX

You mean-?

PENNY

We have found a way of accessing the void. Commencing Operating Puppet! Delfa won't know what hit it, ehehehehehe!

LIONE

Delfa? My home?! You wouldn't dare!

PENNY

Then come and stop us, Lione Burgess.

The screen closes. Communications cease.

MAIN

The cult are here and one thing's for certain - we must reach that Penny Greyback and stop an attack on Delfa!

LIONE

...Thank you, Nova.

PLAYER is launched into the tactics style battle system as their ship aims to reach PENNY's. Lots of EXPERIMENTS are in the way. Once PENNY has been reached and defeated, MAIN and co. board PENNY's ship.

MAIN

All right, where's the rest of your cult?

PENNY
Waiting. You fell right into our
trap!

CYRRIL WAR appears from the shadows, on the ship.

CYRRIL
Now, Kim!

CUT-SCENE of KIM slicing off LIONE's hand. LIONE falls to her
knees in agony. CUT-SCENE ends.

LIONE
F-FLUFFING FLUFF! My fluffing hand!

ALIZA
K-Kim? Don't tell me you're...
you're...

CYRRIL
Now give the hand to your TRUE
Protector.

KIM
I'm sorry.

KIM gives LIONE's hand to CYRRIL.

Choices:

MAIN
*What would Tom say if he saw you
now? You betrayed us, Kim!*

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
I knew you weren't right. Ever
since the Warden confronted you in
the Nexus.

After choices:

KIM
Cyrril offered me protection where
you failed...

CYRRIL
Poor little Kim felt threatened by
your disregard of life. I saw this
and offered my chance to protect
her, but only if she got me Lione's
bone DNA.

LIONE
(Pained)
You scum! You're just fluffing
using her!

KIM

I didn't have to do this. I could have backed out at any point... and I almost did... but then Cyrril revealed he was a Protector to Ben... and I knew he would protect me.

ALIZA

Kim, I can't believe you'd turn against us after everything we've been through!

RIZUMU

What about our friendship, Kim? Weren't you happy? Don't leave.

KIM

Everything is going as predicted.

CYRRIL

And now, Kim, you will come with me. The White Wolf Pirates are waiting.

PHOENIX

The White Wolf Pirates? As in, the White Wolf Pirates headed by Malcolm the Dogged? I've heard about those notorious rogues. Since when did the GP work with crooks? Oh right, since you become crooks, yourselves. You're Cyrril, right? You make me sick.

CYRRIL

We will manipulate the war between Delfa and Kernow-Theta... and you just sit back and enjoy the fireworks. Come, Kim, we have a trade to make with Lione's hand...

CYRRIL and KIM leave. PENNY pulls out a weapon and blasts MAIN and co. back, away from them.

PENNY

Better prepare yourselves for an air-lockin' good time! Ehehehe!

PENNY leaves through a door.

MAIN

Air-lock?! We're gonna get sucked out into space! Scock!

A hatch opens. Everyone is sucked out into space. And just in time, a GP ship appears, complete with KOEL, ITAMI, STEVE, HEIDI and JIAN. The ship scoops them up and into their air shield.

KOEL

Just in time! Did you miss us?

ALIZA

Koel! What a breath of fresh air!

KOEL

That'll be the air shield, darl.

MAX

Dad! Y-you saved our lives... T-th-

KOEL

Come on, say it...

MAX

When I'm ready. I've still not quite forgiven you, yet.

KOEL

Ain't you lot happy we saved your backsides?

CHOICES:

MAIN

Fluff no.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

For real.

AFTER CHOICES:

STEVE

I figured as much.

ALIZA

Steve's here, too? Heidi, Jian...

ITAMI

And me!

ALIZA

So you followed through with your group idea?

KOEL

We're the Liberation of Intergalactic Turmoil.

PHOENIX
You're... "LIT"?

KOEL
Damn straight.

PHOENIX
You guys... I could make some
sweet, foxy love to you all, right
now.

STEVE
Please don't.

KOEL
What we WILL do, however, is do
what we can in this battlefield. I
heard V.Len wants to trade
something with space pirates.
There'll be a strong purpose behind
that, so we're gonna track those
pirates down.

MAIN
Thank you, Koel.

Now... we can either help stop the
warden trading Lione's hand white
the White Wolf Pirates, or head
straight for Delfa.

GAMEPLAY occurs, back in space.

WHEN DELFA IS REACHED:

PHOENIX
More ships! They look like part of
the Reality Council's...

LIONE
That's a war ship!

A transmission comes through on the ship's screen.

V.LEN
You treacherous dogs made it, then.
Welcome to my master plan,
Operation Puppet.

Choices:

MAIN
V.Len! You're going down here and
now!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

V.Len! You're an even worse criminal than me.

After choices:

V.LEN

Don't flatter yourself. You're only here because I made you come here. You're an integral part of this plan... to enter the void. The Nexus.

LIONE

Surely the warden could take you back? He's already been there once.

V.LEN

He can't bring anyone else back... his ship has been destroyed.

PHYLLIS

That's right, Slee brains. The ship needs to have made the trip to the void, already. The surrounding Void Stuff can take us back. Thinking about it, YOU still have such a ship, don't you?

ALIZA

Yeah, well you're not getting it back, random... V.LEN PA person!

PHYLLIS

Oh, the cheek of that girl! At least know who I am! It's Phyllis! After all, I know who YOU all are, especially Nova. After all, who could ever forget who wiped out the Nerezza family?

ALIZA

I take it that's YOUR family?

V.LEN

Indeed. But now I'M her family. Rest assured, we will both take back what life has unceremoniously stolen from us... Starting now.

PHOENIX

Hang on, there are other council ships appearing... and someone else is attacking them!

SGT. SAKI - REBEL LEADER

The rebellion against the Reality Council will strike you down!

PHOENIX

Rebellion? But... the council aren't all members of the cult. They're innocent! Only V.Len and a few others are the volatile ones!

V.LEN

Correct. Too bad they cannot hear you at this distance. They have been manipulated to remove the council's interference. After all... I have framed the council for starting this war on Delfa and Kernow-Theta in the first place.

MAIN

What?! Why?

V.LEN

Because they've caught wind of my plans. The council are aware of the Cult of Kai. You were not entirely unsuccessful in your testimony, criminal. But this is where it all changes. I won't allow you onto Delfa. Not until I want you there...

Communication ceases.

PHOENIX

Damn him and his flapping beak. We could sure use some kinda funky sci-fi teleporter right about now.

LIONE

Only those war ships have one of those. They teleport down to the planet leader's base of operation. There's no way we are getting on board V.Len's ship, though. We'll have to find our own way down to Delfa.

WHEN THE WHITE WOLF PIRATES AND WARDEN ARE REACHED:

Communication opens between ships.

PENNY

The trade has been completed, ehehehehe! The hand belongs to the White Wolf Pirates.

LIONE

I may have been able to seal off my wrist from further blood loss, but that doesn't mean I forgive you for taking my hand!

A dark, dog-faced man appears on the communication screen, a rough beard at the bottom of his jaw.

MAIN

You must be Malcolm the Dogged,
head of the White Wolf Pirates.

MALCOLM

We will now take the hand back to
that cur, Francesco, leader of
planet Kernow-Theta.

CYRRIL

Pleasure doing business. We now
have what we wanted. It may not be
the Genesis Grenade, but this M4
Virus will do.

MAIN

Ungh!

PHOENIX

M4 Virus? Wasn't that the virus
eradicated from a supernova, years
ago?

MAX

Daaaaaaamn. How the hell did they
recreate it?

MAIN

No. No! That virus must not exist.
I refuse to let it!

KOEL

Malcolm the Dogged of the White
Wolf Pirates, huh? Yeah, your
reputation proceeds you. So, what,
you're trading for the fluffing
riches? Is that it?

MALCOLM

Money is everything in life, you
little pup.

It can buy you power and happiness.
I'm not doing it for the Chronoss.
I'm doing it for everything. Now
fluff off.

Communication closes. CYRRIL's ship gets in between PLAYER's
ship and the pirate ship. The WHITE WOLF PIRATES fly off.

AFTER BOTH WHITE WOLF PIRATES AND DELFA REACHED, ABOVE:

LIONE

Pass the Stasis Hudokai.

MAIN

Why?

LIONE

I have a plan. One of us has to touch down on Delfa, my home planet. It is rich with minerals. I think V.Len plans to blow up the planet, although I don't know what with. There isn't an explosive strong enough... unless...

MAIN

The Genesis Grenade. But he doesn't have it. We do. And there's no way he's getting it. That just leaves one of us needing to reach the White Wolf Pirates and destroying the M4 Virus, before it-

LIONE

Urrrrrgh!

MAX

I have that effect on women.

LIONE

My mind! It's... burning! It feels like it's about to explode!

PHOENIX

I can tell when something's about to explode. Nova, something's seriously wrong with Lione. Maybe she's due her bath?

Choices:

MAIN

Well, she is a dog.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

She looks like she's constipated.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

No, she looks seriously ill.

After choices:

ALIZA

This is serious!

LIONE

...

MAX

Lione?

LIONE

I'm fine.

BLAKE

What the fluff was that about? You had Aliza scared.

LIONE

I... couldn't keep a hold of my emotions, anymore. Nova... I... love you.

BLAKE

Love is a pointless emotion. It reveals weakness in others. And I don't believe you're weak, Lione.

LIONE

Kiss me. Come to me and kiss me, Nova...

Choices:

MAIN

(DO IT)

PLAYER approaches LIONE.

LIONE

I've wanted to embrace you for so long and... take this Genesis Grenade from your grip!

LIONE steals the Genesis Grenade and pushes MAIN away.

MAIN

You... tricked me! You aren't the Lione I know.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

(DON'T DO IT)

MAIN (CONT'D)

With all due respect, Lione... you have dog breath.

PHOENIX

Oh, buuuuurn!

LIONE

My feelings... crushed.

MAX

Don't take it badly. I've ditched tonnes of girls and they were all psychos.

PHOENIX

How does that help anything?
She's... crying?! Maybe you'd better speak to her, Nova?

PLAYER goes to LIONE and speaks to her. Same lines as in previous option:

LIONE

I've wanted to embrace you for so long and... take this Genesis Grenade from your grip!

LIONE steals the Genesis Grenade and pushes MAIN away.

MAIN

You... tricked me! You aren't the Lione I know.

After choices:

BLAKE

Her eyes have changed. You should've listened to me.

LIONE

I now have the Genesis Grenade! I, Francesco, will finally win the war against planet Delfa!

PHOENIX

Sorry to burst your balls, pal, well... not that you have any right now, but that Genesis Grenade's ours!

PHOENIX leaps towards LIONE, his gauntlet out-stretched. LIONE suddenly uses the Stasis Hudokai to freeze PHOENIX in mid-air.

MAX

The Stasis Hudokai? I always knew that bitch was out to get us!

BLAKE

No, she's being controlled by this Francesco guy. Use your brains, moron. This must be what operation puppet is - control of another being.

LIONE

Through the DNA of Lione Burgess,
no less; a resident of planet
Delfa. And through the enemy, I'll
be able to land on Delfa as a
resident. It'll be a breeze! I,
Francesco, leader of Kernow-Theta,
will finally win this war. So long.

LIONE-FRANCESCO uses the Stasis Hudokai on everyone, before
discarding it and leaving it on the ship, with them. LIONE
leaves through an escape pod on the Prison Ship. Everyone
starts to move, once more, freed from Stasis.

BLAKE

Bloody Stasis Hudokai! So much for
Lione's plan. We need to move.
Aliza, take over!

ALIZA

No need to shout. When the going
gets tough, the Blake gets going.

MAIN

New plan: We separate into multiple
ships. We've taken down enough of
those experiments to take their
empty vessels. That way, we can
separate and stand a better chance.

PHOENIX

I'm not an expert on strategy, but
I learnt a thing or two at Chimera.
That rebellion, against the
council, could be a powerful ally
if one of us reaches their base.
Given the location of their ships,
I'd say it's on Delfa's moon.

ALIZA

And one of us has to rescue Kim! I
don't care what she says. She's
misguided. Rizumu is restless. One
of us is to attack the Warden's
ship.

MAX

All right, that gives us four
ships. Let's show them hell... and
prove that I can live up to being a
Death Bringer with Roke's scythe!

GAMEPLAY continues. Choose SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #1 - PHOENIX GOING TO THE REBELLION:

PHOENIX must navigate a plethora of Rebellion ships, who will
attack. Eventually, when he reaches the Delfa moon:

SGT. SAKI - REBEL LEADER
 You're surrounded. You're due for
 destruction. You may say one word
 to save your life.

PHOENIX
 Chimera.

SGT. SAKI - REBEL LEADER
 You... know of that rebellion on
 planet Duskwight?

PHOENIX
 It's the reason I'm here. A
 rebellion is powerful. It uprisers
 against the power and voices the
 concerns of the people... in force.
 I'm here to tell you that you're
 targeting the wrong people.

SGT. SAKI - REBEL LEADER
 The Reality Council plans to shape
 everything once they reach the
 void's Hudokai. Millions will be
 killed. They are corrupt.

PHOENIX
 The Cult of Kai are the ones you
 should be after. Not all the
 council are cult members. Only some
 are, including the leader, V.Len!

SGT. SAKI - REBEL LEADER
 If what you say is true... all
 right, men, focus attack on V.Len
 And any others that Phoenix outs.
 We're after the Cult of Kai!

Rebellion ships will no longer be enemies to fight against on
 the Galactic Map. They will now help out, instead. SGT. SAKI
 will become playable as a guest character.

End of SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #2 - ALIZA CHASING KIM:

ALIZA must navigate her ship to the Warden, CYRRIL's ship.
 Once reached, communications will open:

ALIZA
 Kim! Please! I know who you are.
 You're not this. Don't let the
 Warden trick you!

CYRRIL

Pesky rat. Alone, you will fall.
It's time to crank it up a GEAR.

Several ships appear, containing GEARS.

GEAR 009

Gear 009 here, ready for carnage,
great Protector.

ALIZA

A... A Gear? No... they're
violent... they'll destroy us all
for the sake of consuming
technology and bettering
themselves!

GEAR 009

Prejudice and pestilence spread
narrow-minded actions and words.
You will be my first target,
inferior human.

Suddenly, someone warps on board CYRRIL's ship.

TOM

What if your Protector was human?
One human Protector for a dozen
Gears. Is he so inferior then?

KIM

Tom... I didn't think you'd be
here...

TOM

Kim. We are emotionally connected.
I know what's going on. I used my
transmat pad to warp straight to
the other one - the one I gave you.

KIM

I-I have to do this. I have to lead
the Gears.

TOM

Lead them to what? Destruction of
Tri-Alpha? Don't you care about
Duncan... Helen... and all the
others you fought to save?

KIM

Don't do this, Tom... you only
protected me on Tri-Alpha. You
weren't there, after.

TOM

That's why I left Nova to protect
you, Kim! And...
(MORE)

TOM (CONT'D)
by the way, you never asked how
Dunkan and Helen were.

KIM
Adho was too strong. I don't need
to ask.

TOM
...

CYRRIL
Sentimental garbage. Kim, wipe this
fool out.

There is a long pause as TOM and KIM stare at one another.

TOM
You can't. Our emotional attachment
is too strong. There's still time
to change, Kim. I'm your brother. I
will protect you.

CYRRIL
If Ben was here, you'd be dead by
now, runt. You got lucky. He's out
in the star field, battling our
enemies. Gears 005 and 002,
annihilated this 'Tom'. Kim, lead
the other Gears to Delfa. Wipe the
Delfians out and their technology
is yours.

KIM
I'm sorry, Tom... I'm sorry,
Aliza... But this is who I am. I am
a Gear... and Cyrril is my
Protector.

KIM is about to leave. Suddenly, ALIZA bursts through the
door on CYRRIL's ship, and stands between KIM and the door.

KIM (CONT'D)
Goodbye, Aliza.

KIM throws ALIZA against the wall and out of the way. She
walks past her and out through the door with the other GEARS.
TOM rushes to ALIZA's aid, picks her up, and then the
remaining GEARS 005 and 002 confront TOM and ALIZA. Fight.
After fight:

CYRRIL
I thought you'd win.

TOM
You didn't protect those Gears...
at all!

CYRRIL

On the contrary, I want them destroyed. They're a threat to the cult's plans. All except my faithful son.

TOM

Then you've sent Kim to... you bastard! I'll kill you! Get here!

CYRRIL

I don't think so. You're nice and out of energy from the Gears. It's time I delivered you both to V.Len, himself, and get you out of the way for good!

End of SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #3 - MAIN and MAX go after the M4 Virus:

MAX

It's no good. V.Len won't let me past. Don't you dare give me some fluffing put down about it, either.

Choices:

MAIN

Even Greg could've done a better job than you. And he sucks.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You did what you could. I'd have done no better.

After choices:

MAX

(Sarcastically)
Thanks, mate.

MAIN

V.Len said he'll allow us down on Delfa when he wants us down there. We're just gonna have to play by his rules. For now, we're stuck together, chasing after the M4 Virus.

MAX

That virus killed billions of people. You destroyed it. It imprisoned you. Hell if I know how it came back. Hell if I care.

MAIN

There's no cure. We have to stop
the White Wolf Pirates. Let's go.

GAMEPLAY. Once player reaches the WHITE WOLF PIRATES:

Communications open.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Destroy the M4 Virus before it
destroys you!

MALCOLM

What a touching thought. But this
is our insurance that we will be
rewarded.

MAIN

Then I'll gun you down with it!

FIGHT VS. WHITE WOLF PIRATES. After fight:

MALCOLM

Nice try, but...

A ship appears.

GEAR 006

Gear 006 reporting in for the Cult
of Kai.

MAIN

A... A Gear?! Like Kim...

MALCOLM

I am not a cult member, but I speak
on behalf of Cyrril War at present.

GEAR 006

We've been called in to obliterate
the inferior and consume Delfa's
tech. With our Protector, Cyrril
War, there is no way you can win.

MAX

This is so stupid. Cyrril is all of
their Protectors? How does that
even work? He can't protect them
all. And what will you even do with
that virus, wolfies? Drink it? It's
useless.

MALCOLM

Or maybe we can use it on the
entire Reality Council. They'd be
killed by a virus. No one will
suspect us.

(MORE)

MALCOLM (CONT'D)

With this virus, created by Francesco's exploits into chemical warfare on Delfa, traded to us for the hand of a GP scum, we can do anything.

MAIN

You're insane!

MALCOLM

Gears, shoot them down.

The GEAR ship shoots down the Prison Ship, which plummets down to Delfa.

PRISON SHIP

ENGINES CRITICALLY DAMAGED. GRAV-NUL BOOSTERS INACTIVE. VERDICT: WE ARE FLUFFED.

As the PRISON SHIP falls, the LITs confront the WHITE WOLF PIRATES.

KOEL

Malcolm, you yellow-bellied chippen. Is hiding behind someone else's power the way to go?.

MALCOLM

A half-wit come to die with his fellow crew mates.

(To the Gears)

Shoot th-

KOEL launches a full scale attack on the WHITE WOLF PIRATE ship.

KOEL

Fun fact - we stole this ship from the GP, and it's loaded with more fire power than any second rate pirate cruiser. And, you know what? For attacking my son and sending him through planet fall, you deserve every last bit of it!

KOEL launches an explosive barrage of laser bullets, eradicating MALCOLM's ship in an instant. The virus explodes with it.

KOEL (CONT'D)

The virus is destroyed. It's V.Len's turn for hellfire.

SCENE cuts to MAIN and MAX on the planet, the ship crashed behind them, in pieces.

MAIN

Our ship is damaged... we're stuck.

MAX

Fluff! This planet's smoking more than me on a summer afternoon!

MAIN

There's fighting everywhere.
Delfa's at war with Kernow-Theta
for its minerals... must be
Hudokai.

MAX

There she is! Lione! Get your heiny
back over here, you piece of scock!

MAIN

She won't listen. We need to fight
our way to her.

MAX

How come she's passing, unscathed?

MAIN

She comes from this planet. It
looks like the Delfa residents are
protecting her as she passes
through. I'm willing to bet she'd
heading to the leader with the
Genesis Grenade! That damn V.Len...
We've got to reach her!

GAMEPLAY. PLAYER must reach LIONE, at the planet leader's
throne, on a bit of land surrounded by rock. LEVIATHAN is the
planet's leader. Once reached, LIONE confronts LEVIATHAN.

LEVIATHAN

What does the Galactic Preservation
want with me, planetary leader
Leviathan? I thought you said you'd
never return home, Lione Burgess.

MAIN and MAX hide behind a tall rock, nearby.

MAX

(Whispered)

Think you can handle her whilst I
sneak up from the other side?

LIONE

Reality Council leader, V.Len, and
I have hatched a plan to end this
war once and for all.

LEVIATHAN

It has escalated, I have noticed...
and what do you propose?

LIONE

I have found a way to get to the planet's leader, unchallenged, and kill him with a powerful bomb.

LEVIATHAN

T-that's taking sides. What could the GP possibly want with-

There is a loud cracking sound and the ground shakes. It stops after a short while.

MAX

What was that?

Suddenly, Gears tear into the stronghold area, KIM at the front.

KIM

The Gear army has landed.

GEAR 009

We will absorb your technology and waste this planet. None shall be more advanced than the Gears!

LIONE

Gears?! That wasn't part of the plan!

MAIN

The Warden... he plans to decimate the Gears in the Genesis Grenade explosion. He's manipulated Kernow-Theta's leader to take the Genesis Grenade to Delfa's leader... and kill everyone! We must stop this!

END OF SCENARIO.

[OPTIONAL] SCENARIO #4 - VARSH encounters SLOPPY COCK:

VARSH

This is all so troublesome. I guess it's my job to reduce the number of enemies on the field...

PLAYER must defeat the barrage of enemies. At the end, BEN appears. Communications open.

BEN

Don't interfere with this war.

VARSH

You're a member of the Cult of Kai... You know, heading back into the void will only release the one known as Rettam Krad.

BEN

Are you a member of Nova's haphazard crew? If so, then relay this back to your captain - I don't agree with my father's ways, but I will support him in his goal to get into the void.

VARSH

Then why bother? You could just leave now and let him do what he wants. No one will notice.

BEN

That's not how I work.

SLOPPY SCOCK

War is happening... and it's beautiful.

BEN

We've paid off this higher mercenary. His name is Sloppy Scock. He gets the job done.

VARSH

What an unfortunate name.

SLOPPY SCOCK

I've been paid handsomely if I help the Cult of Kai. There's nothing I won't do for the right price.

BEN

Take him down, Sloppy.

FIGHT. PLAYER vs. SLOPPY SCOCK. Once fight has happened:

SLOPPY SCOCK

That should slow you down. I haven't got time to play. This war's about to climax, as every beautiful thing does. The void awaits.

END OF SCENARIO.

AFTER ALL SCENARIOS HAVE PLAYED:

SCENE cuts to ALIZA and TOM on V.LEN's war ship, with PHYLLIS. CYRRIL WAR looks on, having delivered his prisoners.

V.LEN

I have a warship. Thousands of GP surround you, Effron Pistols at the ready. I have won.

ALIZA

(Stern, then shaky)

We're just a handful of many. Our deaths w-won't be in vain. The others will destroy you! I-I don't want to die. I-I want... to...

ALIZA breaks down.

TOM

Why even bother with all this? Why enter the void? Why Hudokai? At least give us answers before you kill us.

V.LEN

No. I owe you nothing.

RIZUMU

(Crying)

Don't kill us.

V.LEN

Your friends have been sent to planet Delfa because I willed it. They have been sent to their deaths. And so will you. GP, I have a better idea. Load them onto the teleporter.

GP GUARD

But... only one person can teleport at a time.

V.LEN kills him in a flash of light.

PHYLLIS

Well, great. Sometimes you can be a real grouch, Mr. Len. I guess I'M the one who has to clean up the ashes of his body?

V.LEN

Do not object. Lione should have now activated Leviathan's teleport gate at Delfa's throne. Teleport these scoundrels down there, one at a time. They will watch their friends lose hope. Then they will blow with the planet.

PHYLLIS

Fine, but YOU'RE doing the washing up in exchange, tonight.

TOM

S-so that's you plan!

RIZUMU
It's... It's like Duskwight...

TOM
Aliza, quickly, take this-

TOM gives something to ALIZA and is quickly pushed onto the teleporter.

V.LEN
The last laugh is mine.

TOM
No, V.Len... See these transmat pads?

ALIZA
You... gave me a transmat pad? You got some more from Tri-Alpha?

TOM
Only two more. But it's enough to give *ME* the last laugh as I trade places with Kim and lock these two pads onto your one! Haha!

TOM teleports down to DELFA via his transmat pad. There is a pause. Some GP are restless.

PHYLLIS
Wait, weren't those the pads we stored on the space ring outside Planet Canary? He does realise if he does that, he won't be able to come back... right?

V.LEN
Indeed. He used his transmat pad, not the teleporter. His fate has been sealed, as has our victory. Leave the girl where she is, Phyllis. This will be... entertaining.

SCENE cuts to down on Planet DELFA's surface. MAIN is on top of LIONE, pinning her down.

LIONE
Oof! Get off me, criminal! I, Francesco, order it!

LEVIATHAN
Francesco?! So, the rumours were true. You can control others through a substantial amount of bone DNA. You will never obtain our Hudokai ore!

MAIN

H-Hudokai ore... hang on... does that mean-!

GEAR 009

An explosion of Hudokai means a black hole to the void. A planet embedded with remnants of it mean a large enough black hole for all the cult. They will commence with that after we take their planet's tech.

MAIN

You fools! The warden's tricked you! He plans to decimate you all from Francesco's blast!

KIM

N...no! Cyrril... wants to protect us... he's our protector...

MAIN

You've been duped!

LIONE

It doesn't matter. Lione's body will crumble. You will all die. I will win this war!

MAIN

Activate the Genesis Grenade and we're dead!

LIONE

Too late. Ten seconds and we're history.

CUTSCENE. TOM teleports down to the planet, holding two Transmat Pads and wearing a third. KIM teleports away as TOM appears. He looks at MAIN and then LIONE. MAX looks at TOM from his hiding spot, almost scared. TOM launches both pads at MAIN and LIONE, who immediately teleport away. TOM smiles as whiteness engulfs him. MAX screams out as the whiteness engulfs him, too. Camera switches to V.LEN's war ship as KIM, MAIN and LIONE teleport on board via the transmat pads. KIM runs to the glass panel, looking out into space as the planet Delfa explodes. She screams out a silent scream as tears fall from her face, TOM evidently dead. The explosion turns into a giant black hole. Fade out. SCENE ends.

MAIN

...

LIONE

I'm... back... to normal. What happened?

KIM
TOOOOOOOOOOOOM!

V.LEN
Dead. And now it's time to deal
with you rebellious scoks. That
blundering "Tom" lead you all
straight to me. All besides your
fowl fox friend.

CYRRIL
He will be traced and eradicated by
the Galactic Preservation.
Meanwhile, we must head into that
black hole; that rip in the
universe. The void awaits.

PHYLLIS
Keep your coat on, Cyrril. There's
one matter I'd like to deal with
before we enter. Nova.

V.LEN
And so you shall, Phyllis. The
White Wolf Pirates may have been
obliterated, but Francesco was kind
enough to produce a whole vat.
Whilst he was away from his throne,
controlling the vice-warden, here,
we helped ourselves. And here it
is. One syringe full of liquid M4
Virus.

MAIN
...

V.LEN
No words? Oh my, I've silenced the
renowned criminal! Any of you move
and these GP soldiers will shoot.

CYRRIL
Inject him and get on with it.
We've got to move!

V.LEN
Patience, Cyrril... the rip will
remain.

MAIN
NO! Get it away! I will no succumb
to my greatest fear! It killed my
family! GET IT AWAY!

PHYLLIS
It killed your family, like you
killed mine, Nova.
(MORE)

PHYLLIS (CONT'D)

Oh, Mr. Len, I want to inject this
sour scock with the virus.

V.LEN

For what it's worth, Phyllis, it
must be me that does this. Now,
Nova, this will only hurt... a lot.

V.LEN injects MAIN (NOVA).

V.LEN (CONT'D)

The deed is done.

MAIN

I feel ill... you monsters! You
kill Max! You kill Tom! And now
you're gonna kill me! I swear, I
won't go down until I take you out
first. The Cult of Kai are dead!!!

V.LEN

If only.

PHYLLIS

Besides, you assume I'm part of the
cult. I'm not. V.Len's efforts are
important to me, no matter he's
ways of going about it. V.Len's an
inspiration. I just do what I can.

V.LEN

Here's my proposal, Nova. Your
friends are still alive. Aliza,
Lione, Kim and even Phoenix. I know
all your names. If you would like
to keep it that way, I suggest you
co-operate.

MAIN

My life's over...

LIONE

Nova, co-operate... please... there
will be a way... I promise...

V.LEN

The warden will be with us in the
void, so duty will fall to Lione,
the vice-warden, to lead the
Galactic Preservation. Too much
paper work to get involved with to
promote someone else, so if you let
Lione Burgess arrest you and
suspend you in Stasis, like before,
you will be able to live out your
cruel, miserable life. If not,
well... you die... and everyone
else will die at the hands of Ben.

LIONE

Ben won't follow you into the void?

CYRRIL

Ben was always going to keep things in check whilst we were away. He is my faithful pup. Now be a faithful bitch, too, and do this for V.Len.

MAIN

...Damn it, Lione. Do it. Everyone needs to live.

V.LEN

You've got the idea. Lione arrests you and everyone lives. Ben will not destroy your friends.

LIONE

Tsk... You have my word.

CYRRIL

You will be locked in a Stasis pod, on its own, frozen in space. You will be in the middle of nowhere. No one will be able to free you. Now, V.Len, it's time for the Cult of Kai to shine.

V.LEN

We are going into that black hole... into the void!

END OF ACT 2.

ACT 3

PRISON CAPSULE

9 MONTHS LATER. A prison capsule floating in space. MAIN NOVA is trapped, frozen in time, staring out a small window. A mechanical structure surrounds him, keeping him in stasis. Suddenly, a prison ship floats into view. It stops at the capsule. Out floats someone in an astronaut suit. She/he breaks one of the pipes on the mechanism. Steam spews out. The capsule opens. She/he takes MAIN NOVA inside the ship.

MAIN comes to. The astronaut looks on silently at MAIN for a moment.

MAIN

...

ASTRONAUT

(Voice distorted)

Your voice will return, shortly.

MAIN

...

ASTRONAUT

9 months have passed since you've been locked up.

MAIN

...

ASTRONAUT

The Cult of Kai have yet to return from the void. It's difficult to think that time even passes in there, or how time works for us on the outside, in comparison.

MAIN

...

ASTRONAUT

Don't worry. The M4 Virus only effects those with an A+ blood type. None of your friends have that. That's why I decided to rescue you. I'm sorry, but there is no cure. You're a dead man walking.

MAIN

T-then... wh... re...lease...

ASTRONAUT

Your speech is returning. Good. Now I can fluffing remove this helmet and give you the back of my hand.

The ASTRONAUT removes his helmet to reveal MAX JUDGE.

MAIN

Max!

MAX

You damn well left me for dead on that planet. Tom didn't even noticed me! Fluffing idiot.

MAIN

How did... you survive?

MAX

I... didn't. I'm dead.

MAIN

Stop fooling.

MAX

No. I'm serious. I died. A planet blew up in my face. I'm now made up of light, brought into physical being by my 'Death Bringers' scythe, or some scock like that. My scythe just floated, undestroyed by the planet, un-sucked in by the black hole.

LIONE

I recovered it... And out popped Max.

Choices:

MAIN

Lione! I missed you.

LIONE

Nova, I hate to say it, but I missed you, too.

OR

MAIN

Now there's a sour face.

LIONE

Not as sour as your reputation, right now.

After choices:

MAX

So I can't die. Lione's got a metal hand and Aliza's counting down the weeks 'till death. Life sucks.

ALIZA

Not unless I find Razz and remove his viral state from my life. Then I'll stay alive and keep on living.

MAIN

Aliza... good to see you, too. I know what a virus can be like. It eats you up from the inside. It kills you.

ALIZA

Oh... I'm sorry.

IF VARSH had been obtained from *TRANSCENDENCE ALLIANCE*:

[VARSH]

What kills people is a different virus, a crushing sense of guilt and powerlessness as he watches his friends get captured, unable to help. I'm sorry I couldn't help sooner, Nova. The war was hell.

[MAIN]

Varsh. Don't worry about it. The war changed everything...

[VARSH]

Rettam Krad, the creator and originator of Dark Matter, will soon merge with V.Len. We have to stop him. Do you think you're up to that, bro?

MAIN

I've got a month left to live. We're all on a short leash of life before the cult reshape everything with their new Hudokai. It's time to take action. It's time to go back to the void and take them down!

PHOENIX

Spoken like a true rebel leader.

MAIN

Look who's all foxy and suave.

PHOENIX

Just wait 'till you see my explosive rage when we find a cult member. They want to take our freedom away from us. I won't let that happen.

KIM

And I will avenge Tom.

MAIN

Kim. I promised Tom I would protect you until death. It looks like I've only got a month or so left to do that.

KIM

Nova... aren't you angry that I followed the warden?

MAIN

It's as Aliza said - you were misguided. You're not a bad person, Kim.

KIM

Thank you, Nova. Thank you, everyone. When Lione gathered us all together to free you, I knew she'd forgiven me, but I was afraid of what you'd say...

LIONE

And it took 9 months. Ben was constantly keeping watch over me. My own son acted like my superior, a warden, and I felt like I was in a cell. Even though I was warden, I had to do everything he said, otherwise he'd go back on his father's word. It made me sick.

MAX

So when Lione finally found my scythe and reintroduced it to the Hudokai I'd used before, I felt my brain come back, my body flow with energy once more. I came back from the dead, an undying force. And I was able to stand up to Ben and knock him out.

LIONE

I can't kill my own son...

MAIN

And that's when you all were able to gather without anyone keeping tabs on you, I see.

[VARSH]

Let's head to the void, now!

LIONE

Unfortunately, we no longer have our prison ship full of void stuff. That blew up with Delfa. We need to create an explosion big enough to take us back to the void. The Nexus.

PHOENIX

So here's the plan. I've heard rumours that planet Yarth has a piece of large Hudokai broken up into pieces. It's a rumour, but it's all we've got. We go to Yarth and find those pieces, then we've got Hudokai big enough to take us into the void without blowing this ship apart, like what apparently happened before.

ALIZA

And to blow it up, we need an energy source that can create a big enough explosion. I've heard planet Aquamarine has an old rig just brimming with unused power. We go there and take it.

MAIN

So, Yarth for Hudokai and Aquamarine for energy. Then we can go back to the Nexus and take down the cult once and for all. Bring it!

PRISON SHIP

WELCOME ABOARD THE PRISON SHIP MK2.

PLAYER resumes control of the ship in space, GALAXY 3.

OUT OF DEPTH (PLANET AQUAMARINE)

Everyone has landed on Planet Aquamarine, new prison ship in tow. It is quiet. Too quiet. They wander around the forest clearing, which they have landed in. The vines and plants are ashen coloured, seemingly dead.

KIM

Scanners indicate a strong energy presence, here... and it isn't Hudokai.

[VARSH]

I'm curious about what happened to this planet. It's ashen. The trees are like chalk. It's life is death.

MAX

This planet looks deader than Nova.

Choices:

MAIN

That's rich, coming from a ghost.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

That was a low blow. I'm slowly dying from the M4 virus and all you can do is laugh.

After choices:

LIONE

Stop bickering, dolts!

KIM

The planet has been petrified by radiation from a strong energy output...

LIONE

Just because this forest is petrified, it doesn't necessarily mean the whole planet is the same.

MAX

Petrified? As in scared? I guess all it took was one good look at me and decided it should back off.

ALIZA

...

PHOENIX

Can we blow it up?

Choices:

MAIN
(Yes)

PHOENIX
Damn straight!

PHOENIX blows up a bunch of petrified vines. It leads to a part of the forest where a new weapon can be found for PHOENIX.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)
No other way through...

OR

MAIN
(No)

PHOENIX
Aww. How else are we gonna get though?

After choices:

LIONE
There's a diving bell at the water's edge.

KIM
I sense energy below...

[VARSH]
Energy? That'll no doubt be the energy we need to reach the void.

MAIN
All right. Let's go diving for that energy.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they go into the diving bell and descend into the water. After a short while, a shadow appears. MAIN looks out the diving bell window.

MAIN (CONT'D)
What the hell is that?!

BLAKE
A motherfluffin' sea monster!

The diving bell reaches an underwater facility, in which the MAIN and co. run out and into a decompression room. The diving bell is subsequently ripped a part from the sea monster, which chased them. There is a moment of silence.

MAX
We're trapped.

BLAKE
No scock, Sherlock.

MAX
Who's Sherlock?

If VARSH has been obtained:

[VARSH]
He's some guy from Duskwight who
was awful at examining things.

Otherwise:

LIONE
Some guy from Duskwight who was
awful at examining things.

After this optional line of conversation:

MAX
Where are we, anyway?

BLAKE
An underwater research facility for
mining Zed Neutrino energy.

MAIN
That's amazing! How did you know
that?

BLAKE
I read that sign, over there.

MAIN
Perfect. Whilst we're stuck down
here, we may as well explore the
place.

MAX
Hang on, hang on. I'll call the
shots. If this is gonna be an
expedition, then *I'M* the expedition
leader.

MAIN
No, I'm in charge.

MAX
Move out!

PLAYER resumes control until eventually they find a dead body
in the middle of a tube-like corridor.

MAIN
!!!

MAX

...Dead.

Suddenly, three people run up to the crew. Two are dressed in suits, holding guns. The last person has wild white hair, curving to the bottom of her back, dark skin, a crimson jacket with long sleeves but a far too short mid-drift, beneath lies a grubby, dark t-shirt, braces holding up dark green trousers, a green lense-like monocle over one eye, technology fizzling away on it... and seemingly in one hand, a cigarette. SHARDAE-RAY JALFUZZY.

JALFUZZY

Hold your arses right there!

PHOENIX

We can still move our legs, right?

JALFUZZY

Shut your yella gob, chicken wuss.

PHOENIX

It's orange... and I'm a fox.

[VARSH]

(To PHOENIX)

She's got an Elizabeth feel about her... best not antagonise her.

JALFUZZY

Which one o' you scum's in charge?

Choices:

MAIN

Him. Max.

MAX

Like hell am I in-

OR

MAIN

Me. Nova.

After choices:

JALFUZZY

Why have you done this?

MAX

Sorry?

JALFUZZY

Why have you guys killed a black man?

MAX

...

JALFUZZY

Is it racial abuse, or are you
against the Zed Project?

PHOENIX

Colour doesn't mean a thing. If it
did, my orange fur would be a
serious issue, here.

JALFUZZY

You've got 5 minutes to justify
yourselves.

Choices:

MAIN

We didn't kill him. We just got
here!

JALFUZZY

Fluffing likely! There ain't no one
on this planet but you and us.

OR

MAIN

*He smelt a bit like old curry. We
were doing him a favour.*

JALFUZZY

*What? 'Cause my name's Jalfuzzy,
you'll kill me next?*

OR

MAIN

Why would we kill an innocent drill
worker?

JALFUZZY

You tell me.

MAIN

Because we didn't.

After choies:

JALFUZZY

Not fluffing good enough!

PHOENIX

Hmm... I've seen this kind of
roguish assumption before.

(MORE)

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

In the world of survival, the strong kill the weak. You asked if we're against the project.

JALFUZZY

Wotcha talkin' about, foxy? Are you or aren't you?

PHOENIX

That isn't my point, *dawg*. If you have people against the project and no one else is on the planet, what stops any of you being culprits?

KORMAN

Boss, he's right. These deaths started before they arrived...

JALFUZZY

Shut your face, Korman! We all support the Zed Project.

KORMAN

But they're not the ones pointing a gun on assumption.

BLAKE

Hey, fluff-face. Your dead friend's been shot. So... where's the blood?

KORMAN

Jalfuzzy, he's right...

MAIN

What kind of name is Jalfuzzy, anyway? Fuzzy Jalfuzzy.

JALFUZZY

It's my surname. You know, someone used to tell me that all the time... but... no, it couldn't be...

MAIN

...

JALFUZZY

You with the silver hair. Meet me in the depth chamber. You'll find it. Come on, meatballs, we're stickin' together.

JALFUZZY, KORMAN and her other comrade, MISS ARLA, walk off.

MAIN

Does... she know me?

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when PLAYER reaches JALFUZZY's depth chamber. SCENARIO choices.

SCENARIO #1 - MAIN and JALFUZZY catch up.

PLAYER walks into the depth chamber room. JALFUZZY is sitting there, waiting.

MAIN (CONT'D)

So you're Fuzzy Jalfuzzy?

JALFUZZY

You got a lot of balls to call me 'Fuzzy Jalfuzzy'. You always did.

MAIN

So you know who I am?

JALFUZZY

A rogue, a joker, an upholder of justice yet someone who revels in anguish. We hate to like you and love to hate you.

MAIN

I've known you for less than an hour and you've known me for an entire lifetime. Who are you?

JALFUZZY

Man, I'm your best mate. Your friend. Your dude. Girl dude. And you don't even remember me.

MAIN

I've been locked in stasis. Twice. My memory's a bit foggy. I'm sorry.

JALFUZZY

Sorry ain't gonna cut it, man. I thought you were dead...

Scenes play out in black and white with JALFUZZY and MAIN at the Reality Council, seemingly working together. V.LEN works alongside them. They are both in the laboratory, working on some form of energy. Potentially Hudokai. Scene switches to MAIN being locked away and JALFUZZY looking sad. Scene goes back to the present day. No dialogue.

JALFUZZY (CONT'D)

So then I put myself up for the Zed Project to gather Zed Neutrino energy. You were gone, man, but I still wanted to pursue energy sources and Hudokai.

(MORE)

JALFUZZY (CONT'D)

The council put my team onto this planet to conduct our research, but...

MAIN

The locals were against it. I get it.

JALFUZZY

We got constant hate attacks, people trying to stop the drilling, and then...

MAIN

Don't tell me... the forest, above ground, was petrified. The energy wiped out everyone outside the facility.

JALFUZZY

Radiation poisoning. This under-developed planetoid was wiped of all fluffin' life. Now it's just me and my team fightin' the finish what we started. We're stuck in here and more of us are dying.

Choices (all choices must be chosen before continuing):

MAIN

Why'd you call me in here? Alone.

JALFUZZY

I wanna catch up, man. Find out what makes you tick, these days. You're a dead man walkin' and you ain't off the hook, yet.

AND

MAIN

What's with the sea monster?

JALFUZZY

We call it the Sea Mantis. It's about the only living thing that can withstand the radiation. It hasn't let off attack against us since we got here. This facility keeps us safe.

AND

MAIN

What do you guys do for food, around here?

JALFUZZY

We're down to our last scrum. Tubes of meat paste and recycled water.

After all choices have been exhausted:

MAIN

So, we're all stuck here. And all we wanted was that energy source.

JALFUZZY

Hudokai not enough for you? Nothing ever was. Hey, remember that time when we tricked your ma in going on a date with a 'handsome fella' and it ended up being your divorced dad?

MAIN

My parents are dead. I've got the same virus that killed them.

JALFUZZY

The M4 virus? But... the Genesis Grenade...

MAIN

I'm going to die, Jalfuzzy, and as for the one who did this... I'm taking him with me!

JALFUZZY

Who did this? Where is he? I'll gut his lungs for condemning my mate.

MAIN

In the Nexus void - between all dimensions. We need your energy source to get us there. Long story.

JALFUZZY

That's it. I'm done here. I'm gonna help you escape. There ain't no way you killed Barji back there. People been dying before you lot got here, anyway. Probably malnutrition or something. Oh, and the name's Shardae-Ray Jalfuzzy, for the record. Don't you forget your best mate's name ever again, got that? Meet me by the reactor entrance.

MAIN

I'll tell the others.

END OF SCENARIO #1.

SCENARIO #2 - LIONE AND KIM INVESTIGATE

KIM

Lione, I've been thinking.

LIONE

Hm?

KIM

I've had nine long months to discover myself... and it took nine long months to mourn Tom.

LIONE

So, you've finally become the human Tom struggled to fight for.

KIM

And so I asked myself something I'd never asked myself, before - what do I want? With Tom gone, I was lost... and with all the negative emotions overpowering other people in the galaxies, I decided what I want to do, next.

LIONE

Shouldn't you be telling Aliza this?

KIM

Lione, I want to become a Galactic Preserver.

LIONE

...

KIM

I want to use my power to ensure the good emotions prevail over the negative ones. I want to bring down evil-doers. But without the law on my side, I'm seen as just as criminal as them. So, I want to join the GP.

LIONE

It's... tough. You witness more suffering than you ever thought possible. But it hardens you. As long as you bring your own morals into the way you abide by the law book, you can become more human, humane, than anyone else. And then morality becomes less blurred.

KIM

Like Cyrril?

LIONE
...You still have a lot to learn.

KIM
Help me, Lione. Teach me.

LIONE
It can't be taught. Only learnt.

KIM
Aren't they the same thing?

LIONE
...
(Pause)
All right.

KIM
Thank you, Lione.

LIONE
We'll start with something important. It's observation. Jalfuzzy's crew mentioned people have been dying. I'm willing to bet it's one of his own crew sabotaging them. But we need evidence. Go and explore their quarters to find any clues.

KIM
Isn't that... invasion of privacy?

LIONE
Don't worry, the law is on your side!

PLAYER resumes control, this time over KIM. Once KIM locates a syringe from one of the quarters, and returns to LIONE, story continues.

LIONE (CONT'D)
A syringe?

KIM
I've analysed the remnants of dried blood on the inside. It matches the DNA of Jalfuzzy's dead companion, as well as the DNA of others that have died.

LIONE
They way you just spoke reminded me that you are a Gear.

KIM
Oh! Sorry... uh... sound more human... the...
(MORE)

KIM (CONT'D)

blood looks like it's the dead person we found. I'm still learning, ehehe.

LIONE

You did good, Kim. Hmm, looks like this is a part to something else, like a pipe is supposed to attach to the end.

KIM

Shall I locate that, too?

LIONE

For now, let's hold onto this and think about what this could possibly mean. Good observational skills... we'll make a Galactic Preserver out of you, yet.

END OF SCENARIO #2.

SCENARIO #3 - PHOENIX AND ALIZA FACE-OFF WITH KORMAN

PHOENIX, ALIZA, [VARSH, if obtained,] KORMAN and MISS ARLA all wait outside the depth chamber, the glass around them showing the ocean, outside.

[VARSH]

You know, I've always found water soothing. It ripples with refracted light and just goes with the flow, yet it will grip its icy currents onto those who test its depth. I respect the ocean. I could watch it all day...

PHOENIX

You know what I like? Explosions. You know what may happen if we wait any longer? An explosion.

MISS ARLA

Do that and we all die.

[VARSH]

Leave me be, unless you want to test *my* icy currents.

ALIZA

Is... there any possible way someone else could have killed the others? Like... a mysterious pudgy man with white hair?

MISS ARLA

It's possible, like. Someone's been taking us down one by one, and it sure as hell ain't the radiation from the energy.

KORMAN

No, our radar would've revealed someone hidden, by now. The only suspects are all of us and you lot.

MAX

It must drive anyone mad, being cooped up with that monster.

KORMAN

Jalfuzzy's a good leader. She led us down here for the energy.

MAX

I meant the one out at sea.

KORMAN

Before coming on board this project, I studied marine biology and before that, I was a fisherman. Never have I seen a piece of scock like that in the oceans.

MAX

You? A fisherman? Nig, you so whack?

KORMAN

What you say, boy?

MAX

I, uh... nig.

KORMAN

No milk bottle's gonna tell me what's whack.

MAX

Well, whaddya propose we do, cola bottle?

KORMAN

Fluff you. You think you're so hard. We gonna fight.

MAX

I don't wanna kill you.

KORMAN

Like the others? It's on, now! I'm challenging you, boy, to... a fishing contest!

MAX

Whut.

KORMAN

See that square hatch? It leads to the ocean. Good spot to fish. You catch the bigger fish, you win. If I catch the bigger fish, you get your face walloped. We catching these bad boys with our hands. Now get going, you piece of scock.

PLAYER must catch a large fish. If PLAYER wins, the get to keep the fish:

MAX

There! I caught the bigger fish! In your face.

KORMAN punches MAX in the face.

KORMAN

No, in *YOUR* face. A fist in your face, that is.

MAX

Scock!

OR, if PLAYER loses, they fight KORMAN with MAX:

KORMAN

I win, little boy. Now we fight.

After fight and after either option:

ALIZA

Stupid testosterone. We don't have to fight...

PHOENIX

...Explosions.

MISS ARLA

Come on, Korman! Beat him up!

KORMAN

Ugh, fine. We're gonna wait for the boss to finish up. Then we'll decide what to do with you.

END OF SCENARIO #3

After all scenarios have been exhausted:

MAIN and JALFUZZY walk out of the depth chamber.

MAIN

Jalfuzzy's gonna help us.

LIONE

Now? We're trapped here.

MAIN

Follow me.

JALFUZZY walks off. PLAYER regains control of MAIN. Story continues once they talk to JALFUZZY.

JALFUZZY

As you all know, the Sea Mantis blocks our way out. I reckon if we flood the water with this reactor's Zed Neutrino energy, it will kill the beast outright. No indirect radiation poisoning, just a wham, bam, thank you ma'am.

ALIZA

And how are we going to do that?

KORMAN

Before now, the only solution was to overload the reactor and blow off the walls to get the energy out. That woulda killed us all.

JALFUZZY

But now we got someone who can go INSIDE the reactor without dying of radiation poisoning.

MAIN

Not me, surely? I-I've got a virus!

JALFUZZY

Exactly, man. It makes people immune to radiation waves.

MAIN

Hear that, Lione? I'm a Super Nova!

LIONE

With such a large ego, I'm surprised you haven't exploded, yet. You'd wipe us out.

JALFUZZY

We go in, we raise the pressure and release the energy straight into the water.

ALIZA

Woah there. 'We'? We'd die. Only Nova is immune.

JALFUZZY
 ...Yeah, but... inside is
 dangerous. I've decided... I'm
 going to help Nova.

MAIN
 What?!

JALFUZZY
 Don't cho complain! I've made up my
 mind. There's only room for one big
 ego with silver-white hair in this
 universe. And I'm... I'm gonna die
 with my research. Take the energy.
 Use it well. I'm done here.

Choices:

MAIN
I'm not gonna let you die! As soon
as we pressurise the reactor, I'm
taking you back with me!

JALFUZZY
If I'm not too poisoned...

OR

MAIN
Thanks for your commitment.

JALFUZZY
Don't mention it.

After choices:

JALFUZZY (CONT'D)
 This is a two man operation. Korman
 and Miss Arla will stay with the
 others.

There is a shudder. The whole rig vibrates, violently.

MISS ARLA
 That Sea Mantis is attacking the
 base, again!

The shudders stop. A siren goes off.

KORMAN
 Boss, that means there's a leak.

JALFUZZY
 I know what it means! Move out.
 We're gonna find the leak and plug
 it up.

GAMEPLAY resumes. PLAYER must navigate the base and find the leak. Once located, the story continues.

JALFUZZY (CONT'D)
Gimme the plating and solder,
Korman, quickly!

KORMAN does so. There are sparks as JALFUZZY solders it into place, over the crack in the wall.

JALFUZZY (CONT'D)
There. Now we just gotta sort out
the Zed Neutrino reactor.

MAIN
Aren't there any radiation suits?

JALFUZZY
All destroyed.

ALIZA
Look! There's an empty syringe...

KIM and LIONE look at one another.

KIM
Someone's been feeding the Sea
Mantis human blood.

MISS ARLA
That's why it's hungry to attack
us. It wants more. But... we're all
together. Who fed it the blood,
this time?

ALIZA
What do you mean, 'this time'?

JALFUZZY
Miss Arla's right. Someone's here
with us. Whoever it is, they can't
have been here long, otherwise the
radar would've picked them up, like
it did with Nova when he entered.

PHOENIX
We haven't got time to focus on the
small fry. We'd all be blown sky
high if we wait around for the Sea
Mantis to attack, again.

JALFUZZY
The fuzzy one's right.

MAX
You mean you?

JALFUZZY

Shut your trap. Nova, we're near the reactor entrance. It's time.

KORMAN

You sure you wanna do this, boss?

JALFUZZY

There ain't no future for me. I've made up my mind.

KORMAN

Boss, it's been an honour.

JALFUZZY

Keep it real, Korman. The rest of you gotta make sure the doors open for us, whilst we're down below. There switches up here. Stand on the right switches to open the right doors. They're all colour coordinated, so don't mess it up.

ALIZA

Got it. Red switch to open the red door and so on.

JALFUZZY

That's right. Nova, let's go.

PLAYER resumes control. PLAYER must head down into the reactor via its entrance, switching to the other characters whenever they reach a locked door. The other characters must stand on the correct colour switches to open the correct door (and close another). Eventually, story continues.

KORMAN

This should be the last switch. Hang on, where's Miss Arla?

ALIZA

She went off a while ago. I didn't question it.

RAZZ

Ohohoho... you should have!

KORMAN is stabbed, from the shadows. RAZZ reveals himself in person, just as bloody and brutal as before, on planet Earth 2400 (BIORHYTHM).

ALIZA

Razz!

KORMAN

Ungh... I-I have a dagger... in... my...

KORMAN falls to his face and dies.

MAX

What the fluffing fluff did you fluffing to that fluff for, you sick fluff?

ALIZA

He's Razz. He's the dark quarter of my subconscious, that I must kill if I'm to live.

RAZZ

How's Rizumu? Traumatized? Oh, I hope she is so mentally disturbed that you decay with her, Aliza! Or, she'll become another me. Won't that be fun?

ALIZA

Rizumu's fine. Blake's the one quaking, right now.

RAZZ

Such a scaredy scock...

ALIZA

He's quaking with rage!

RAZZ

It doesn't matter, no, no, you'll soon go the way of the dinosaur, or should I say, Sea Mantis? Ahahaha!

KIM

Data analysis states that he is covered in Barji's blood. Lione, I've solved the mystery for the GP! *HE* is the killer!

RAZZ

Haha, not quite... I only helped, this time... that Sea Mantis will smash this place and kill you all.

ALIZA

And you with it, idiot!

LIONE

Wait, Kim, Miss Arla's missing. Razz just got here. That's much more telling of who the murderer is, in this facility.

RAZZ

And bingo was her name-o! But that ain't your concern. *I* am! I can't wait to taste blood! DIE!

SELECT PARTY MEMBERS OUT OF ALIZA, LIONE, KIM, PHOENIX AND MAX.

BOSS FIGHT 18: RAZZ.

Towards the end of the fight, in battle dialogue:

ALIZA
All this time, separated from my
body, you've controlled me life,
Razz.

RAZZ
And... yet... I accomplished so
little...

ALIZA
You never made it to the council.
You just ran. And now... you die.

ALIZA uses her overdrive, which kills RAZZ. Fight ends.

ALIZA (CONT'D)
(Out of breath)
It-It's over.

SCENE switches to MAIN and JALFUZZY in the reactor core.

JALFUZZY
(Coughing heavily)
Here it is. The energy. Use one of
the kegs to store some of it.

A gunshot is fired. JALFUZZY stumbles forward, blood now on the floor. She turns around. MISS ARLA stands there, gun in hand, blocking the only entrance and exit to the reactor core.

MISS ARLA
One more step and it's over.

JALFUZZY
Miss Arla? You fluffing fool!
You've been exposed to lethal
levels of radiation! Why did you
follow me?!

MISS ARLA
Aren't you gonna ask about why I
just shot you?

JALFUZZY
Nah, it had to be one of us that
put our own team's blood into a
waste pipe. It didn't matter who.
Doesn't matter why. We're all
trapped, walking dead people in the
end.

MAIN

You're telling me...

MISS ARLA

Yeah. The waste pipe led to the ocean. The Sea Mantis, out there, got a taste for blood and it would only be a matter of time before it attacked the base for the last living beings.

MAIN

Oh, I get it. People were against the Zed Project, due to the radiation poisoning on the planet. You're against the project. You want the Sea Mantis to destroy it.

MISS ARLA

We caused this. We deserve no mercy.

JALFUZZY

So why reveal it now? Why stop us from helping Nova?

MISS ARLA

The mantis has now been fed enough blood to attack the base. That energy must be buried along with everything here. It must not be taken away by the likes of you!

The facility shakes, violently.

MISS ARLA (CONT'D)

It's started.

Suddenly, the Sea Mantis smashes through the wall at that moment, ripping MISS ARLA apart. The Sea Mantis then retreats back into the ocean, causing a torrent of water to start spewing into the reactor core.

JALFUZZY

(Still coughing a lot)
Fluffing scock munchers! Grab the Zed Neutrino energy quickly, in one o' them barrels!

PLAYER does so.

MAIN

Now how the fluff do we get outta here?!

JALFUZZY

(Coughing)

Only way is through that flooded corridor... the way we came.

MAIN

This is it, isn't it?

JALFUZZY

'Fraid so...

Choices:

MAIN

It's been a pleasure. Don't let death get you down. I'll see you again, Shardae-Rae Jalfuzzy.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

You're a hot head and damn fool, but at least you'll die with dignity. See you in the afterlife, Shardae-Rae Jalfuzzy.

After choices:

JALFUZZY

Cheers, man. Now get going. I don't want my last... thoughts... to be you...

JALFUZZY keels over and dies. MAIN slowly turns around and faces the exit/entrance. MAIN exits. Slow fade to black. SCENE switches to MAIN and co. in the depth chamber. The facility shakes uncontrollably.

PHOENIX

The place is about to explode and we've no way of escaping! I want freedom! I didn't come all this way to die, trapped!

MAX

Calm the fluff down. They said they couldn't escape 'cause of that Sea Mantis, which means they had some way of getting the fluffy outta here.

KIM

Analysing the depth chamber... escape confirmed. Everyone, there is a switch that releases this depth chamber as a capsule.

ALIZA

Good work, Kim! Let's flip that switch!

The chamber rises out of the facility and through the ocean.

MAIN

Right. We're gonna have to take on that Sea Mantis... and as it's in the ocean, we're gonna have to rely on our long range abilities, only. Hudokai at the ready!

BOSS FIGHT 19: SEA MANTIS.

After fight:

Everyone is at the forest clearing. MAIN looks over the ocean, silent.

LIONE

Jalfuzzy sacrificed herself for a greater cause.

MAIN

...

LIONE

The past is the past. You'd best forget about it. Isn't that what you told me?

MAIN

It's hard to look to the future when you're going to die soon.

LIONE

Think like that and you're already dead. Chin up. We've still got to take down the Cult of Kai. Now that we have the Zed Neutrino energy, we can use that to get back to the Nexus.

[VARSH]

So... captain, my captain, what's the plan?

IF PLAYER HAS BEEN TO YARTH (SEA OF SEALS) FIRST:

MAIN

We'll head into space and release the Seal Hudokai. Whilst it floats, we'll shoot that Seal Hudokai with the Zed Neutrino energy and create a huge explosion. The rip will allow us to go back into the void. Let's do it!

IF NOT:

MAIN (CONT'D)

First, we need a immensely large
piece of Hudokai. We need to search
one of the other planets, first.

LIONE

Planet Yarth showed high levels of
Hudokai, according to Kim.

MAIN

Then that's where we'll go, next.

FADE OUT.

SEA OF SEALS (PLANET YARTH)

The prison ship has landed in the middle of a marshy plain.
Everyone gets out, MAIN confused.

MAIN

So why have we landed in the middle
of nowhere?

LIONE

This is planet Yarth. It's a planet
underdeveloped compared to the
others in the three Galaxies of the
Reality Council.

MAX

So, we're expecting to find under-
developed people, like Nova, here?

Choices:

MAIN

Not as underdeveloped as your
scock!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Not as underdeveloped as Lione.

After choices:

MAX

Ha. I forgot to laugh.

LIONE

It's not funny. We're under law not
to interfere with this planet's
development. We can't reveal that
we're from other planets.

PHOENIX

Since when did we follow the law,
anyway? We're here to find Hudokai
large enough to get us to this
'Nexus' place. It'll be a massive-

ALIZA

Explosion. Yeah, we get it.

PHOENIX

Don't you steal my fire.

ALIZA

Shouldn't that be 'thunder'?

PHOENIX

Not if it's an explosion.

ALIZA

Urgh...

If VARSH has been obtained:

[VARSH]

King Yutah and Emperor Pikhaul are joint rulers. Only they know of how far technology has advanced on other worlds and only they can attend the Reality Council. It's their law not to reveal anything.

If not:

LIONE

King Yutah and Emperor Pikhaul are joint rulers. Only they know of how far technology has advanced on other worlds and only they can attend the Reality Council. It's their law not to reveal anything.

After this VARSH-specific event:

KIM

People must advance on their own. Only then can we develop emotionally.

MAIN

Atta girl, Kim. All right, I get it. We can't let on we're not from this world. We're just warriors from a peasant land. Let's go see one of these "rulers".

[VARSH]

I'll stay with the ship and gather more history on this place. I'll meet ya all later.

LIONE

North of here is country Ivel's castle. King Yutah is there. We'll go there, first.

PLAYER CHOOSES PARTY. GAMEPLAY. PLAYER can explore the marshlands until finally reaching the town of Ivel. A figure runs into MAIN.

He is tall, with a long muzzle and familiar white fur. Long, black hair flows wildly from his head, long enough for the back to be in a ponytail, tied by a red band, but not the front, which sticks out awkwardly. His eyes are pointed. Down his back is a red cape, joined around his neck by a spherical object which looked like a king's seal.

His torso fur is ashen grey and his legs are covered by purple trousers. A sword hilt rests upon his back. SMAZ UGONIH.

Choices:

MAIN
Watch where you're going.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Sorry!

After choices:

SMAZ
You peasants are in *MY* way. I am on a mission from the king. I suggest you remove yourselves from my path.

PHOENIX
Mouthy little scock, ain't he?

SMAZ
No Fie will talk me down.

RIZUMU fronts and starts jumping up and down.

RIZUMU
Wolfy!

SMAZ
Is something wrong with that little girl?

RIZUMU
He's so cute and fluffy!

SMAZ takes a step back. Suddenly, a squadron of police run towards them.

POLICE OFFICER
There he is! Shoot for Pikhaul's honour! Ask questions later!

SMAZ
Under King Yutah's orders , I may cut down those in the way of the mission!

FIGHT VS. SMAZ.

In-battle dialogue:

MAIN
You mentioned the king. We need to speak with him.

SMAZ

Only gladiators wear such armour. I will not take one of your standing, if that is what you are suggesting.

PHOENIX

Then we'll beat your fuzzy face until you agree!

After fight:

The POLICE OFFICERS now surround the group.

POLICE OFFICER

Hand over the box.

SMAZ

...All right. I will take you to the king. However, only if you aid me in the take down of these spiteful curs.

MAIN

Bring it.

FIGHT with POLICE OFFICERS. After fight:

SMAZ

I have been cut. I require a leech.

RIZUMU

Eeeeeewwwwww.

Choices:

MAIN

I'll get you a leech.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

All you need is Lione.

After choices:

LIONE

Why a leech?

SMAZ

You definitely come from foreign lands... we use them to heal wounds. I assume you use the alternative - bananas?

ALIZA

The delicious yellow fruit?

SMAZ

Goodness, that is sickening! You eat bananas? I respect anyone with that level of tolerance. We will find a leech in this market.

LIONE

This will give us a good chance to get us some weapons, too.

PLAYER can explore the market. Story continues once they locate the correct stall:

TRADER

Bananas! Get your bananas here!
Leeches for all ailments! Only 1 GP!

MAX

What's GP? Guinea Pigs?

SMAZ

Gold Pieces. The whole world uses GP. Where on Yarth are you from?

ALIZA

Uh... all the way south.

LIONE

And west. All the way South-West.

SMAZ

Eyetopia? I have never been, myself. In that case, allow me to convert your currency to the equivalent in Gold Pieces. An estimate.

TRADER

Leech or banana?

SMAZ

I will just leave this leech on my cut. I will take you inside the castle when you are ready.

GAMEPLAY. SMAZ joins the party. Story continues when PLAYER explores the town and tries to go into the castle entrance. Two GUARDS laugh hysterically.

GUARD 1

Ahahaha! That was absolutely hilarious!

GUARD 2

Then she took clothes off and told me to get bent.
(MORE)

GUARD 2 (CONT'D)

I wonder what she meant at time,
but now I know she coming on to me.
I confused at time, but not as
confused as her!

GUARD 1

Oh, sir... I didn't see you
standing there!

SMAZ

Yes, well, had I been in charge,
you two would have been removed
long ago. You two are by far the
most stupid guards I have ever
seen. Or heard. I shall see if I
can get the rest of the day off,
for you two, and have someone else
to replace your position.

GUARD 2

I know you want to hear about my
girly, sir!

PHOENIX

Don't touch 'em. It ain't worth it.

SMAZ

You are not in charge of me, grubby
street trash.

PHOENIX

What did you call me? You've got a
fine mouth on you for someone who
serves royalty! Want me to reshape
your muzzle?

GUARD 1

Yes, well... if you want an
audience with the king, go on
through. There's no need to fight,
sir. The king is expecting you,
Smaz.

PLAYER proceeds into the castle. Story continues when they
reach the King's chamber. A rather wide king sits on the
throne, a crown on top of his head.

KING YUTAH

Ahhh! Good of you to come, Smazzy
boy. But you're late.

SMAZ

My Lord, I ran into some trouble
with the Emperor's police, which
could only be expected considering
the box WAS in the realm of Pikhaul-

KING YUTAH

Smazzy boy, it was your fault and your fault alone that the police squadrons came after your behind. Are we clear on that?

SMAZ

Yes, my Lord.

KIM

Nova, he was at the Reality Council, when we first went...

PHOENIX

Man, does that guy look like he's eaten one cake too many.

KING YUTAH

Smazzy boy, who are these ruffians?

SMAZ

They have requested an audience with you, sire.

KING YUTAH

I'm not seeing anyone but my good knight, Smaz, at present. Leave us or face the dungeon.

Choices:

MAIN

We need to know of any Hudokai on this planet.

KING YUTAH

You're not of this world? Haha, only a fool comes to Yarth and expects fine treatment. I know not of any Hudokai. Away with you.

OR

MAIN

We're looking for energy, sire.

KING YUTAH

Energy? For what? The only energy across this land is Emperor Pikhaul's electricity. Blasted fool.

LIONE

But electricity is forbidden on this planet!

KING YUTAH

Planet? You're outsiders.

OR

MAIN

We met back at the council.

KING YUTAH

*The Reality Council? How do you...?
No. You're Nova. You were
imprisoned!*

OR

MAIN

We're looking for answers.

KING YUTAH

Aren't we all? If you wish for such
petty results, try Emperor Pikhaul.
He rules the northern side of this
country.

KIM

Is Pikhaul like... a gherkin? Is he
a food? The universe has so many
yummy substances to try.

KING YUTAH

Universe? You're not just
traveller's of this land, I see.
You don't belong on this planet.

After choices:

SMAZ

An outsider... to this planet?

KING YUTAH

Never you mind. I have a better
idea. You all stay in my company. I
will see you after my knight, Smaz.

SMAZ

Sire, I have retrieved and stolen
the box, as you requested. It was
not easy, but I managed to-

KING YUTAH

EXCELLENT! Give me the box, now.

MAX

Fat bubbas are always rude.

SMAZ

This is... unlike the king.

SMAZ takes a step back.

KING YUTAH

Smazzy boy! What's the matter? Are you stupid?

SMAZ

Sire, I have never questioned your requests. I am your faithful knight. However, you seem to forget that it was I who had to go through the momentous task of obtaining this box. Tell me, in return, since I know I shall receive no praise or gratitude from you, why do you desire this box so?

KING YUTAH

My dear Smazzy boy... no one even dares talk to me like that, not even my first-class top knight. I'll let it slip on this occasion, since you *ARE* so loyal to me. However, I'll ask *YOU*, first... why do you speak to me in such harsh tone?

SMAZ

These past few weeks have been sour to me - you have ordered me around so harshly, and all for personal gain, despite the fact your royalty sees you at the top, already. I do not understand why you have been so... greedy these past few weeks. I have put my life on the line, but I do not understand why. Sire, I asked why you wanted such an odd item because I do not feel that you deserve this box.

There is a long pause.

PHOENIX

Anyone wanna cut this tension with a hot knife?

KING YUTAH

Arise Smaz. You need not bow down to me, anymore.

PHOENIX

Oh, you're gonna get it, Smazzy boy.

SMAZ

It's Smaz.

KING YUTAH

You are dismissed from your position.

SMAZ

WHAT?

KING YUTAH

You heard, cloth ears. A knight who questions their King's motives must be dismissed. Especially one who is deeply suspicious of his King's reasons.

PHOENIX

Now hang on, if we didn't have the free will to speak our mind, then we'd be in a dictatorship that demands loss of freedom. We all need to be free from restraints.

KING YUTAH

You are so naive. You may know so little, but already you know too much. You must all be annihilated.

MAX

So that's why you made us stay and listen, you sick fluff.

KING YUTAH

And once you're all dead, I'll take that stolen box from Smazzy boy. Aera! Get in here!

A figure darts into the room. Everything she wears is black. On her top half she wears a small, black, waist-jacket, and on top is black tank-top. Her bottom half is of tight trousers, also black, and long leather boots... black. Her hair is equally as long as SMAZ's and, you guess it, black. AERA.

AERA

Is this the impudent rogue you want dispatched, sire?

KING YUTAH

Why yes, thank you Aera. You shall be rewarded handsomely for your cunning speed in this situation.

MAX

Man, she looks like an assassin. Are we going to die here? Oh. Wait. Are you going to die here?

ALIZA

Stop rubbing it in. I get it.
You're dead.

SMAZ

You... you... knew.... I was going
to question you.

KING YUTAH

No, my boy, I was going to have you
killed after retrieving the box,
anyway. I knew that as soon as you
obtained it, you would be one more
soul to know about this box. So I
hired Aera, the world's greatest
assassin, to dispose of you. No one
must know. I guess you proved your
worth long ago. Aera, kill them.

Suddenly, SMAZ begins to glow a white colour, smoke slowly
rising into the air. An explosion. A flash. SMAZ knocks away
AERA and the rest of the cast, beginning to float into the
air.

MAIN

What the fluff is happening? Does
Smaz have Hudokai?

KIM

His energy is rising... no Hudokai
traces registered. I-I'm scared!

AERA

So you know magic, too. You truly
must be skilled, sir knight. Not
even I can control true magic, only
that in speed and evasion. Your
'magic' will not save you.

SMAZ

You will not take me alive!

Quick Time Event fight with SMAZ and AERA. Eventually, it
ends with SMAZ launching his sword towards AERA, only for
AERA to leap out the way... and the sword to stab KING YUTAH
through the chest. There is a pause.

MAX

Ooooooh scocking hell. He just
killed the king. Fluff me...

ALIZA

I think we're all fluffed.

AERA

You moron! Idiot! IMBECILE!

SMAZ

I do not know what hurts worse -
your blade or your insults.

AERA

King Yutah would have paid me a
hellephant's load of gold for
eliminating you! Just you wait
until you get your scock down here
so I can kick it so hard, you'll
wish you were never born!

KIM

What's a hellephant?

MAX

A really heavy monster.

SMAZ

You know... I do wish I had not
been born. Life seems meaningless
when it only consists of your own
self.

Two guards immediately burst in.

GUARD 1

We heard some commotion in here.
What's going on?

AERA darts out of the room, before they notice her.

GUARD 2

Smaz? What... your sword... in the
king... accomplices... SEIZE THEM!

PHOENIX

Oh man, now look what you did.

SMAZ

This is hardly my fault! If we work
together, we may escape here alive.

MAIN

Phoenix, don't say anything, just
do it. We need to escape and
rethink our plan of action.

GAMEPLAY. Player must fight their way to the castle entrance,
GUARDS constantly out to get them. Once PLAYER reaches the
entrance, AERA leaps upon MAIN, knocking him to the ground.

AERA

You're staying here to take the
wrap, outsiders. And as for you,
Smaz, you will pay dearly for
ridding me of my pay, you little
scum-filled rodent!

She attacks SMAZ.

SMAZ

MY EYE!

AERA

Tsk, I was hoping to blind you, but that'll leave a scar to remember me by, vermin.

MAIN

Hey, she talks like you, Lione.

KIM

Now that you mention it... there are a lot of similarities...

LIONE

Don't compare me to that psychopath.

AERA

Psychopath? I should strike you down right now. Funny, my hair used to be red, too, 'till I dyed it. Not very good when hiding in the shadows, you see.

LIONE

You couldn't possibly be... an alternate version of me?!

AERA

Tsk. Here they come. See you around, scum bags.

AERA runs off.

KIM

We are in a different dimension to where you originate from, Lione. It is possible.

MAIN

Now's not the time. Let's just get out of here! We need to find some place to hide!

SMAZ

There is a quiet Inn near the water's edge. We can hide there.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the Inn and go inside. The female waitress greets the PLAYER.

WAITRESS KATE

Good morning, Smaz. Who are your lovely friends?

(MORE)

WAITRESS KATE (CONT'D)

Have you recommended Ivel Inn to your new comrades. I mean, they must be comrades, they can't be friends. You never have any fr-

SMAZ

Good morning, Kate. Please do not pry your nose into my business. I just need to lay low a while. Will you honour that?

WAITRESS KATE

For a drink, each. What will it be?

PLAYER is given a choice of drinks. Select one and KATE will head to the bar. Two loud voices rise above the quietnes of the Inn. One is dress in black, MCCLAREN.

The other wears a muddy red coat with a dirty gold trimming. MARCO.

MCCLAREN

What do ya mean it's metal?

MARCO

Me 'and was cut off a looong time ago, so leave me be...

MCCLAREN

Nah, nah, come on, let's see ya do some damage with it!

MARCO

I said I don' wan' any trouble McClaren...

MCCLAREN

...And I said, Marco, that I wan' trouble. Lemme see ya figh' me!

MARCO

You pile o' bananas, McClaren!

MAIN

Are bananas really that disgusting?

SMAZ

All fruit is excrement from wildlife. Why do you not know this?

PHOENIX

Where I'm from, fruit is so rare, that it's seen as a delicacy.

SMAZ

You sicken me.

MCCLAREN

Whilst you fight with them hands,
I'll fight with some pistols.

Choices:

MAIN

Do that and I'll fight you,
instead.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

...

SMAZ

*You do that, and I will have to
punish you, myself.*

After choices:

MCCLAREN

No one interrupts McClaren when
he's threatening someone.

SMAZ

No one has such terrible breath and
bizarre literary skills to talk
about themselves in third person.

MARCO

I can 'andle me own battles.

WAITRESS KATE approaches with the PLAYER's drink.

WAITRESS KATE

You'd better steer clear of ol'
Smaz, there. He's a top knight' at
the castle, you hear?

MCCLAREN

Fluffin' freaks o' nature, sticking
your unnatural short noses and
furless bodies into my business.

SMAZ

Drop your pistols and leave.

MCCLAREN

Fine. Mark my words, Marco, I'll be
back.

MARCO

And when that day comes, you'll ge'
one o' these pistols to the head!

McCLAREN walks out of the Inn.

WAITRESS KATE

Sit down, I got your drinks, here.

PLAYER sits down with MARCO.

MARCO

McClaren has been givin' me a hard time since I got in ter town... so I thank ye must 'umbly sir knight and gladiators.

MAIN

Uh... we're not-

LIONE

Shut up and play along.

Choices:

MAIN

As a gladiator from another land, I must fight evil-doers and protect those in need!

LIONE

Urgh, you idiot.

OR

MAIN

I'm not a gladiator who protects the weak, like you.

MARCO

I don't reckon yer in no position to insul' me. I was only sayin' thanks.

After options:

LIONE

It isn't a problem, Mr... uh...

MARCO

No misters, jus' plain ol' Marco.

MAX

I don't wanna be Mr. Depressed Head, but are you sure staying in the open is good for hiding?

SMAZ

People leave this Inn alone. It has a foul reputation. I am a regular here because no one dare think to look for me here during my time off.

MARCO

I ain't from around 'ere. Jus' visitin'. On me own.

PHOENIX

Forgive me for saying, but you strike me as a sea dog who'd have a big ol' crew.

MARCO

I can see why you'd say tha', what with me metallic hand where me old one used ter be... pirates normally 'ave limbs missing.

LIONE

Or an eye, which you're also missing. You shouldn't have that technology on-

MARCO

And yer righ'. I did 'ave a crew. But they mutinied me and left me in the sea, nearby. I now got no one to go back ter.

PHOENIX

Nope. I'm done. I'm not interested enough to listen to another long story. Let's get going. That crow's bound to have gone by now.

KIM

I still hear violence, outside. It's best we lay low a while longer.

MARCO

A long time ago on the seas, far, far away... Sea Wars. Okay, so it weren't tha' long ago. One night, I met a wonderful woman, who was sooooo beautiful, me 'eart melted from 'er sheer sight... her hair were shiny and sleek, goin' down to 'er perfectly rounded shoulders, wearing a perfect name - Melissa.

SMAZ

Infatuation. Admiration. Love. These things I will never understand.

MARCO

I admired 'er chest. It was big. So I stole it.

MAX

The last time I tried to touch
someone's chest, she smacked me
away.

KIM

But we found some coins in a chest,
don't you remember? I'm confused.

MARCO

Me and me crew had invaded a nicely
built ship of a cap'ain by the name
o'... now wha' was it, again? Ah
yes, Lugae the Large. Foolish
pirate. He was more fat than he was
smart. Any'ow, we easily bombarded
the ship with our cannon balls and
sorts, stealing the riches, but the
true prize were the 'ostage - my
dear Melissa. 'Er clothing were
minimal, thanks to Lugae's crew...
but wha' she did wear were fine
white silk. In the strong'old with
her, were 'er father's gold that
the pirates had taken when
kidnapping 'er. So I stole it.

PHOENIX

So much for 'love'.

MARCO

Arr, not quite. I untied 'er. She
was ever so thankful, but I 'ad to
steal the treasure first. Her
father WAS a different pirate, ya
know? I wish I hadnee done it, now.
Being from a pirate line, herself,
Melissa grabbed one o' my crew's
scimitars and caught me by
surprise, angry at me not *REALLY*
saving her after me crew came onto
the ship's deck. At this point, the
ship were sinkin', but untying her
was a bad mistake.

ALIZA

Blergh! This drink tastes like
someone vomited in a cup.

MARCO

It's ale. Ahhhhh, I love me ale, I
really do, I do. It don' break
hearts like women do! Melissa...
she... when she caught me by
surprise, she took no time in
slashing down my face and
ultimately...
(MORE)

MARCO (CONT'D)

gorged my eye out, throwing it into the deadly depths o' the seas!

SMAZ

My eye was recently slashed, too. I would have been blinded had my eyelid not been closed.

MARCO

You got lucky. Melissa and I then fough'. The battle didn' last very long and she overwhelmed me, as well as me crew, who obviously though' mighty o'er beauty and power. They turned against me at that moment and joined 'er side. I were flabbergasted. They tied me to the mast o' the sinking ship and thar I were... sinking with the ship we had attacked that rainy evening whilst they sailed away in escape boats. Me own ship still stood sail nearby, simply 'cause they wan'ed it as a beacon of my final resting place.

ALIZA

What a terrible story. Blake's wondering how you escaped?

MARCO

Blake? Arr, well, through the stolen treasure. I discovered thar were a lot of gold in the chest, as well as some ol' mirror piece o' some sorts. It seemed valuable, with a big pearl in the centre and bordered with gold, reflectin' mah face. I placed in in mah jacket, and as I was abandoned thar, in the rain, somethin' amazing happened... It shone a ligh' onto the ropes, that tied me to the mast, burnin' a hole in the knots. It were a miracle, like it was alive or some'ink. I dropped to the water, and swam to mah ship, alive. All the while, knowin' I were somehow saved that day.

SMAZ

Impressive.

MARCO

So 'ere I am today. I ain't found me crew mates yet, but if I do, they deserve death.

(MORE)

MARCO (CONT'D)

Bloody traitors! Still, I kept the
pearl with me for good luck.

MARCO produces the pearl object from inside his jacket.

MARCO (CONT'D)

I can't think, fer the life o' me,
what this great ol' pearl is for,
though.

AERA

I can.

AERA appears behind MARCO and holds a blade to his neck.

AERA (CONT'D)

Move another inch and you're dead,
Captain Riches.

LIONE

It isn't worth it. Bringing another
criminal down for his riches is not
worth any justice or prize.

AERA

Don't you dare talk as if you know
who I am. You make light of me. I
am a hired assassin - the world's
best, according to record. I will
hunt your accomplices down until
death for what you did at the
castle.

MARCO

Get yer blade off o' me, ya hag!

SMAZ

I believe you want *ME*, not *HIM*.
Although I seriously am wondering
your values in the matter, since
the King is dead, and *YOU* will not
receive any pay from it.

WAITRESS KATE

Whaaaaat? The king is dead?!

PHOENIX

Smoooooooooth.

AERA

Precisely. Your loyal knight, here,
slaughtered the king mercilessly
after he hired me to assassinate
Smaz, here. The king knew Smaz was
out to kill him and ascend the
throne after killing his daughter,
too, and so got me in to deal with
him personally.

SMAZ

No, no - you have it wrong. I
accidentally killed the king
through-

WAITRESS KATE

He's not denying it! I can't
believe we trusted you all these
years! Traitor!

MARCO

Oh snap.

The few people, in the Inn, brandish weapons and head towards
the crew.

ALIZA

I-is it normal to look at someone
with blood lust? They look like
they're ready to get revenge on us.

AERA

Now it's time for us to get going,
my little treasure...

MARCO

I ain' goin' anywhere, you slimy
ol' sea witch!

AERA

Ohoho, yes you are, little shaggy
sea dog, for I need you to escape
this madness on your pirate ship. I
overheard your little story and
with your ship, you shall take me
to the great fortune I so deserve,
now that I've missed out from the
king.

MARCO

I don' know the location o' any,
you dumb arse-assin.

AERA

That pearl of yours is a 'Seal
Piece' to the great oceans. It will
unlock the seal to the greatest
fortune imaginable! With your ship,
and with that piece, you'll
navigate me to its treasure.

MARCO

Absolute rubbish!

AERA

Imbecile! The king knew this and wanted Smaz to steal the only map to the seal shrine - the place where the Seal Piece must be used to unlock the treasure. So Smaz stole it from Emperor Pikhaul. The King wanted even more riches, the fool. That is why he wanted Smaz dead - he knew too much. Of course, I eavesdropped at my own discretion.

MAX

Fluff this!

MAX attacks AERA from behind, knocking her over as the crowd begins to advance.

MARCO

You're all good guys, ain't ya?
Everyone follow me ter me ship!

MAIN

Let's get out of here!

PLAYER runs out of the Inn. Story continues when they reach MARCO's ship.

MAIN (CONT'D)

Why are you helping us?

MARCO

You helped me out, and now I help you out. An eye for an eye.

SMASZ

How ironic.

MARCO

Fluff. The crowd's found us. So I'll 'elp you escape on mah ship fer a small while. I'll be searching out this ol' seal thin', to see if it is true. At least I get meself some companions fer the journey. Yer don't realise how lonely it is until you are mutinied.

MAIN

Everyone jump on board!

MAIN leaps onto the ship, as does the rest of the crew. The ship begins to move away from port, when suddenly, AERA leaps down from the mast, having hidden on board. She lands on MARCO.

AERA

Take me with you or I'll cut your throat. Navigate toward the seal shrine.

MARCO

I don' know where this 'seal shrine' is, yer fool.

SMAZ

Luckily, Aera told us where the map to it is - in the box I stole. If I am to hide out at sea and if you are to stay alive, we are to all work in unison. We must be civil.

AERA

Civil?! I'm calling the shots!

LIONE

There is more of us and one of you. Without the threat of a mob, in the background, I'm certain we can overpower you.

SMAZ

Now, let us start our journey on this... sea of seals.

SCENE fades out. The sun sets in the sky. SMAZ walks out the edge of the ship, on the calm waves, where the PLAYER, MAIN, is.

SMAZ (CONT'D)

Gladiators from another planet. Is that true?

Choices.

MAIN

No. We're from Eyetopia.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

Yes. We come from other worlds.

After choices:

SMAZ

Am I to assume everyone is furless and have flat noses, out there?

MAIN

Not everyone. There's obviously a fair amount of animal races which have inhabited everywhere, like yourself and Phoenix.

SMAZ

Do not put us in the same category.
I am a Kyote. He is a Fie.

MAIN

He's a fox. Phoenix may joke about things, but he means well.

SMAZ

I do not think street rebels mean well, at all. With the king dead, we all have questions that need an answer. I am sorry you came all this way for nothing.

MAIN

Don't worry about it. Had we more time, we could've circled back to our own ship, but... well, here we are, on someone else's ship, in the middle of the ocean.

MARCO approaches.

MARCO

Lovely sunset, eh? We should be far enough from shore, now.

SMAZ

Inside this box is the very map to the seal shrine.

MARCO

Lemme take a look. I'll need it ter naviga'e ter the shrine, after all.

SMAZ

Here. I thought I knew the king. I served him for twelve years and then he reduces me to trash. Whatever treasure your Seal Piece leads to, at this seal shrine, it is dangerous.

MAIN

I have a feeling... that this treasure must be what I'm looking for. Large Hudokai. This may be the answer I'm looking for.

SMAZ

Just one thing bemuses me. This must be what my father referred to as 'the seal of the seas' all those years ago...

MARCO

Wanna talk about it? Sounds importan'. Whilst you do tha', I can unlock this infernal box. It's jammed.

SMAZ

A long time ago...

Everything turns black and white. SCENE shifts to what appears to be a kitchen. Two figures, one looking like SMAZ and the other a woman, are fighting. ROVE has his back turned to MARANET, SMAZ's mother.

MARANET

How could you? After everything we've been through!

ROVE

That's the problem with you women, you're all become too clingy, like a leech that latches itself upon a creature. You suck money away from those you latch upon and you demand emotions in return! You disgust me!

MARANET

If that's such a problem, then *WHY* were you sleeping with someone else?!

A small SMAZ clutches a teddy on the staircase, looking through the banister railing.

ROVE

Perhaps because she didn't cling and suck away my life. Women have a habit of doing that past one night with them. I don't know why I bother!

MARANET

H-how many women have you seen?

ROVE

Plenty. And why shouldn't I? None of them commit to me, not after one night with them. A bit of fun here and there keeps life interesting.

MARANET

Why do you say such cruel things about women, Rove? *WHY?!*

ROVE

They are fickle creatures, inferior to men in every way.
(MORE)

ROVE (CONT'D)

All they are good for are bearing children, growing fat and dying. Oh yes, and for having a bit of 'fun' with.

MARANET

You can't be serious! I should whack you with this pot and do away with you! Why stay with me this long if you're such a misogynistic fluff head?

ROVE

You gave me that 'fun', once... the thing I need after a hard night's work away... and you gave me a child. Not one I particularly love, but one I know I can bring up to be strong, following in my footsteps.

There is a flash. ROVE is upon MARANET.

ROVE (CONT'D)

Smaz needed to grow under your care whilst I worked with my plans. Now your time is up. See you in the underworld, Maranet.

ROVE unleashes a harsh red light on MARANET. SMAZ runs down the rest of the stairs and to his mother's aid. She is lifeless.

YOUNG SMAZ

M-mother? She's... not moving. How did you...?

ROVE

Magic. No trick. Reality. Magic is very much real, Smaz. You're mother is dead. It's time. Come with me.

YOUNG SMAZ

N-no! Father... why did you... mother!

ROVE

I was wrong. You're not ready. You're not nearly strong enough, mourning over your mother like a sick runt. So be it. You're to fend for yourself, now that your mother's dead. If you wish to find me, locate the Seal of the Seas.

SCENE shifts back to the present day, in colour.

SMAZ

My father used magic, that day,
just as I did back at the castle.
Magic is... rare. It is seen as an
abomination.

MAIN

I wouldn't worry about it. It could
just mean your father was subject
to Hudokai infusion at some point.
Life is full of coincidences that
aren't so surprising, in the end.

AERA then strides on over to them.

AERA

Let me tell you something. I knew
my parents. I knew them. At least I
THOUGHT I did. Then one day, I
learnt I could use magic.

MAIN

You can use 'magic', too?

AERA

Yup. Those who have it can only use
one ability. Smaz seems to know how
levitate, if not himself, then
other objects... like his sword...
into the king. I never knew anyone
else with the power of magic, until
then.

SMAZ

I did it all by mistake. I do not
know how to harness such a power.
That was my first time.

AERA

Weakling. Once you learn to use it,
that magic will come naturally. I
know. I accidentally discovered I
had the magical power of extreme
speed when I saw my best friend was
falling down a ravine... to certain
death. The painful thoughts and
memories trigger the ability.

MAIN

Hm, that's not like Hudokai at all.

AERA

My parents weren't happy. I was no
gifted child to them. They didn't
even see me as a child, after that.
They saw me as a monster.

(MORE)

AERA (CONT'D)

They punished me, thinking I had been possessed with a demon, and threatened to kill me if I ever used it again... they didn't clap me on the back or take pride that I could use magic... they hated me. From then onwards, I was never seen the same again.

MARCO

So, the hag has a bit of a past. Good. Makes you less of the monster your parents saw you as, and more of a person. More of a hag.

Suddenly, the ship rocks as an explosion hits the waters, around them.

MAIN

What the fluff was that? Is the ship being attacked?

MARCO

Cannon fire! Everyone get down! It's the king's marines!

SMAZ

That means... princess Mirru has come after us!

MARCO

I'll man the cannons.

SMAZ

Against the princess?! I... cannot attack the princess, herself, not after a lifetime of protecting her.

MAIN

Here they come!

MAIN and SMAZ vs. Battalion. After several battles:

SMAZ

A heavy wind is brewing and that just makes everything so much more cheerful when battling a very large fleet of battle ships, does it not?

PHOENIX

You guys all right? We heard the commotion and came up to crush the opposition for you.

SMAZ

FOR us? We are handling ourselves just fine, street trash.

PHOENIX

And this is thanks I get.

MAIN

Phoenix is right. We need all the help we can get.

SMAZ

Aera, we are going to need you and your abilities if we have any hope of surviving this onslaught of impracticality.

PHOENIX

Oh, now you ask for help! You ungrateful posh fluff!

KNIGHT

You are a traitor to the kingdom! You need either to be killed or sent to prison for a lifetime. Princess Mirru orders it.

SMAZ

I thought so. You knights want me for 'killing the king'. We will take you all down and immobilise princess Mirru from attacking. That way, we will escape. Ready, Sir Nova?

MAIN

Ready. Come on, Lione, we've got bodies to pile up.

LIONE

Your blood lust is... worrying.

PLAYER picks part and resumes control. PLAYER will have access to SMAZ, AERA and MARCO in battle, too. Once PLAYER reaches MIRRU's ship, story continues.

KIM

It's strangely quiet, but I sense a life force hidden on this ship.

AERA

We'll split up and search.

SMAZ

I mean it, do not kill the princess. Only immobilise her.

AERA

I'll do what I want. If I reach her first, she's all mine.

SMAZ

So, you are against killing the king, but not the princess? You are an amoral cur.

AERA

The princess can't offer me riches comparable to the seal shrine now, can she? She's a burden and in our way. We're splitting teams.

PLAYER chooses two teams. AERA runs off with her team. SMAZ is with the other.

SCENARIO #1 - SMAZ FIGHTS CARLOS:

A figure, dressed in golden armour blocks SMAZ's way, on the ship. CARLOS.

CARLOS

Under orders of Princess Mirru, you are under arrest.

SMAZ

Carlos. I see you have continued to pledge your alliance with Princess Mirru.

CARLOS

Oh yes. King Yutah gave me the job of protecting the princess since she was born, and I will never leave my post and disrespect his wishes. Unlike a certain traitorous coward, I know.

SMAZ

I protected the princess when I could. I am no traitor. The king ordered me dead. You hear that, Carlos? Dead. The king was the traitor to his own Kingdom, not I.

CARLOS

How *DARE* you speak of the King so wildly! Smaz, you are nothing but a vile dog! You *DESERVE* the death sentence Mirru has given you!

SMAZ

Even the princess has no faith in me... so be it. We will duel to the death.

SMAZ and team vs. CARLOS.

In battle dialogue, at fight's end:

SMAZ (CONT'D)

You always loved your position because you wanted to get closer to the princess. You are the 'vile dog', Carlos. You. You cared not for age, but only your selfish desires.

CARLOS

...That isn't true. The princess favoured me because I am not like you. A pathetic dog that only wanted attention... and yet, you always *DID* get the attention of the king. You worked your way through the ranks until you were second-best. I hated you. Your strength improved in leaps and bounds. It rivalled even mine. A rival. I hate thinking of you as my equal. I hate *YOU*, you pathetic *WORM*.

CARLOS uses ELECTRIC PULSAR in battle. SMAZ explodes into the glowing white form with red eyes, as before in AERA's battle.

SMAZ

My magical ability has awakened! Allow me to levitate a ship... in your direction!

CARLOS

Smaz... you... are a disgrace to everyone!

SMAZ

No, you, Carlos... you are a disgrace to the *KING*.

CARLOS

You *DOG*!

SMAZ uses his overdrive and destroys CARLOS. Fight ends.

SCENARIO #2 - AERA FIGHTS MIRRU'S ELITE:

AERA runs toward a young girl, of 16, sitting in a chair beneath the deck.

AERA

Aha! Princess Mirru... prepare for your end.

Two knights comes out of the shadows and in front of MIRRU.

MIRRU

It's useless. These soldiers of the castle are elites.
(MORE)

MIRRU (CONT'D)

There are almost in the same class as Smaz, except that these have much stronger defensive capabilities, thanks to the armour I invented for them. My best knight, Carlos, has the same.

AERA

I am the world's greatest assassin. With my magic, I suggest you prepare for a world of pain.

FIGHT vs. MIRRU and TWO ELITE KNIGHTS. After battle:

AERA (CONT'D)

That's one princess immobilised. She can float here, unconscious, and fend for herself when she wakes up. Serves her right.

END OF SCENARIO.

After SCENARIOS, MARCO drops an unconscious SMAZ onto his ship's deck, the battalion defeated. AERA also approaches.

AERA (CONT'D)

(Excited)

Is he dead?

KIM

He is showing life signs. He is unconscious from his magical ability's use.

SMAZ

Ungh...

MARCO

A few hour's rest will 'ave you righ' as rain, again.

AERA

Weaklings.

MARCO

Yeah? Well 'e 'elped us against tha' there fleet jus' as much as you did. And these guys did us wonders, too.

LIONE

I used to think as you did, Aera. It isolated me from others.

AERA

Who the fluff are you lot, anyway? You're all hairless and have abilities of your own.

MAX

Quit bitching. I'm Max. The yellow coat is Aliza. The silver hair is Nova. The red head is Lione. The small girl is Kim. The orange fox is Phoenix.

AERA

Fox?

SMAZ

Fie.

PHOENIX

No, fox.

MAIN

And I believe that seal shrine's treasure is actually the large Hudokai we're looking for.

MARCO

All right. Now tha's gone and done and we're all properly introduced, I'll examine the map and ge' us ter the seal shrine... Looks like it's at the centre of the flat world.

MAIN

You do know the world's round... right?

MARCO

Haha, yer a funny one. To the centre o' the sea! Just grab the ship's wheel when yer ready to go. I'll let yer steer fer a bit.

PLAYER resumes control. When PLAYER interacts with the wheel, they are placed on the world map, controlling the pirate ship. Story continues once they reach a small island in the middle of the sea, the seal shrine.

Random battles with crabs called 'Kobbs' can occur on the island. In the middle of the island is a large rock formation with a cave.

MARCO (CONT'D)

I' looks like the shrine mus' be inside tha' there cave in the rock. I'd rather we all wen' in there together since there's no tellin' wha' migh' be lurkin' in its shadows.

ALIZA

I, for one, am not scared. If any of you ever met a pudgy man with blood spattered on him, you'll know nothing is scarier than that.

AERA

There is never anything to fear when you live every day as your last. If you think I'm scared of treasure, you have another thing coming!

AERA races into the cave.

MARCO

Let's get into tha' cave before that hag puts our crew in poten'ial danger. The seal shrine mus' be in there.

PLAYER resumes control. Inside the surprisingly spacious cavern, a shrine stands at the back of the cave. Four pillars stand tall in a square formation, each one with a beast carved into it and a circular slot. Story continues once PLAYER has interacted with the shrine.

AERA

(Fuming)

Where's the treasure?!

MARCO

Don't yer look at me, balloon chest! I ain't got a clue.

AERA

Hmph.

KIM

The pillars show four circular slots. Each one looks the size of our Seal Piece. There must be four Seal Pieces, not just one.

MAX

We need to find another three of these fluffing things before we even get that large Hudokai. For fluff's sake!

AERA

No treasure until more of these are found? I've been lied to!

MAIN

No one's lied about anything. None of us knew.

KIM

I can sense it... Nova, I think the Seal Piece is Hudokai.

ALIZA

Wait, that's it! The four Seal Pieces are all part of the large Hudokai, we're after! If we get all four pieces, we'll get the full thing!

MAIN

Then there's our answer. Kim will be able to locate the other Seal Pieces. She can sense Hudokai.

KIM

I couldn't earlier as we had it mixed with our own Hudokai. But I can feel it... other sources around the world...

MARCO

And any other treasure'll be revealed once we ge' all four, I reckon. A palace of Gold Pieces! Imagine that! I'm puttin' the Seal Piece in one o' them pillar slots.

MARCO does so. The cave illuminates orange... and a being suddenly appears out of nowhere. A woman with long, orange hair, thin purple eyes, peach fur and clothing made entirely of belts. HAZEL MANDRA.

HAZEL

Those who sin, must be killed.

MARCO

Sorry, do we know you?

HAZEL

I am the voice of the innocent. I am the condemner of the sinful. I am but a mere shadow of the Seal Piece you inserted.

MARCO

So the answer's no, really, ain't it?

HAZEL

I have been named Hazel Mandra. Rove Ugonih made sure that no one would ever be able to activate the Seal of the Seas after he did, and thus I was created to stop those who activated this Seal Piece at the shrine.

(MORE)

HAZEL (CONT'D)

We 'Seal Monsters' are hidden in every Seal Piece. We are their protectors..

SMAZ

You... you know something about my father! Please, I beg of your to tell me!

HAZEL

Your father? Rove, yes... a Kyote who gained so much power, way beyond your comprehension. He created me, a magical being with psychic powers. I can manipulate the minds of your friends. I can destroy them, too. I can do anything with my mind by merely thinking about it. I will stop you from proceeding.

MAIN

I sure as hell don't care for what you are, but if we're gonna have to decapitate you to keep going, then you'd best be ready.

SMAZ

Ungh! My... mind!

HAZEL

But are you prepared to fight your crew mates? I can control their minds, as well as their bodies through their minds.

KIM

Marco, Aera and Smaz look like they're in pain. We have to release her grip from them, Nova.

HAZEL

This is where you all atone for the deaths you have caused others. I am prepared.

BOSS FIGHT 20: SMAZ, MARCO, AERA and HAZEL MANDRA.

PLAYER must make sure to keep SMAZ, MARCO and AERA alive throughout the fight to win, otherwise it's GAME OVER. Once HAZEL dies, the fight ends.

SMAZ

My mind is freed, at last. Thank you, Nova. We would not have survived without your aid.

PHOENIX

Keep your thanks. You would've been lost without me, Smaz. Lost.

MAX

Will you two stop squabbling?
You're worse than Lione and Nova!

PHOENIX

He started it.

MARCO

Piece o' cake.

KIM

What's cake? Is it yummy?

MARCO

It's delicious. Now let's... let's just rest fer a bit, outside.

Everyone heads outside, where night has fallen. They sleep around a camp fire. NOVA stays awake. MAX approaches. Everyone else is asleep.

MAIN

Max, do you think life goes on after death?

MAX

I'm the wrong person to ask, mate.

MAIN

You know what I mean.

MAX

The virus is getting to ya. You need to take a chill pill and sleep it off. If you keep on worrying about your death, you'll just get eaten up.

MAIN

I suppose. It's hard to concentrate when life's close to the end.

ALIZA turns in her sleeping bag, at that instance.

ALIZA

I couldn't help but overhear, Nova. I'll let you in on something. Razz condemned me to a short life, before I even lived it. But in your, in Max's, in everyone's company, I've enjoyed myself more than I ever have. I could die quite happily with these memories.

(MORE)

ALIZA (CONT'D)

In the end, we're dictated by death, but if we let that get to us, we'll never enjoy the short life we have, right now.

MAX

Haha, listen to us. We're like the three imagoes of death.

MAIN

I'll do what I can. Thanks, guys.

SCENE fades out. Morning arrives.

AERA

What do you call a sloth in some armour? Nova.

LIONE

Haha! I like your tone, Aera.

MAIN

Come on, I just woke up. I don't need this, right now.

PHOENIX

They've been like this all morning. I'm getting worried that Lione's new best friend is... herself.

MARCO

(Rather drunkenly)
Come on, ge' on, already.

LIONE

So where are we heading, next?

KIM

I can sense a strong Hudokai presence to the north, somewhere.

MARCO

(Drunkenly)
Is a good start. Everynyun ready?

MAX

You're drunk, aren't you? It's 9.00am and you've already been on the ale!

MARCO

(Drunkenly)
Ale, ale, it's good fer the tail... except you ain't got no tail. Yer weird folk.

MAX

If we let him drive, the ship's
done for.

MARCO

(Drunkenly)

Nah, I wouldn' le' anythin' happen
to me ship. If anythin' ever
'appened to the Jinx, I wouldn't
know wha' to do.

Suddenly, a cannonball crashes on the ship's deck, causing a
hole to appear.

MAX

You called the ship the Jinx? Are
you mad?

MARCO

(Drunkenly, in alarm)

There's a fluffin' hole in me ship!
Poor Jinxy, I'll patch ye up!

SMAZ

Stop stroking the ship. There is
another vessel approaching.

A loud, jazzy tune starts to play.

PHOENIX

They've got music, we're dead meat.

MARCO

(Drunkenly)

Wha's happenin'?

PHOENIX

Some real crazy scock.

A figure dances on board the other ship, as it approaches.
Wearing a long, battered coat, open, his orange fur dances
with him, as does his spikey burgundy hair. His eyes are
small and his smile big. KLOM KLUM

KLOM

I am the one they call the 'Red
Baron'! I am the giver of light! I
am Klom!

AERA

And you are an idiot.

KLOM

And I am an- wait, no. Don't put
words in my mouth! I am Klom of the
Fasool Seas.

AERA

Just tell us what you want and be done with it.

KLOM

I have come here with my musically talented crew of Fies to take your bounty. See, I gave you a head's up. Aren't I nice?

ALIZA

Bounty? We haven't got a bounty.

KLOM

Here. It's a newspaper. Take a read, I won't attack 'till your done.

NEWSPAPER

Investigations were carried out, yesterday, as King Yutah was found dead in his throne room after what many guards described was a vicious attack on the king by none other than top-knight Smaz Ugonih.

Interestingly, Mirru has also gone missing and it is assumed she is most likely dead. There is possibility that she is still alive and if so must return to the throne.

In recent light of this event, Emperor Pikhaul, ruler of the Northern part of the Ivel Continent and country, has been considering rule over the Yutah side of the land, making him leader of both sides, if the princess does not return. Not wishing to let the murderer, Smaz, get away with such callous actions he announced this, yesterday evening:

'Impudent rogues do not deserve a life of light. The king's death was an act of rebellion and thus we must fight against him to show him his actions were not in any way heroic to whatever cause he fights for. I am issuing a 1,000,000 Gold Piece reward to anyone who locates him and retrieves the artefact he stole from the king, as well. Failure to do both fails to receive the reward. The item is simply a box.

(MORE)

NEWSPAPER (CONT'D)

I am offering a higher sum of gold than the item is even worth since it has personal value to me.'

It is suggested to find this man, immediately. Several eye-witness statements claim he is with a pirate named Marco, from Ivel Inn. Investigations are still being carried out as to why he attacked King Yutah, but today is the day of mourning over the death of a leader. All that can be considered is that Smaz is either mad or just plain immoral. - Dewey Drummel.

SMAZ

1,000,000 Gold Pieces?!

KLOM

High, ain't it? So lemme cut to the chase - my bounty isn't that high, ya see? So rather than commit a million and one thefts, attacks on burning towns, etcetera, I'd rather slaughter someone with a higher bounty to make me higher up on the notoriety list. Then races everywhere will never look at me again and see me as a laughable figure!

PHOENIX

Too late for that, foxy chum.

KLOM

I'm a Fie, actually. Like you.

PHOENIX

No, I'm a fluffing fox.

KLOM

Well, you won't be laughing at my magical power...

MAIN

I somehow get the feeling these powers aren't so rare.

AERA

No, they are. And having magic doesn't equate to strength.

SMAZ

Marco, Nova, Aera, stand back. This fool is only after me, so I will send him on his way.

KLOM

Marco? I remember a story in which his bounty was reset and frozen.

MAIN

A bounty doesn't mean anything.

KLOM

It means everything! Let me... *en-light*-en you. Fie crew, play tune #12 - Sun Dance!

FIGHT vs. KLOM set to a jazzy tune.

Half way in the fight, a figure turns up. Short brown coat, black shirt, a Stetson hat, blue trousers, burgundy fur, sleepless eyes and a cigar in his mouth. He wears what appears to be a jet-pack, looking out of place. KEITH.

KLOM (CONT'D)

Who the fluff are you?

KEITH

I'll watch, if that's okay with you, pocket Fie.

KLOM

Whatever.

At the fight's end:

KEITH

I think that's enough of your light show. Call off the attack if you want to live.

KLOM

What makes you think you can kill me? I can turn into light. Magic!

KEITH fires a pistol, which a barrel on either side. KLOM is hit.

KEITH

Oh, now I'll have to clean my jacket.

Fight ends.

MARCO

We're leavin'.

PHOENIX

Don't be daft. You're still under the influence.

MARCO

I've jus' drank a fluff load o' coffee and me eyes are ready to pop. We're gettin' out o' 'ere.

PHOENIX

What about your ship? Aren't you worried about the damage caused from that fight?

MARCO

'Course I am! But we need ter ge' away, now! I know tha' there man. He's name's Keith and he's dangerous. It's bes' we ge' away before he turns his attention on us.

AERA

You know something, sea dog, so spit it out.

KEITH

And now that Klom has been taken care of, it's time to take you all to Pikhaul Fortress, like Klom, here.

KEITH shoots KLOM, who is then surrounded by a bubble. The bubble takes KLOM away.

ALIZA

Can't this ship turn any faster?

KEITH

I'm sure you're aware, by now, that I catch pirates for a high bounty... or anyone, if the price is right.

SMAZ

So, you have come for Marco and I, correct? After all, none of the other crew members have bounties.

KEITH

No. Just you, Smaz. Marco has, however, done wrong. He has allowed himself to co-operate with the enemy. Especially one as large as yourself, with such a high bounty. Marco has no bounty, himself. You, however... Murder of the king, slaughter of the princess and her crew and even stealing the sacred item of Pikhaul, himself. Three major offences.

SMAZ

Mirru is not dead. I made sure of that.

KEITH

Twisted morality will not save you.

SMAZ

Anyway, I am aware of what I am accused of. However, I am not aware of the situation involving Marco.

KEITH

You will know all soon. By then it will be too late. If I don't capture you, today, then he'll be your downfall. Maybe it's just because your bounty is higher than his? Maybe I'm just messing with you? All I want right now is to claim your bounty and nothing more.

MARCO

Eat my explosive bullet, Keith!

There is an explosion as MARCO shoots KEITH.

KEITH

M-my jetpack! You can't hide forever, MARCO!

KEITH goes spiralling out of control and away from them.

LIONE

He was using illegal tech from Pikhaul... Suspicious.

MAIN

What was that about, Marco?

MARCO

Not now... tell ya later, gladiator.

KIM

N-now can we continue north?

MARCO

Knowin' the north, like I do, the nearest town is called Kiwi.

KIM

Kiwi? Is that yummy, too?

ALIZA

I think it's a fruit. I read it in a book, once. Fruit is apparently delicious.

SMAZ
Fruit is scock.

MARCO
It's also the name o' a town up
thar. Kiwi.

PLAYER resumes control of the ship on the world map. Story resumes when they reach KIWI, a small town in the north.

A large stone wall surrounds KIWI. One small gateway allows entrance. Cranes tower over the wall. Everyone gets off the Jinx. MARCO moores the boat to a clamp.

MARCO (CONT'D)
Welcome to Kiwi, the industrial
town o' advancement, second only to
Pikhaul. I's a well known fac' tha'
Pikhaul is at the height of
technology.

MAIN
Pickle... he's the Emperor, right?
Member of the Reality Council?

AERA
Pikhaul rules the northern part of
Ivel. That fool probably has the
southern part in his steely grip,
now.

PHOENIX
Now that the king's gone and we
left the princess out at sea, I'd
say that's highly likely. Not that
it matters. We're looking for the
Seal Pieces. So where first?

KIM
I feel the Hudokai reading is
further to the East and not in this
town. Why have we come here?

MARCO
Well, we also need supplies. We're
down to our last bottle o' ale and
one last bit of food - pie.

Suddenly, a cloaked figure steals the bag from MARCO and runs into the town.

MARCO (CONT'D)
My pie!

AERA
Fine, I'll get it. You're all
worthless. I swear I'm the only
reliable one here.

AERA runs off, after the figure.

MARCO

I'll go after her... I don't trust
tha' sea witch.

MAIN

We'll get some food and supplies in
the meantime. See you back at the
town centre when we're done.

SCENARIO TIME, ZOMG!

SCENARIO #1 - AERA chases the HOODED FIGURE:

AERA

Now... where did he go? Gotta find
that robed thief!

GAMEPLAY. Story continues once they locate the HOODED FIGURE.

AERA (CONT'D)

Nice try, but your efforts, like
you, are useless.

HOODED FIGURE

Excuse me, uh, excuse me, madam...
I know who you are, my madamness.

AERA

Good for you. I'm gonna take this
bag back to that crusty sea dog.

HOODED FIGURE

Excuse me, madam. You're Aera,
right, madam?

AERA

What of it?

SCENE fades to black and MARCO runs in.

MARCO

There ye are, ye ruddy thief. Gimme
back my pie and ale!

HOODED FIGURE

Aera asked me to hold on to this
for yer, sir, I apologise for
stealing it, sir, please excuse me.

MARCO

All's forgiven'. Anyway, I don't
suppose yer know where she wen',
eh?

HOODED FIGURE

Excuse me, sir, but surely you know, sir, that she's an assassin, sir? I'm sure you do, sir. Please excuse me for being so naïve, sir.

MARCO

GET TO THE POINT.

HOODED FIGURE

I paid her to assassinate someone for me, sir.

MARCO

Bloody sea hag. She made me wear out my shoes fer nothin'. Now I need a new pair.

HOODED FIGURE

Excuse me, sir, but... you are Marco, correct?

MARCO

Who's askin'?

HOODED FIGURE

Second mate Rob, sir.

MARCO

YOU! You savage! Yer abandoned me at sea fer a mere beauty simply an' nothin' more!

HOODED FIGURE

Excuse me, sir, but I don't know why you continue to lie to yourself, sir. Melissa is beautiful and strong, sir, but you were nothing but, excuse me sir, a drunkard.

MARCO

Well, she ain't none o' my business, now...

HOODED FIGURE

She's looking for you, sir. Excuse me, but I don't know why you continue to run. You were always secretive, sir.

MARCO

Arr... the past is the past. Just you tell Aera, once she's done, to come back to the docks. I hate waitin' on people.

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #2 - SMAZ, PHOENIX and ALIZA explore KIWI:

Town centre.

SMAZ

Whilst Nova purchases some whittles with our limited money, I suggest you and I explore Kiwi and use this time to restock on our equipment.

ALIZA

Can I ask you something?

SMAZ

You just did.

ALIZA

Very funny. But I mean, you remind me of someone I was close to.

PHOENIX

(To SMAZ)

Meanwhile, you remind me of someone that annoyed the fluff outta me. He was a bird-brain.

SMAZ

There were Kyotes on both your planets?

ALIZA

Ah, so you finally understand that we're from another world... and yes, sort of. He was like you. He had a soft heart beneath his rough exterior.

SMAZ

Aliza, was it? I am unused to social company. Even my teacher, Kalda of the Yutah Knights, taught me to cut bonds to people and use as formal speech as possible, before he died of old age. I am telling you this so you do not misunderstand me when I say that I do not have the same attachment to you that this fellow did, that you speak of.

ALIZA

Oh... that's not what I meant.

PHOENIX

You'd better watch your mouth, Smaz. You're a wanted wolf, now. If you're not careful, someone, like me, could just walk up to you and-

PERSON
(Threateningly)
You Smaz You-Go-Near?

SMAZ
No, I am Smaz Oo-Gon-Nee.

PERSON
Oh, my mistake.

PHOENIX
Yeah, like that. But will probably
clobber you, instead.

SMAZ
It seems that Klom fellow was
correct in that people will
recognise me from my high bounty.
Let us locate the equipment and
swiftly head back to the ship.

GAMEPLAY. SCENARIO ends when PLAYER heads back to the docks.

SCENARIO #3 - MAIN and co at CHEZZA's restaurant:

MAIN enters the restaurant called CHEZZA'S MEZ with LIONE,
KIM and MAX. There are candles on the walls, but not nearly
enough to light the dank restaurant. A figure sobs at one of
the tables.

The figure has a long chef's jacket on, as well as a chef's
hat. His arms are bulky and covered in brown fur. His build
is more like a bear than anything else. CHEZZA.

CHEZZA
I'll be broke by the end o' this
week, hm...

MAX
I think we got the wrong place.
This restaurant reeks of failure.

CHEZZA
C-c-c-customers!?

CHEZZA leaps up and runs towards them.

KIM
Can you sell us food to take away?

CHEZZA
What the...? A little girl, hm?
But... what happened to your fur?

Choices:

MAIN
A shaver happened.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
We're fur real.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
We come from far away.

After choices:

LIONE
Must you, Nova?

MAIN
What? While we're at it, we may as well tell him we've come from another planet.

LIONE
You idiot! We're not supposed to let this under-developed planet know about that! Fool!

CHEZZA
Space people, hm? I don't believe ya, but I don't care. You're paying customers! You'll save my business, hm! A bit of everything, hm? I'll get it ready in no time. You wait there.

MAX
No, wait-! Man, how the fluff we gonna pay for all this scock?

MAIN
Lione, butter him up with your body.

LIONE
Shut up, Nova.

MAX
That's not a no, so...

LIONE
I'm not doing it. Besides, he won't go for that. He's a different species.

MAIN
Pah, dog-face is right, we've just gotta butter him up, ourselves.

MAX

You don't mean... with our own bodies?!

MAIN

What? No! I mean, let's just talk... get to know him. He looks lonely. He could do with the company.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they speak with CHEZZA, who is cooking behind the counter/kitchen area.

Choices:

MAIN (CONT'D)

So... you know anything about the Seal Pieces? I hear it's Hudokai.

CHEZZA

Seal Pieces... yeah, I- wait, this could use with some herbs. Gimme a mo, hm.

OR

MAIN

Where's the other chefs?

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

What's cooking? Lione's fart?

CHEZZA

You insulting the smell of my food, hm?

LIONE

No, no, he meant... where we're from, that kind of gas smells like succulent chicken. Yeah.

CHEZZA

Show me.

MAX

Yeah, Lione. I wanna smell that succulent chicken.

LIONE

You're not helping, Max. Maybe later, Mr...?

After choices:

CHEZZA

My name's Chezza and I'm the only chef left.

KIM

Checkers?

CHEZZA

It's Chezza, hm. My ma wasn't good with names. And the business is failing 'cause the ingredients are hard to get, around here. Kiwi is an industrial town... it spends all o' its riches on new 'machines' that can work on their own in order to... 'make it to the future'... but cares not on money spent on food businesses at all, hm. We need that money to get ingredients from far away that just ain't over in this country.

MAX

So, spicy ingredients to keep customers coming in and no money from the lack of customers, meaning your staff has been cut shorter than Nova's life span. I get it.

CHEZZA

Yeah... wait, what?

MAIN

The name's Nova. This is my crew.

MAX

Since when did we serve under you?

CHEZZA

I see. Well, Nova, by the end o' this week I'll have to close, hm. By that point my ingredients will have run out for good and I'll have to find something else to earn a living at.

LIONE

(Whispered)

I feel bad. We have to pay him, now.

CHEZZA

Your food's ready, hm. You seem like nice folk.

KIM

We should get going. That Seal Piece needs finding.

CHEZZA

Seal Piece? You can't be...?

MAIN

And what if we are?

CHEZZA

My brother was a pirate captain on a ship he called The Jurick, hm. Me and him were close and I served as a chef to his crew. His main goal was to search for these Seal Pieces, which he found out about through some guy called Grove, or something, hm.

MAIN

Rove. Smaz's dad.

CHEZZA

Well, one day...

Shows the past in black and white. CHEZZA still talks.

CHEZZA (CONT'D)

We came across the location of our first Seal Piece from a small village called Blitz, hm. It was a beautiful thing... all marble-like and such... o' course, we raided the village, being pirates and all, so we left devastation behind us. That would cost us. I said I wanted to see Mama after finding our Seal Piece, so my bro dropped me off here - our home, whilst he went to find the shrine. A week later I heard word that my brother had been attacked by those who we stole from in the village... my bro was killed...

MAX

So his ship sank, the Seal Piece along with him.

CHEZZA

(Sniffling)

I'm trying to have a moment, hm. Sorry, anyway, the man who I vow vengeance upon is the guy who ordered and arranged the attack on my brother... GILDON.

Cut back to present day.

CHEZZA (CONT'D)
 You say you're after the Seal
 Pieces, hm?

Choices:

MAIN
Nah, we're after baby seals.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
Yeah. All four of them.

After choices:

CHEZZA
 The only person who knows where the
 ship sank is Gildon, himself, hm. I
 can only guess he's still at that
 village we attacked - Blitz. You
 should head there and interrogate
 him for the location, hm. It's a
 village on the next island East of
 here.

MAIN
 Thanks. We'll be on our way.

LIONE
 Wait, what about payment?

MAX
 Oh man, you had to ask.

CHEZZA
 Well... my business is done for,
 anyway, so... I'll let you have all
 that food on the house under one
 condition.

MAIN
 Anything!

CHEZZA
 For years I've wanted to get back
 at Gildon, but I never had a ship,
 hm. If you're heading that way then
 the least you can do is to bring me
 along, right? Then I can pummel his
 sad face to the ground after he t
 .ells you. Or maybe I can even help
 in interrogation, hm?

MAX
 I like your style. I'm sure the
 ship's captain won't mind.

MAIN

I don't.

MAX

I meant the *actual* captain.

CHEZZA

Perhaps I can get myself some ingredients whilst I'm with you, too, hm?

MAIN

Let's head back to the docks and... convince Marco this is a good idea.

END OF SCENARIO. After all three scenarios:

MAIN and co head towards MARCO, at the Jinx.

MARCO

Yer took long enough! An' who's this?

CHEZZA

I'm Chezza... and I guess *YOU'RE* the captain?

MARCO

Cheddar? What a name!

KIM

Chezza's here to show us the way to a village called Blitz. We can find a guy there who will tell us where the next Seal Piece is.

MARCO

Then this cheesy smelling guy is o' use. So what's this guy's name tha' we 'ave to talk to, then?

CHEZZA

Gildon.

MARCO

W-w-what?! We 'ave ter 'urry! Everyone, onto the Jinx!

KIM

What's wrong, Marco? Where's Aera?

MARCO

Aera's not comin'. She's with Gildon, ready to assassinate 'im!

MAIN

You serious?! We have to hurry! Head to the next eastern island!

GAMEPLAY on world map. Story continues once PLAYER reaches Blitz.

SMAZ

Blitz. Aera's blade is embedded where the L should be. We are not going to let her kill Gildon - he will save us a great deal of time and effort in locating the next Seal Piece. Leaving Aera to commit such an act would be dishonourable and foolish. The town is on fire. If we help some of the villagers, they can point us in the direction of Gildon.

SMAZ races in. PLAYER follows. The village is on fire. Several people are surrounding the well, in the centre of the village. PLAYER must rescue 3-5 villagers from the fire. Once completed, story continues.

BAKER

You saved me! Please, please have some bread! It's all I have!

PLAYER receives bread and sausage healing item.

WOMAN

And you saved me, too! Please, take my baby as gratitude.

MAIN

Uh... no thanks. We just need to know where Gildon is.

WOMAN

He escaped up north, to Cannery Hill, where the cemetery is. Here, my baby has the gate key in his mouth. Take it.

MAX

Worst mother ever.

PLAYER receives cemetery gate key. Story continues once PLAYER reaches AERA on the top of the hill, confronting GILDON in the sun set, a man with a floppy hat, short nose and a blue, Hawaiian-esque shirt. No trousers.

AERA

Watch the sun set, Gil, as your meaningless life finally comes to an end.

GILDON

Your pillowth are thoft.

AERA
(Enraged)
My *WHAT*, little man?

GILDON
Boobth.

AERA
How *DARE* a man of your position say
my breasts are soft!

MAIN
Stop, Aera! Don't kill that man! We
need him to tell us where the next
Seal Piece is!

AERA
Nova? What on Yarth are you doing
here? No. Nevermind. You can't stop
me, now!

SMAZ
With the next Seal Piece we can be
one step closer to obtaining all of
that... wondrous treasure that
could be waiting for us.

AERA
Are you sure? The first Seal Piece
revealed nothing more than a
monster who tried to annihilate us.
What makes *YOU* think treasure will
exist after all four have been
placed at the shrine?

SMAZ
I am unsure, indeed, but I am
almost certain something will
appear after the fourth and final
Seal Piece has been collected and
placed at the seal shrine.

AERA
I'm not waiting. I'm killing this
man and claiming my pay.

MAIN
We've gotta convince Aera that
there's treasure... and to not kill
Gildon.

Choices:

LIONE
Don't kill Gildon and I'll give you
access to the Galactic
Preservation's vault.
(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)

There's a whole wealth of treasure in there from the criminals we've locked away.

AERA

Don't patronise me. I don't believe you're from "space" for even an instant. The shrine's treasure is more realistic than that tale.

SMAZ

Then I have no choice but to render you unconscious!

BATTLE vs. AERA.

Once PLAYER wins, AERA is knocked out.

SMAZ (CONT'D)

Knocked out. She will stay like that until we are done with Gildon.

OR

MAX

The treasure will be much larger than what you would get for killing this idiot. We just need him to tell us where that scocking sunken ship is, first.

AERA

Pathetic, but... logical. Have it your way... for now. Here, take my spare blade before I change my mind.

PLAYER receives AERABLADE for LIONE!

OR

KIM

The true treasure is in everyone's hearts. It's about the journey, not the end goal. Isn't that right?

AERA

I don't know what my heart's telling me, but my stomach's saying it wants to throw up at your suggestion. The journey? Pah! It's all about the treasure at the end!

BATTLE vs. AERA.

Once PLAYER wins, AERA is knocked out.

SMAZ

*Knocked out. She will stay like
that until we are done with Gildon.*

After choices:

CHEZZA

And now I get the pleasure of
beating the secret out of that
little man, hm. Stand aside!

GILDON

Not if I let off thith bomb on my
body. Time for... a nuclear
explosion!

PHOENIX

GET DOWN!!!

Nothing happens.

PHOENIX (CONT'D)

T-that... he tricked... now I feel
stupid.

GILDON

Foooooooooled you!

CHEZZA

You slippery swine! This is for
killing my brother, hm!

As CHEZZA punches GILDON repeatedly, the camera pans up to
the sun set and at the sun.

SMAZ

I hope you are aware that we need
that mayor alive...

FADE OUT to the hull of the Jinx.

LIONE

Thank goodness Gildon's tied up. I
couldn't stand another groping.

PHOENIX

Aaah, you liked it really, didn't
ya, Lione?

LIONE

Say that again and I'll have every
right to put you in a cell.

CHEZZA

He's still not told us the
location, hm. Beating him did
nothing. At least I got some new
ingredients from the village folk.

SMAZ

Marco is in the cabin, up top. He is clearly drunk and in need of company. I will stay down here and make this spiteful cur talk.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when PLAYER goes to the cabin.

MARCO

Arr, Nova, thar ye are! Come and get merry with ol' Marco, here. Come and play a card game.

PLAYER can choose to play a card game of OUTLAWS or not. Either way, MARCO bursts into song, afterwards.

MARCO (CONT'D)

(Singing to his own tune)

Ale, ale, it's good for the tail,
You don't know what you've seen!
Ale, ale, it feels like a nail,
Going into your spleen!

Ale makes me fat,
It makes me groggy,
But boy, it sure does
make me soggy,

I'm the king of the world
When I drink ale,
Let it be known -
We're drunk and we fail!

Ale, ale, it's good for the tail,
You don't know when you're paid,
Ale, ale, it makes us flail,
The best drink ever made!

MAIN

Maybe I should check on Smaz. He's been a while and I'm starting to worry Gildon might be coming on to him.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when PLAYER goes to the hull, only to find SMAZ held up by KEITH, who has someone snuck aboard. GILDON is still tied up, in the middle of the room.

GILDON

I love you too, Smaz.

MAIN

It's... getting intimate, in here.

KEITH

I'd say it was quite cosy, wouldn't you, Smaz?

SMAZ

...

KEITH

There's no need to bare a grudge. I've come to take your bounty. As it turns out, master Pikhaul informed me that this *human* is called Nova, one of the most wanted criminal outside this planet... and with a high bounty on his head, too. Pikhaul will reward me for two heads.

GILDON

Mine, too!

KEITH

No, not yours. You will simple tell me the location of the Seal Piece. Pikhaul demands it.

GILDON

Thealth? I love thealth! They ARF ARF.

KEITH punches GILDON.

GILDON (CONT'D)

(Whispered, delighted)

Thank you. It'th in the Fasool Netherseas. Blow uth, right now.

KEITH

Then it will be a simple matter of swimming below and retrieving it. Now to end your miserable life.

MAIN

If you fire that gun of yours, everyone will come rushing in and you will be overwhelmed.

KEITH

No. All I need is one bazooka-fire to the door as they come out and then I can make my escape from the excitement. There is no way you can win.

SMAZ

What does Pikhaul want the Seal Pieces for?

KEITH

You are in no position to question anything. You are both to aid me in obtaining this Seal Piece, right now. Your crew mates don't know of it's location. Let's keep it that way.

MAIN

How'd you like some Hudokai?

MAIN/NOVA sets KEITH on fire, only for the fire to suddenly disappear. SMAZ then tries to use his magic on KEITH, which is also nullified.

KEITH

Pikrystal, developed by master Pikhaul. I'm sure you are aware of its properties - it drains magical energy and stores it within the crystal. Your powers are useless.

MAIN

You-

KEITH

Continue that remark and you die here and now. I only need you alive to help me gain the Seal Piece. Cooperate and you will live. Follow me.⁷

KEITH marches PLAYER out into a black FADE OUT. FADE IN to inside a cave, where MAIN and SMAZ rest. An electrical forcefield blocks their exit. KEITH enters the cave and stands on the entrance-side of the forcefield.

KEITH (CONT'D)

Get up. It's time for you to dive into the waters and retrieve the Seal Piece.

MAIN

I've never felt so used and abused. And how are we supposed to breath under water, anyway? We're not fish, you know?

KEITH

Behind this force field, designed by Emperor Pikhaul, and hidden in the shadows on your side, are two diving suits. You will put them on.

SMAZ

(In awe)

Their designs are intricate.

KEITH

Everything of the emperor's is intricately designed and of genius. I've deactivated the force field. Dive into the water and return with the Seal Piece. And if you think about fleeing, you won't survive long with an hour's worth of oxygen. I will be waiting.

PLAYER resumes control in diving suit. When at water's edge, they will dive into the water to reveal an underwater section along the sea-bed, which will act as a dungeon, along with the underwater shipwreck. Once PLAYER locates the Seal Piece in the wreck, a shadow swamps them from above.

SMAZ

(In his diving suit)

That... no. I scarcely believe it. I refuse.

MAIN

Not a monster, I hope.

SMAZ

Worse. It is Emperor Pikhaul's Navy, run by General Xu. Our comrades are in trouble. We must rush back to that wretched bounty hunter and escape back to the ship.

SCENE cuts back to the ship, where everyone is around GILDON.

MARCO

Fer the las' time, tell us where sir knigh' is.

GILDON

If you act like Muvvy, Gildy will tell you.

MARCO

Muvvy?

MAX

Muvvy must mean his mother.

MARCO

I ain't yer mother, scruff.

A megaphone sounds out.

GENERAL XU

Captain Marco, your game is up! Withdraw immediately and come with us, otherwise there shall be no mercy!

MARCO suddenly runs out to the deck, where a large ship is waiting. GENERAL XU awaiting on top, a black suit, black shades and slender Kyote body, a black belt around his body.

KIM

A fleet? Like princess Mirru's?!

MARCO

What do yer wan', Xu?

GENERAL XU

Keith has informed us of your previous encounter with him, so Pikhaul has ordered us to execute you.

AERA

Execute him? You have nothing to gain for executing such a pathetic man. He doesn't even have a bounty. Leave now if you desire your lives.

GENERAL XU

Assassin Aera. We can offer you large sums of money if you take out this drifter for us. It is your occupation, after all.

AERA

Done.

MARCO

Y-Ye can't be serious!?

AERA

Whilst I'm still in this for the Seal Shrine, I am still an assassin and I need some form of gold in the mean time. If that wasn't the case, then I wouldn't have gone after Gildon, you idiot.

MARCO

You need me to navigate back to the shrine! Think abou' this!

GENERAL XU

With Pikhaul after the Seal Pieces, we will eventually make our way to the shrine, without the stolen map or not.

AERA

Perfect.

LIONE

What scandalous treachery!

GENERAL XU

Men, attack!

PLAYER fights hordes of navy soldiers, each one accompanied by AERA, before GENERAL XU leaps out, himself.

GENERAL XU (CONT'D)

So you think you can take me on? I am a general of the Navy! The title is not *just* a title. It's a certificate of strength.

Camera pans to right of the ships, where a small rowing boat heads towards them. KEITH, SMAZ and MAIN are all on board.

KEITH

We will ride with the Navy back to base in order to see the emperor. Bring us alongside the ship. We're climbing aboard.

The boat pulls up to the ships, the camera returning to GENERAL XU and the rest of the crew.

AERA

If we take them down together, do I still get paid?

GENERAL XU

Yes. I am a master of martial arts; a Black Belt even, 1st Dan. That is my strength as a General and of the Navy... And to be used in self-defence against these pirates.

FIGHT vs. AERA and GENERAL XU. After fight:

GENERAL XU (CONT'D)

Ungh... Aera, take down these... rogues!

KEITH brings SMAZ and MARCO onto the Navy ship. Suddenly, an explosion knocks KEITH down. MARCO walks up to them.

MARCO

An' tha' was fer being a bastard, Keith!

MAIN

Marco, you fired that bullet? I'm forever grateful, you furry mutt!

KEITH

Your friends will die for that!

MARCO

I'll handle him. You just handle-

SMAZ

AERA!

MAIN

Why is she...? Don't tell me,
Aera's turned against us. I
should've known. She is Lione,
after all.

MARCO

You handle that lot. I'll handle
Keith.

MARCO will be involved in a quick QTE before blowing KEITH
away into the water.

PLAYER resumes control. They will fight AERA should they
speak with her. After the fight:

LIONE

Are you really that selfish enough
to ditch our cause in favour of
what, seems to me, a corrupt
emperor?

AERA

You can't decide my fate.

SMAZ

Aera, I understand your mixed
feelings...

AERA

Do you? DO YOU?

SMAZ

All I can do is persuade you to
stay with us. It is your heart that
decides your final decision, in the
end.

MARCO

Wha' a load of bananas. She turned
traitorous... she needs ter leave.

AERA

...

SMAZ

If we all meet in the cabin, we can
discuss the events that have
unfolded.

Everyone heads into the cabin.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they talk with
SMAZ in the cabin.

SMAZ (CONT'D)

Before Keith kidnapped Nova and I, Gildon was able to relieve the location of the shipwreck.

MAIN

Put simply, we now have our second Seal Piece.

CHEZZA

I ain't seen this Seal Piece in such a long time... it's as beautiful as ever, hm.

AERA

Why couldn't you weaklings escape?

MAIN

Keith had some sort of crystal, Pikrystal, he called it, which could absorb magical and Hudokai energy. He had us pinned down.

MARCO

Keith ain' jus' any old boun'y hun'er... He works fer Pikhaul. I've met 'im many a time in the past... he isn' someone to underestimate.

AERA

Whatever. Let's just put it at the shrine and head off. I'll stick with you, for now.

MAIN

It isn't that simple. Keith mentioned something. Pikhaul already has one of the Seal Pieces, himself.

ALIZA

But... that would mean we need to confront the emperor to get his Seal Piece.

MARCO

We'll worry abou' tha', later... Now, wha' do we do about Gildon?

CHEZZA

He murdered my brother. Now that we got the info from him and the Seal Piece, he deserves no coddling.

KIM

Cuddling? Like... hugging? I like cuddling!

CHEZZA

Coddle. Protect. Guide. Aera should take his head and be done with it.

AERA

This won't take long.

AERA leaves the cabin.

MAIN

We should head back for Kiwi to drop Chezza off and claim that pay. Then let's head for the shrine.

PLAYER resumes control of the Jinx on the world map. Once KIWI is reached:

CHEZZA

Now that Gildon's gone and I've got me some new ingredients, I dare say I'll be able to keep my restaurant going just a bit longer, hm.

HOODED FIGURE

Excuse me, sir, did you say Gildon was gone, sir?

AERA

Yeah. I took care of him. Here's his head.

HOODED FIGURE

Oh my. Here's your pay, excuse me.

CHEZZA

Right, I'm off, hm. Thanks for the ride. Don't forget to eat at my place once you're all done with this Seal Piece thing, you hear?

SMAZ

Goodbye, Chezza. Now, let us despatch for the seal shrine.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once the seal shrine is reached, once more, and the Seal Piece is placed into the shrine hole. A monster appears from the Seal Piece, in the middle of the cavern. It looks like a killer whale - OKURA.

OKURA

Thank you for releasing me from the Seal Piece. My name is Okura. I have been infused with magic and locked away within the Seal Piece, ready to protect the shrine should intruders come. And here you are.

AERA
So, the fish food can talk.

OKURA
Oh, I can do so much more.

AERA
(Laughing)
Like what? Flop around on land?

OKURA
Flop and fight... With water.

BOSS FIGHT 21: OKURA.

OKURA transforms halfway through the fight, into a two-headed being, instead, one called OH and one called KURA.

OKURA (CONT'D)
And now I've been split into two
times the power! This water fight
just became serious.

After fight:

PHOENIX
Well, that was a *whale* of a time.

MAX
Water way to go.

PHOENIX
You think you can out-pun me? Then
let's take this to the MAX.

MAX
Push me down and I'll soar like a
PHOENIX.

MARCO
Arr, enough! My ears are bleedin'!
Let's just get outta here. Where to
next, Kim?

KIM
I... I have a faint feeling... it's
definitely the next Seal Piece, but
it's down south, towards the east.

MARCO
Then we'll head thar and get off
this island.

KIM
And then we'll be free as birds!

MARCO
Free... yeah... if only...

PLAYER resumes control. PLAYER can board the ship and use it to take to the world map, once more. Story resumes once player reaches a ship in the southern waters - BANDROE's ship. MAIN walks to the edge of the Jinx.

MAIN

Another pirate ship. It's much bigger than ours. Maybe they're rich? There's a smaller ship coming to greet us.

MARCO

Pirate ships never come ou' ter greet another... stay back.

A figure with long black hair and a purple coat steps out to the front of her ship, as it pulls alongside the Jinx. KURO.

KURO

Lucky us! We get to pilfer you of your goods before we hit M. Bandroe's Pirate Party!

MARCO

Captain... M. Bandroe? Why, he's the king of the seas! He's considered the most lethal pirate on thar seas and paid the emperor and his navy loads o' cash to leave him alone. Ever since then, Pikhaul used the monthly riches to finance his technological creations.

KURO

Right you are! He knows how to throw a party. This purple captain's jacket is given out as invitations. Now, gimme your loot!

PHOENIX

I don't think so. Now, I don't know about you guys, but this party sounds fun. How about we batter them and steal their invitation?

SMAZ

How immoral! We have not the time to go gallivanting off to some party!

PHOENIX

What a kill joy. Are you always this... anal?

SMAZ

Pardon?! How dare you!

KURO

Come at me, if you dare!

BATTLE vs. KURO. Once PLAYER wins:

KURO (CONT'D)

Don't kill me!!! Take the jacket! I didn't like its colour, anyway!

KIM

What's a party?

ALIZA

It's where people go to chat, so my old books said, be happy and socialise with other like-minded people.

MAX

It's a place to meet some girls.

ALIZA

Uh... no it's not. And not on this planet, unless you like it furry.

MARCO

It's a place where we can unwind... And get some ale! Yarr! That large ship must be Bandroe's. Let's get partying!

LIONE

But... what about the Seal Piece?

MAIN

We can worry about it later, Lione.

PLAYER resumes control on the Jinx, which now has access to the planks leading up to M. BANDROE's pirate ship party. Two guards stop them at the top of the plank.

GUARD 1

Stop. Name?

MARCO

Captain Marco Olett.

GUARD 1

Your name has now been recorded.
Welcome aboard.

They stop forward. Camera shows the pirate party - people are dancing to the left to music, the right has dining tables with pirates ravenously devouring food and talking, up the steps to the wheel area was the captain's lounge. The whole place was aglow with candles and colour.

MARCO
Tell me I'm dreamin'!

AERA
You're dreaming.

MAIN
Let's go have some fun!

PLAYER resumes control. They can engage in card battles, a drinking competition and do various activities. A guard blocks each staircase leading to M.BANDROE, near the ship's wheel.

Story continues when PLAYER talks to musician, to dance.

MUSICIAN
You've been selected to lead the dance, ol' scurvy dog! Grab a partner and Fietrot to the music!

MAIN
Wha-? But I don't know how to-

LIONE
Urgh, grab my waist.

LIONE grabs a surprised MAIN and they lead the crazy dance. QTE events to complete the dance. They end. Everyone cheers.

MAIN
What the fluff was that all about?

M.BANDROE walks towards them, impressed. Green eyes, no eyebrows, one ring in his left eyebrow area, a black bandana atop his head with a skull in the middle and a lengthy brown coat where four sleeves stuck out from, but only three arms filled them. Scruffy hair down to his shoulders. Light blue skin. No nose. Two fins where his ears should have been and two fish-esque whiskers from his lip. Captain M.BANDROE.

M.BANDROE
I'm impressed. You smoothskins have shown moves which match my finesse. Come and have a seat at my table.

M.BANDROE walks off back to his table.

MAIN
Oh, I see. You wanted to get M.Bandroe's attention. You sly ol' dog, you.

LIONE
Enough with the dog business. I figured he'd be from another planet and I was right. He looks like he's from a planet in Galaxy 1.
(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)

I want to find out why he's here.
Let's talk to him.

PLAYER resumes control. The guards are now out the way of the stairs. Story resumes once PLAYER interacts with M.BANDROE.

M.BANDROE

Please, take a seat.

Everyone does so.

M.BANDROE (CONT'D)

Three humans, an Anthro, a Gear and
a Canarian. You're not from here.

LIONE

And you're no Yarthling, either.

MAX

Canarian? That's what my people are
called? For fluff's sake, that's so
embarrassing.

M.BANDROE

And pathetic. I invited you up here
to talk about your real meaning of
being here. It wasn't just your
dance that garnered my attention,
it was your uniform.

LIONE

The Galactic Preservation aren't
here for your head, don't worry.
We're after something else. Now,
tell me why YOU'RE on this planet.

M.BANDROE

You didn't answer my question.

LIONE

And you didn't answer mine.

M.BANDROE

What's your name?

LIONE

Lione Burgess. This is Nova.

M.BANDROE

Well, Lione Burgess, I'm not here
by choice. I became captain
M.Bandroe to get by in this cruel
world. Pikhoul is aware of my
circumstances. Now, answer my
question, or a pirate's gotta do
what a pirate's gotta do.

A figure with shoulder-length black hair and grey fur holds a pistol to LIONE's head. Blue shirt, black trousers, a golden globe around her neck on a necklace.

ERIS

Answer, or I'll shoot.

Choices:

MAIN

Shoot her. Lione's annoying.

M.BANDROE

No, I have a better idea.

OR

MAIN

We're after the Seal Pieces.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We're after the Cult of Kai.

After choices:

M.BANDROE

First mate Eris, lower your gun.
We're not here to kill our guests.

ERIS

But they're after something
valuable. The Seal Pieces? The Seal
Shrine! We should at least torture
them for information!

M.BANDROE

There's no need. It's time I made
the announcement.

M.BANDROE stands and heads to the wheel of the ship. He
clears his throat.

M.BANDROE (CONT'D)

Dear pirates and pilferers, welcome
aboard my ship - the Zeus! I am
glad you have all gathered humbly
to my party of treasure, romance
and rebellion. I hope you are all
enjoying yourselves and have reaped
grand rewards over your time at
sea... for I shall now be taking
them from you. No doubt your ships
have now been plundered by my crew
whilst you whiled away your time on
my deck.

MAX

For fluff's sake, we never get a break. It's not easy being dead, you know. I was looking forward to just relaxing on this cruise.

ALIZA

Well, now we've gotta get out of here. Things are going to get nasty.

M.BANDROE

Crew, escort these dull minded pirates back to their ships.

MUSICIAN

You scockhead! Don't think we're gonna take this lightly!

ERIS

It's time to sort out the scum!

PLAYER resumes control in an onslaught of pirates. The ship is in commotion. PLAYER must fight their way through pirates and back to their ship, the Jinx. The last battle has a Fie in, wearing thin red bandana, an expression of a person who looked as if they have never smiled. Orange fur. Red karate Gi with gold trimming. Black sash around his waist. A scimitar in each hand. EIF.

In-battle dialogue:

KIM

Nova, the Seal Piece feels stronger... it must be on the land closest to this ship!

MAIN

After we beat this guy, we'll head straight there!

EIF

Interesting...

Once the battle is over, the crew enters the Jinx. There is a slight rumbling.

MARCO

Wha' the fluff was tha'?

MAIN

Let's just move south, like Kim said.

ALIZA

Speaking of which... where is she?

There is a pause. She didn't enter the cabin.

ERIS
Looking for something?

ERIS is at the cabin doorway, KIM in hand.

ALIZA
Give Kim back!

ERIS
Don't be stupid. With this little girl, M.Bandroe will finally notice me for an intelligent individual, using her brain and body to take him to the Seal Pieces.

KIM
You can't make me talk. I won't tell you where there are.

ERIS
No, I expect you to tell my wonderful captain.

ALIZA
He'll never pay attention to such a selfish girl like you. Your infatuation will be the end of you!

ERIS
Not when he's been intrigued over Pikhaul's missing 'artefact' story since he announced it to the papers. We knew it was the seal shrine map... And now we know where to get the pieces from. Fluff you later.

A smoke bomb explodes, smoke bellowing everywhere. Another rumble. ERIS is gone.

AERA
(Unusually sombre)
That rumbling is familiar... a Yarthquake. We have to be near the Crescent Continent.

MARCO
Their ship is passin' the Jinx!
They've already got a lead. To think, they made lil' Kim talk that fast...

MAIN
Follow them. Head south-east to that 'Crescent Continent', where Kim said. We're not letting them get away with Kim!

PLAYER resumes control of the ship. Story continues when they reach the small town, large village of Tao. Tillage of Tao, even. Snow everywhere. M.BANDROE's ship is docked at the small port. EIF is waiting for the PLAYER, blocking the entrance to the tillage from the Jinx.

EIF

I am Second Mate on Captain M.
Bandroe's crew, sent here to stop
you progressing.

PHOENIX

Sounds like he sent you to die.

EIF

Fellow Fies should unite, not
fight.

PHOENIX

Too bad I'm a fox, not a Fie.

EIF

Let me tell you something - magic
doesn't help anyone, it just
hinders them.

AERA

Shut the fluff up. I don't need
telling how magic hinders people.
Don't lecture me as if you know all
about the world - I've lived it...
and I know...

LIONE

Aera, you all right?

EIF

Oh, did I hit a nerve? You know, I
had a brother who once felt the
same over his magical ability -
contempt. We all felt contempt for
him, too. There's no place in this
world for magic or magic users...

LIONE

Struth, you gonna go on, 'cause I'm
not wait on anyone who insults me
and my feelings.

EIF

What's it to you?

LIONE

Everything.

EIF

Keep in mind magic screws people
up.

(MORE)

EIF (CONT'D)

Made my brother obsessed with bounties. He killed a lot of people. I may not have been able to stop him, but at least I'll be able to stop you, else my name's not Eif Klum!

Another fight with EIF.

In-battle dialogue at the fight's end:

EIF (CONT'D)

See you in hell... brother Klom...

After fight:

AERA

Don't you dare say anything. My past is my own. Stick your nose in it again, Lione, and I'll slice you up so fine, that no one will be able to tell it's your body.

LIONE

And what's with that attitude? I was only looking out for you.

AERA

You're only looking out for yourself.

MAIN

Quit the fighting. Kim's here somewhere. We'll keep looking, even if it means heading out to the next town and town after that.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they travel through TAO, through the cornfields after and long road, as well as into the next town.

AERA

I have finally arrived home.

MAX

Home's where you make it, not where you spent the first few years of your life. Fluff that. I can tell you've not been here for aaaaaages.

AERA

You know nothing about me, scum.

AERA steps forwards, distant, gazing off. She then walks off.

LIONE

I can be difficult to deal with. I don't know how you manage, Nova.

MAIN

Through love and affection. Code words for man's best friend and doggy treats.

LIONE

Yeah, yeah. I'll catch up with her. You all keep looking for clues on Kim's location.

SCENARIO #1 - AERA and LIONE:

AERA stares into a shop window. LIONE catches up to her, from behind.

LIONE (CONT'D)

When there's something deeply troubling me, I go from being quiet to biting someone's head off. Then I think by myself. What's wrong?

AERA

I never asked for anything in life.

LIONE

No, you probably demanded, like I did.

AERA

I demanded equality. Fairness. And I had to fight for it against a torrent of naysayers and oppressors. I had to fight the world to be noticed, to be seen in a way that didn't see me as a monster. I didn't ask for a magic ability. It was forced upon me at birth. I demanded to be seen as a person and yet people still see me as a monster. What did I do wrong?

LIONE

You kill people. Assassinate for money. That's a different kind of monster.

AERA

You just don't get it. Would you call a place home if it was full of people who pushed you away?

LIONE

My home was with the Galactic Preservation, a group serving the law to criminals, when I had no home left. Even they pushed me out when the Cult of Kai intervened.

(MORE)

LIONE (CONT'D)

So don't tell me I don't know what you're going through. Don't tell me I didn't have a difficult past. I know you better than anyone does!

AERA

But do you know I still call this place home? Even though no one wants me?

There is a pause.

LIONE

That's why I fight to bring down the Cult of Kai. It's one of many, but I fight to keep my home in this crazy universe.

AERA

Fighting... yes. Fighting alongside Smaz and Marco, fighting alongside you who have been pushed out by society has made me realise that home can be more than one place. Home can be where those who you care for are...

LIONE

You don't mean...?

AERA

Smaz has opened my eyes to the world. Maybe by fighting with him, we can fight both our battles together, creating a home whether we go, because we'll always be together, fighting.

A baker walks outside the shop AERA stares into.

BAKER

So, the little worm returns. You aren't welcome here, Aera. You and your monstrous magic are banished from this place like the love is from your heart. We know what you do for a living, and it sickens us.

The BAKER walks back in.

LIONE

And your first fight, together, is proving to these people that you aren't garbage, but something to be prized.

A quake shakes the floor, causing AERA and LIONE to stumble.

AERA
Drevrick Mountain. It's finally
active.

LIONE
A... a volcano?!

AERA
This is up to me, now. I live here
and this is my responsibility. Grab
Smaz and the others and meet me at
the volcano.

LIONE
And what, fight an erupting volcano
to save Kim?

AERA
And to save my home town. This is
what will define me.

AERA runs off.

END OF SCENARIO.

SCENARIO #2 - THE MALE SQUAD:

In the town snowy town square.

MARCO
We can finally 'ave some male time
together, boys!

SMAZ
"Male time"?

MARCO
Yar! Male time. Yer know - ale,
gals and talks o' battle!

BLAKE
This is the moment I've longed for.

MARCO
Er...

MAX
She's got other people in her body.
One's a guy. His name's Blake. Can
be a bit of fun, unless you fluff
him off.

BLAKE

Well, given your whiny attitude and one-upmanship in disposition, it's particularly difficult not to find one's self 'fluffed off' in the presence of a mere, sorry what was it, 'Death Bringer'?

MAX

Mother fluffer!

BLAKE

Sorry, I stand corrected. A 'mother fluffer'.

MAX

I preferred it when you were Aliza.

MARCO

Arrr... Blake's as tight as Smaz. You'll never find a girl like tha'.

SMAZ

What is THAT supposed to mean?

MARCO

Well, you know, like Aera or... come on, ye can't deny it, now. Arr, I' means I'm... off to ge' me some, err... shoes. These 'uns are fallin' apart from out battle with Mirru's flee'.

MARCO runs off.

BLAKE

I haven't the foggiest in what he means. I have all the girls I need, right in here.

MAIN

Nevermind that, we've gotta ask around to find out where Bandroe's hiding. No one steals my little girl and gets away with it.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they find MARCO in the shoe shop.

MAIN (CONT'D)

"Alan's Shoes In Motion Emporium"?

PHOENIX

I like it. Kinda catchy.

MARCO

Arr, thar. Do ye have some decent quali'y shoes fer me?

ALAN THE SHOEMAKER

Sure, if you've got the coins. What size are you?

MARCO

Twice as big as my-

A quake suddenly pulls MARCO and the PLAYER from beneath their feet. It stops after a short while.

MARCO (CONT'D)

Arr, they don't call this 'shoes in motion' for nothin', I see!

ALAN THE SHOEMAKER

Drevrick Volcano! It's finally active, once more!

MAX

A volcano? I saw no volcano when we came up here. All I saw was a mountain in the centre of town.

BLAKE

It's the mountain. It's become an active volcano.

MAIN

We're meeting back up with the others. Bandroe turns up and a volcano becomes active. This is no coincidence.

MARCO

Jus' keep those shoes waitin' fer me fer when I return, Alan.

END OF SCENARIO.

The camera pans to show the volcano's top, with AERA and BANDROE at the funnel. PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the top, where AERA and M.BANDROE are.

M.BANDROE

A stubborn girl. It's no wonder the people of this town detest you. You WILL proceed down the volcano funnel. I am not prepared to risk my life obtaining the Seal Piece down there.

AERA

Don't touch me.

SMAZ

Aera! We are here to help!

M.BANDROE

Oh good, you're here. Taking down Eif was a surprise, indeed, but I believe we have the upper hand, now. If you truly wish to help, head down with your comrade.

MARCO

Oh ge' ou' the way, yer circus freak, or face me pistol!

ERIS

Is it getting heated here or does anyone fancy a *trip* to a patch of lava? I know a great batch. Don't anger me or my captain.

M.BANDROE

Precious, precious Eris. Prepare them for our volcanic guest. After all, I thought triggering this eruption would loosen the Seal Piece down there, but it hasn't. In fact, it just caused the little girl to fall somewhere into the funnel.

ALIZA

Kim! You vile fishman! Kiiiiim!

MAIN

Damn pirate! It doesn't matter if M.Bandroe is forcing us or not, rescuing Kim and the Seal Piece before this volcano explodes is our top priority, right now. Let's just go.

PLAYER selects party and resumes control in the volcano. Once they reach the bottom of the rocky area inside, where the Seal Piece and KIM is, story continues.

ALIZA

Kim, wake up! Kim!

KIM

Is that my big sister, Aliza?

ALIZA

You're okay. Thank goodness!

KIM

I... think I fell into a nap when I hit the ground. My head hurts, a bit.

ALIZA

You'll be okay, Kim. We've got you,
now, and the Seal Piece.

PHOENIX

Let's head back up to M.Bandroe,
before we have a nice day.

ALIZA

That was terrible and you know it.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the
volcano's top, where M.BANDROE is, once more.

M.BANDROE

Eris, take the Seal Piece and keep
a hold of it whilst I take care of
business.

MARCO

Arr, a pirate 'till the very end...

MAX

It doesn't matter if you try and
kill us.

PHOENIX

Yes it does!

MAX

Okay, it doesn't matter if you try
and kill me. I won't stay down,
ever. You're not taking that Seal
Piece, now that I'm in your
fluffing way.

M.BANDROE

You're all worthless in the end.

AERA

I... I will not be treated as
worthless, anymore. Not by you,
Bandroe and not by the town's folk.
I came here to save them.

SMAZ

You wish to save these people,
Aera? An assassin who does not wish
to kill those who scorned her?

AERA

Of course I want to kill them!
Don't tempt me. But I need to
rescue them. You... don't know how
hard it's been, Smaz... you just
don't know.

MARCO pulls a pistol out on AERA.

MARCO

Now, yer don' go tellin' me tha' I don' know how 'ard life is withou' knowin' me better, miss assassin. I 'ave lived a life of piracy... and betrayal. Yer know so li'l abou' me, you don' even know why I'm doin' what I'm doin' upon the seas. Think before yer go mouthin' off, like tha'. Smaz 'as 'is troubles, too. He mos' probably won' ever be able to return to 'is home with everyone chasing 'im down like tha'.

ERIS

A pistol pulled on your comrade?
You're a true pirate.

MARCO

Shut up! I reckon I gone an choose the wrong decisions in me life and maybe I keep on choosen the wrongs ones. But right now, I need to push Aera to make the righ' decision. Go on. Say you'll save them folks down there. Don't, and I'll pull the trigger.

AERA

Do you think you've made the wrong decision, right now?

MARCO

No. Now, what's it gonna be?

Pause. A flash of light. Gun shot. The flash slowly clears to reveal Eris on the floor and everyone ready to push Bandroe into the volcano.

M.BANDROE

A flash bang! I should've known a fellow pirate's dirty tricks.

MARCO

What I said was true.

AERA

And what I said was 'I'll save them'.

ERIS

Oh man, my face feels like it was hit by a flail... Damn scockheads, get away from the captain!

M.BANDROE

They plan to push me in!

MAIN

Half of you take down Eris. The
rest of us will tackle M.Bandroe...
To his fiery grave. We're all in
this together!

Two parties. One to fight Eris, first, then one to fight a
boss fight against M.BANDROE.

BOSS FIGHT 22: M.BANDROE.

In-battle dialogue:

LIONE

You never answered my question. Why
did you bother coming to this
planet?

M.BANDROE

Forced by a rip in the fabric of
the universe. A portal.

MAIN

Like the one to the Nexus?

M.BANDROE

Perhaps. I don't know the details.
It lead me here and granted me... a
power. A magic power. Allow me to
show you how to dissipate non
living matter and reform it as
weapons to destroy you with!

At the end of fight:

M.BANDROE (CONT'D)

Such strength... Now to use my
ability on the rocky walls, reshape
them into falling rocks and bury
you in the lava!

END OF FIGHT.

The rocks fall on M.BANDROE, instead, pushing him down into
the lava.

M.BANDROE (CONT'D)

What?! No! How did I miscalculate?!
My body- AAARGH!

M.BANDROE's body is shown to drop into the lava. There is a
horrendous rumble as his body disappears before it stops,
entirely. The scene cuts to everyone on the side of volcano.

AERA

M.Bandroe's skeleton seems to have
blocked the lava flow.
(MORE)

AERA (CONT'D)

No doubt it will be redirected,
underground, to the sea.

LIONE

All it took was a little bit of
fighting together.

MAX

Home is where the heart is and all
that scock.

AERA

Thank you. Now let's head back to
the town centre before I vomit at
this sentimentality.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the
town area, where a crowd of people await them.

PERSON

There she is! There's that
murderous swine!

PERSON 2

I can't believe you returned back
here after all these years.

PERSON

Did you check on your father's body
whilst up there? Make sure he was
dead?

PERSON 2

Funny how the volcano is active
again. Last time it was active,
Aera lived here. She was 8.

AERA runs off passed them, clearly upset.

BAKER

Did you save this town from
eruption, freaky smooth faced
gladiator?

Options:

MAIN

Too right I did. Praise me!

PLAYER receives sythesis materials.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

I only helped. Aera saved you.

PLAYER receives M.BANDROE's weapon, for use.

After options:

SMAZ

Aera is why we could even save this town. Hear me our. Aera and I fought together against the rising lava and impossible odds. On my own, I could not have done a thing. She exploded with power and determination to save this town, despite how she has been cast out by this town's inhabitants. She did even more than I, and thus I pass on the actual saving to her. Aera is a determined young woman... fierce and strong-willed.

PHOENIX

And there goes our involvement in being saviours. It was nice while it lasted.

PERSON

Aera is a monster. Was then, is now. Magic is monstrous and evil, as is killing for money.

SMAZ

Then I am a monster.

PERSON

What?

SMAZ

I am a monster. I, like Aera, can use magic - I have the power to levitate objects to wherever I please. I kill when necessary, thanks to my occupation and upbringing as a knight of the castle. Yet, I deserve credit? I deserve it? Do I? When Aera is receiving none from this town, even though she was the one who truly saved it, I am receiving credit for merely aiding her when I am the same kind of 'monster'. Is that fair?

BAKER

Her father committed suicide in the volcano, when it was last active. He couldn't live with the shame.

SMAZ

To face one's memories and atone for their guilt is something we must all do.

SMAZ walks past the crowd and jumps to a rooftop, where AERA is.

AERA

It doesn't matter if they can't
stop the darkness in their hearts.
At least I know I could, thanks to
you, Smaz.

SMAZ

A-A hug?

AERA

This is to signify my freedom from
my life as an assassin - no more
ties to anything... but the crew
and the treasure that awaits. No
more ties to this town. No more
ties to the crown.

SMAZ

H-how very poetic.

PERSON

(Shouting out)

You may be Aera, but fluff it - you
saved the town!

PERSON 2

All hail Aera and her crew!

There are cheers.

MAIN

You hear that, Aera? You're a hero!

She and SMAZ come back down.

AERA

(Voice cracking)

No joke? T-this is... thank you,
everyone!

PHOENIX

Tears? You just destroyed your sexy
image.

SMAZ

Sexy?

PHOENIX

When you're a fox, you've gotta
take what you can get.

PERSON

Please, stay the night for free as a token of my gratitude and take this. It's the least we can do in the town of Hue.

PLAYER receives 100 Gold Pieces and is automatically rested for the night. PLAYER awakens at the Inn.

MAIN

Man, what a crazy night. I guess it's time to head to the shrine.

PLAYER resumes control. PLAYER must head back to the seal shrine and input the Seal Piece into the shrine. Nothing happens when they do. When PLAYER tries to leave, story continues.

MAX

So, the seal piece beast appears at last. I was wondering when that scock would appear.

Camera zooms out to show a massive shadowy dragon emerging from the clouds, the sky darkening with it.

DRAGON-MONSTER

Your release of me only welcomes your destruction. I hunger for flames, fury and fight!

If VARSH was obtained on TRANSCENDENCE ALLIANCE, then the prison ship suddenly appears.

[ALIZA]

Varsh! He's got some nerve showing up with our ship only after we've gone half way around the world without it!

[VARSH]

(Over speaker)

Follow curiosity and treasure will be found. And look, I found you guys!

[PHOENIX]

You sat on your lazy scock long enough, though! You came just in time. Shoot the fluff outta that dragon while you still can!

VARSH shoots the dragon with the Cataclysm Cannon. There is a huge explosion. The dragon waivers.

DRAGON-MONSTER

Destruction... I'll... retreat into the sky... and destroy you shortly.

The DRAGON-MONSTER disappears.

[VARSH]

I'll... get out of here before I do any more damage. I can't quite control this ship, properly!

[ALIZA]

We're better off blending in if we travel by Marco's ship. Hide back where we left you, Varsh!

VARSH leaves. Either way, the dragon leaves.

LIONE

Coward. Now we've got a dragon on the loose. We'd best just carry on until we can take it down.

KIM

Nova, I'm registering Hudokai signs in the west, left of this island.

AERA

Sounds like the shoe continent. The only place full of life, there, is the city of Jin.

MARCO

Shoes and gin, sounds good ter me!

PLAYER must head to the city of Jin. Once they reach a narrow patch of sea towards port, however, scene switches to the Jinx on the waves, a storm appearing out of nowhere.

ALIZA

The sails! They're loose!

AERA

Whilst you all panic, I'll get up there and re-attach them. No need to thank me.

SMAZ

You're insane, Aera! You'll be blown away!

The MONSTER-DRAGON reappears.

RIZUMU

Oh no! The scary dragon's returned! Kim, save me!

KIM

Don't worry, Rizumu - I'll protect everyone.

DRAGON-MONSTER

Destruction... returns! I will
storm your sails and then gobble
your ghoulish forms after death!

PHOENIX

Hey, I'm sure Max tastes delicious,
but what makes you think a dragon
can top a phoenix?

DRAGON-MONSTER

Because I can... blow you away.

He unleashes a massive gust of wind, blowing AERA off the
mast and away into the storm.

SMAZ

AAAAAEERRRAAAA!

MARCO

She's lost to the winds...

Options:

MAIN

Good riddance. Now, let's end this.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

We'll find her! But first, it's
time for dragon dinner.

BOSS FIGHT 23: DRAGON-MONSTER.

After fight:

PHOENIX

When a dragon comes up against a
phoenix, only one can rise
triumphant.

ALIZA

The storm's getting worse! That
dragon's started something.
Rizumu's scared!

MARCO

We need to land the ship before
we're blown into the ocean depths!

SMAZ

Aera is out there!

MAIN

He's right. We're landing at Jin.

SMAZ
 (To the winds)
 I will find you Aera, I will find
 you!

The scene fades out to them having landed on a sandy beach,
 at JIN - a city full of tall buildings, vehicles which roll
 around on barrels and zip-wires taking them to the building
 tops, which have people using them as walkways.

MAX
 So this is Jin? This is where the
 fourth seal piece is, huh? I
 thought emperor Pikhaul had it?
 What's it doing here?

ALIZA
 It's possible someone stole it from
 him? Or... it's a trap.

MAX
 I like traps. They're fun when
 you're dead. Anyway, it would've
 been easier if we travelled here by
 the prison ship.

LIONE
 And then the whole world would
 notice we're not from these parts.
 I'm more upset by the fact we just
 left Aera to the waves. What if
 she's dead?

PHOENIX
 Relax, you only care because she's
 another you. If it was me or Nova,
 you'd not care.

MARCO
 No, there ain't no relaxin', yet...
 take a look at this poster. Yer
 bounty's doubled.

MAIN
 2,000,000? You're worth as much as
 us, Smaz!

A nearby Kyote hears them and wanders over.

KYOTE
 Smaz? Have you seen that Kyote?

Options of Yes or No. If yes:

KYOTE (CONT'D)
*I see. Then get out of here. People
 are looking for any associates of
 Smaz.*

If no:

KYOTE (CONT'D)

You know, for a moment I thought he
was with you... I heard he was with
'Sharp-Tongue' Marco the pirate,
but... I don't see the assassin
anywhere. So the rumour's gotta be
false... although...

After option:

KYOTE (CONT'D)

If I were you, I'd make yourselves
 scarce. Even if there is a rumour
 that Smaz is travelling with you,
 Marco, someone else is looking for
 you, here, and they have death on
 the cards for you.

The KYOTE leaves.

ALIZA

We're covering your face, Smaz.
 With that kind of bounty, people
 will recognise you in this built up
 place. Wear this mask we got from
 Sector 6 of Lightce.

SMAZ puts it on. His sprite changes to reflect this, as does
 his portrait, now wearing a Venetian mask.

MARCO

Before we all go off ter find this
 seal piece, or even any clues on
 the lost hag, there's somewhere
 we've gotta go, here.

SMAZ

I say we look for Aera, first and
 foremost.

MARCO

No. We're going... home. Find me at
 the top o' the buildin's when yer
 ready.

PLAYER resumes control and can explore the city. Story
 continues once they speak with MARCO, who is standing outside
 a wooden hut on top of one of the tall buildings.

MARCO (CONT'D)

Took yer time. Let's go in.

MARCO does so. Everyone is inside the hut. A woman Kyote
 stands there, surprised at having just been interrupted by
 unannounced guests.

MERELITH

You've got some nerve comin' in
'ere after all o' these years!

MARCO

Well, we ran into some problems o'
ours an' need some supplies. Can I
sit?

MERELITH

No. Take your food and then get
out.

MARCO

What's the catch?

MERELITH

That you never set foot in here
again, not until yer sort out your
alliances.

PLAYER receives BREAD AND SAUSAGE x 3.

MAX

Now hang on, you just give him food
and then tell your own son to
leave? What kind of loving mother
does that? Family and a home are
the things that make us what we
are.

MERELITH

Some snotty teen tellin' me my
business! None of you are welcome
here!

MARCO

Pa was the one who stole from
others, ma...

MERELITH

And you were the one that killed
him, not the law. Never forget
that. Never.

MARCO silently walks out. PLAYER resumes control. Story
continues when they speak with MARCO, outside.

MARCO

It was my fault, really. We were
poor, havin' ter steal to survive.
It felt wrong. I called Pikhaul's
police forces on my pa. He was
taken away and executed... I didn't
think he'd be taken away... and now
I'm no better than him.

MAX

Apparently we're more like our parents than we think we are. We just don't understand that until we mature a little more, but by then, it's too late.

LIONE

...

MARCO

I just wanted ter see how she was doin'. Since she's fine, let's jus' head ter the Seal Piece.

KIM

Justice has a funny way of condemning someone who steals to stay alive... Oh! The Seal Piece is near here, to the north.

MARCO

Sounds like the pagoda. Interestin', you'll head there, then. Can't miss it. Big red buildin'.

KIM

What about you, Marco?

MARCO

I need ter fix up the ship after tha' storm. You'll handle thin's.

ALIZA

Fine, take the other part of our com radio so we can stay in touch. It's called 'technology'.

LIONE

If the prison ship can translate from this far away, then it can most likely transmit the frequencies needed to speak to one another via radio, too.

MARCO

Er... right. Jus'... head to the pagoda.

MARCO walks off. PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the pagoda. The pagoda bottom floor is dark, with one small circle of light in the middle.

JAY BEE (O.S.)

Who hath come in the pagoda o' battle?

ALIZA
 (Whispered, to MAIN)
 We should probably use fake names.

Choices:

MAIN
Sam Osborn and his crew of misfits!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)
 Nova, Smaz, and a whole can of arse-
 whoopin'.

JAY BEE (O.S.)
 Then ye shall receive a dog's fate,
 your 2,000,000 bounty mine to own.

ALIZA
 Wait, he means we're here for a
 reason!

After choices:

JAY BEE (O.S.)
 State thy reason for cometh here!

KIM
 W-we're after a Seal Piece. It's a
 small, circular item.

JAY BEE (O.S.)
 Very well! Atop this pagoda lies
 thee treasure thy heart seeks.
 Fight a battle upon e'ery floor to
 win thy prize. E'ery floor must use
 a different fighter. Choose now.

PHOENIX
 Sounds fun!

ALIZA
 Sounds crazy! One person per floor?

KIM
 We need this Seal Piece. Trust your
 little sis'. We can do this!

PLAYER picks.

JAY BEE (O.S.)
 Hast thou chosen?

YES or NO. Continues when YES has been selected.

JAY BEE (O.S.) (CONT'D)
 Thy first opponent shall be Guu the
 Great!

A hulking figure approaches, draped in gladiator armour and a club. BATTLE vs. GUU THE GREAT. Once beaten:

JAY BEE (O.S.) (CONT'D)
 Thy strength is admirable. Now head
 to the second floor.

PLAYER does so. The second floor is grassy and as if a garden has been pilfered from the outside and placed inside. A female KYOTE sits in the centre, light furred and in a kimono, waiting. WISP WILLOW. Behind her, a male Kyote of medium height bearing a white, unbuttoned, shirt. Brown afro, tinted glasses. Baggy beige trousers, sandals. Beige fur on his head and paws, black fur on his chest. JAY BEE.

JAY BEE (CONT'D)
 Very few beat Guu, yo, so I figured
 I'd drop the dated lingo and see
 you for myself.

KIM
 Voice analysis confirms you were
 the voice talking to us.

JAY BEE
 Yeah... what's with the short noses
 and furless skin? You freaks?

SMAZ
 They are from Eyetopia.

JAY BEE
 Huh. Well, dawgs, I run this
 pagoda. You reach the top, you get
 your "treasure". Your second
 opponent's the samurai, Wisp
 Willow. Think you've got what it
 takes?

BATTLE vs. WISP WILLOW. After fight:

JAY BEE (CONT'D)
 One more fight 'till victory. Meet
 me on the top floor when you're
 ready, dawgs.

JAY BEE disappears. PLAYER resumes control. Once they talk with JAY BEE on the top floor, story continues:

JAY BEE (CONT'D)
 I, Jay Bee, will be your third and
 final opponent, yo. Let me amaze
 you with my afro bombs, dawgs.
 Begin!

BATTLE vs. JAY BEE. Once PLAYER defeats him:

JAY BEE (CONT'D)

Dang it, dawgs, you did well.

PHOENIX

Great, now give us the loot.

JAY BEE

Easy, Fie, you'll get your Seal Piece.

PHOENIX

It's fox. Fox! Don't any of you get it? F. O. X. And we're getting the Seal Piece, NOW. Don't make me explode your ass!

SMAZ

Ignore the orange rogue, Jay Bee, for I understand. We are to help you before you help us.

PHOENIX

What a pompous git.

MAIN

Good, now it's time to find out why you have the Seal Piece. Last time we checked, Pikhaul had it.

JAY BEE

Ah. This is where it gets tricky, dawgs. Pikhaul had a bunch of thieves steal his goods, recently. These thieves double as merchants. We call 'em the Merchant Marauders. They're tough. I stole the pearl piece thing from them... and then they stole something else from us, as a result, dawgs, to sell off. So we needed some tough guys to come and beat us in this pagoda, so we can send them to beat the shiz outta them merchant guys.

SMAZ

Could you not have hired an assassin?

JAY BEE

We tried Aera, the world's best assassin, but she was occupied. And they'll be expecting me if I go.

SMAZ

Then we will do this for Aera.

MAIN

Hang on, I call the shots. We're doing this because we need the Seal Piece. Where is this special item of yours?

JAY BEE

The merchants live out in a hideout in the swamp, down south, yo. It's past the forest, just outside the city.

MAIN

No need to tell Marco, let's go.

PLAYER resumes control. PARTY switch confirmation. PLAYER must traverse the forest and reach a hut, heading inside. Once they pick up the SPARKARLIMATERS, story continues.

ALIZA

We're receiving a transmission from Marco's com radio. I'll put it on loud speaker, hang on.

MARCO (O.S.)

Yaarr, I'm almost done with the ship. How's it goin' at yer end?

LIONE

We located some Sparkarlimaters for the pagoda guy, so we'll be back with the Seal Piece in a short while.

The scene shifts to MARCO, who is working on his ship, on the beach. Night is falling. A figure approaches him, from the sea. MIRRU.

MIRRU

I-I was sliced up... left for dead... and finally washed up here.

MARCO

Hm? Oh, princess Mirru, was it? Nice o' yer to join me on this moonlit night.

SMAZ (O.S.)

(On the communicator)

Princess Mirru! Is everything to satisfaction, Marco?

MARCO

Eh? Yer, I'm all right.

MIRRU

Shut up! There comes a time when a poor innocent girl must grow up and strike back at those that did her wrong...

MARCO

Oh, looky - a gun. Point a gun at a pirate and yer get what yer deserve. Then again, yer screwed, anyway.

SMAZ (O.S.)

Princess Mirru, I am ever so glad that you are alive. However, Emperor Pikhaul has seized your father's throne after his untimely death and his successor missing.

MIRRU

I must have... vengeance!

MARCO

Pah. The papers ain't lyin'. When Pikhaul finds out yer livin', yer won't stand a chance. He's lookin' fer any sign o' yer body to make sure yer dead, so he can have throne, too. I'm the least o' yer concerns, at the moment.

MIRRU

And what about you? I'd say I'm your greatest concern, right now.

MARCO

Nah, my greatest concern is a new pair of shoes, on top o' everythin' else.

KEITH

No, I would say *I'M* your greatest concern, Marco.

KEITH, disgruntled and looking worse for wear, appears from the shadows from behind MARCO's ship. He holds his unique weapon up to MARCO.

KEITH (CONT'D)

Drop the charade.

MARCO

There ain't any charade, Keith.

KEITH

No charade? Don't make me laugh! If you do, I'll kill you here and now."

MARCO

I see. So yer gonna take me to
Pikhaul after all, then?

KEITH

I will. But you have to tell me why
you've done what you've done,
first.

MIRRU

Stop ignoring me!

KEITH

Princess Mirru, you will get your
turn, but for now...

A gunshot. MIRRU falls to the floor.

MARCO

I recognise tha' dart. It sends
people ter sleep.

KEITH

Emperor Pikhaul wants her and I'm
willing to take her, given I hunt
bounties, after all. Now tell me,
why mask yourself for so long?

MARCO

Yer said I couldn't hide forever,
when we met back at Klom, and yer
righ'. I can't. So here's the
truth.

Scene switches back to PLAYER at the hut.

KIM

Is... Marco aware the radio is
still on?

ALIZA

I think it's intentional.

MARCO (O.S.)

I started workin' for Pikhaul when
I handed mah father in to the Navy
fer stealin' money. I always wan'ed
ter earn money in a legal way, not
an illegal one... but mah family
was poor. My mother never forgave
me. She said she only would if I
quit Pikhaul's alliance. I worked
mah way up the ranks 'til yer went
all 'rival' on me and after our
gunfight back in those days, I lost
'cause yer shot me in the eye.

(MORE)

MARCO (O.S.) (CONT'D)

Pikhaul decided to operate on me, removed me eye, and put something else there. Something that could help me and himself. That was when he gave me mah mission to go under cover and get those Seal Pieces for 'im. I never knew what they did, so I agreed to it.

KEITH (O.S.)

Right, except I didn't want your life story. I just want to know what's going on with you. Right. Now.

MARCO (O.S.)

Well... I made a crew o' pirates and together we plundered boats. They never knew they were all actually helping me find the Seal Pieces. Tha' was, until we came across one on Melissa's ship. It was love at first sigh' with tha' girl, but alas, it had a Seal Piece on it. I stole it and the ship, which is when mah crew realised I had deceived them fer the whole time. So I left 'em on mah ship and sailed away on Melissa's vessel, leaving them captainless. I then headed off to the Ivel Continent ter try and get back to Pikhaul, since he owned the top half and all. I found myself in King Yutah's bottom 'alf and ended up encounterin' Nova and Smaz, who turned out ter be on the run from some mistake about killing the king. I told 'im some cock-and-bull version of how I go' the Seal Piece and then that blasted Aera came into it. She was useful and explained wha' thar Seal Pieces were actually fer since Yutah had bin after them.

KEITH (O.S.)

So, you wanted the riches for yourself? Despicable.

MARCO (O.S.)

Nah, it compelled me ter try harder, which is why I 'persuaded' these guys to help me, just like mah old crew.

(MORE)

MARCO (O.S.) (CONT'D)

The difference this time is tha' they already knew abou' it, so I didn't 'ave ter discard them after every Seal Piece. They've also been strong and invaluable to the monsters we've fough' after each piece has been placed. Which is... which is why I didn't wan' mah cover blown by you and the Navy so quickly when we met. I'm sorry I haven' told Pikhaul abou' it all, but I couldn't. It jus' so 'appens the next place we're heading to is Pikhaul's, which is when I was gonna turn... but we got side-tracked by a storm and ended up 'ere, of all places. The place where I was born.

PHOENIX

Does this mean Marco's been on the villainous Pikhaul's side the entire time?!

KEITH (O.S.)

Show me the mechanical eye, beneath your eye patch. Show me you tell the truth.

MARCO (O.S.)

Aye. I've bin on yer side the entire time.

There is a sound as the com radio switches off. There is silence for a while. Then...

Choices:

MAIN

What a fluffing scockhead! How dare he play us like disposable commodities!

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

He's not against us. Marco's playing Keith. Think about it, he'd say anything to keep himself alive.

OR

MAIN (CONT'D)

I feel betrayed. He used us this entire time and made us hear the truth.

After options:

LIONE

The coward couldn't even tell us to our faces. Let's face it, we're victims of a pirate's game.

WILLY

I know what you're a victim of - a merchant who's just been stolen from. Hand over the Sparkarlimaters, unless you want a whacking from ol' Willy, here.

PHOENIX

Your name's Willy? That's unfortunate.

MAX

His parents must've hated him.

WILLY

Short for William. And don't mock me! I should be the one mocking you!

PHOENIX

Go on. Give us your best mock.

WILLY

Uh... yes. Well... If it takes 7 foolish muscleheads to steal one Sparkarlimater cube, then how many of us Merchant Marauders does it take to steal it back?

PHOENIX

None.

WILLY

You're supposed to say one! That does it! I'll fry you and play a happy melody with the bones of your corpses!

FIGHT vs. WILLY. After fight:

MAIN

We're heading back to Jin and getting our Seal Piece, with or without Marco!

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they return to MARCO's ship, where JAY BEE now stands, facing the banked ship.

JAY BEE

Captain Marco Olet... I can't believe you were such a dawg and stole Melissa's treasure, leaving us with Melissa. We searched for you. Now I find your ship, alone and empty. Where are you, dawg?

SMAZ

With Emperor Pikhaul.

JAY BEE

Don't mind me, yo, just lamenting the past. Did you get my stolen item, Mr... uh...?

MAIN

Nova. And this is my crew-

SMAZ

(Removing his mask)
Ugonih. Smaz Ugonih.

MAX

No, that's not the name of the crew. In fact, stop acting like you're the captain, Nova!

MAIN

Make me, Max.

JAY BEE

Sorry, yo... you're Smaz?!

SMAZ

There is no use in denying it. I am Smaz. And we were part of Marco's crew, until he deserted us.

JAY BEE

You poor soul. I've been there, man. It ain't fun. He lied. Marco sailed away from us because he was with Pikhaul... and used us to find a Seal Piece, just like he used you. Marco is a bad person.

KIM

Marco was jolly and full of fun. I don't think he's a bad person, just misguided.

MAIN

Misguided or not, here's your Sparks. I didn't think you'd have an energy source so advanced.

JAY BEE
You know of Sparks, dawg? Emperor
Pikhaul created them. Eternal
energy, we call it.

ALIZA
"We"?

A large ship soars down from the sky, propellers rotating and wings outstretched. A Kyote with rather long eyelashes and shoulder-length curly, black hair stands on the deck. Her white shirt is frilled with holes where her shoulders are, showing them. A crimson waistcoat lay against her chest with intricate black swirls, a golden pendant around her neck. A crossed belt sat at the top of her crimson trousers, above two pointed black boots. MELISSA.

MELISSA
Yes, "we".

PHOENIX
Captain Melissa, eh? She's kinda
smokin', if ya get my drift.

MELISSA
No explosions for you today, fie.

PHOENIX
Put down in my prime... but you
know what they say - the Phoenix
will always rise, again!

MAX
Down, boy.

MELISSA steps out of the now landed ship and approaches
PHOENIX.

MELISSA
A slap to your face should set you
right.

She slaps him.

MAX
Better you than me.

JAY BEE
Marco has been taken to Emperor
Pikhaul's fortress, captain. These
are his current crew, yo.

MELISSA approaches MAX.

MELISSA
Apart of Marco's crew, huh? A slap
to your face, too.

She slaps him.

MAX
Stop laughing, Fox.

MAIN
If I give you the Sparks, can you
not slap me, too?

MELISSA
No.

She slaps MAIN.

MAIN
I think I've been abused enough.
Scock, that stung... give me the
Seal Piece I was promised.

KIM
Nova, the Hudokai readings...
they're far away. Jay Bee no longer
has the Seal Piece.

JAY BEE
Ah, yeah, I was meaning to get to
that, dawgs. You see, a fella named
Keith tracked me down and
threatened my life for it. I
figured to let it go and live
another day, yo.

SMAZ
He will have taken that back to the
emperor. Curious. Why does the
emperor want the Seal Piece?

ALIZA
Hang on, the emperor had a map of
the seal shrine... and he was very
desperate to get the map back,
according to the newspaper articles
of before. He knows.

MAIN
Emperor Pikhaul was at the Galactic
Council. He knows of the seal
shrine and Seal Pieces. Something
isn't right...

JAY BEE
May explain why he's been killing
people just for info. He and Marco,
they must be stopped, yo. We've
been trying to find Marco for ages.

MELISSA

Princess Mirru is with Marco. We all know if we can get her back to the throne, Pikhaul's reign of tyranny will conclude! No more Navy! No more mindless slaughter for these "Seal Pieces"! We have double reason to find Marco... and we even have our Sparks, ready to power our ship for more than just a brief flight. We can fly directly to Pikhaul's Fortress!

MAIN

That settles it, then. We'll crash Pikhaul's party, steal back the Seal Piece, and find Marco.

PIRATES

Aye!

PLAYER resumes control of MELISSA's ship across the sky. Story continues once PLAYER reaches Pikhaul's Fortress, a mechanical structure. PLAYER must land and work their way up through its structure. Everyone approaches the bottom. A blast from MELISSA's ship blows the entrance away.

MELISSA

Pikhaul may have taken the throne, but he's ruling the country from this fortress. We fight to the top, where Marco, Mirru and he no doubt are.

PIKHAUL (O.S.)

(Over a speaker)

Intrusion at the fortress base! Bring their carcasses before me. I will not tolerate any defiance of my, Emperor Pikhaul's, reign!

MAIN

Bring it on!

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues when they reach a camera surveillance room. A large screen sits in front, showing PIKHAUL's throne room.

PIKHAUL

You have performed admirably, Marco. I was greatly concerned of your actions, but bringing the princess here is a very noble deed that will not go unrewarded.

KEITH

I think you are forgetting, my lord, that it was I who brought you the last Seal Piece required for the seal shrine.

PIKHAUL

Very well, your reward, Keith.
Marco, kill him.

MARCO shoots KEITH before KEITH can even react. KEITH falls to the floor, wounded, but not dead. KEITH crawls towards PIKHAUL, as a plea of mercy. MARCO shoots him again, killing KEITH.

MARCO

I've been wantin' ter do tha' fer years.

PIKHAUL

Incredible. You've done far more than perhaps I gave you credit for. You've even brought intruders here.

MARCO

Wha? You don' seriously think I intentionally brough' 'em here, mah lord?

PIKHAUL kicks MARCO down to the ground.

PIKHAUL

You cannot be trusted, regardless of what you may or may not have done for me! You are to be tied down until I figure out what to do with you... and these intruders.

The camera switches off and a door opens, allowing the PLAYER to continue. Story continues once they reach the top of the tower, bursting into PIKHAUL's throne room.

PIKHAUL (CONT'D)

And our filthy guests arrive, at last.

MAIN

A dozen against one. It's time you handed that Seal Piece over, unless you want us to uncover your twisted regime to the Galactic Council.

PIKHAUL

Nova? Well, well, well, it seems dead men tell no tales... But are dead men, all the same.

LIONE

Is it the Cult of Kai you work for, Pikhaul? Are you bitter they left you when they went into the Nexus?

PIKHAUL

Oh, and the outcast Galactic Preserver, Lione Burgess! A delightful reunion. But no, you've got it wrong. I'm merely a victim to the Cult of Kai's affairs. So what if V.Len and his cronies have wandered off to find more Hudokai and reshape everything? I've always been an honest member of the Reality Council and felt King Yutah's presence entirely unnecessary when I was obviously the stronger, more intelligent world leader.

LIONE

What, intelligent enough to steal the council's technology and introduce it to an under-developed planet? Struth, that's dumb enough without the fact it breaks several laws.

PIKHAUL

But enough of that. You no longer have any authority.

KLOM is chasined to the wall, MIRRU next to him.

KLOM

You guys... came for us?

PHOENIX

Well, look who it isn't - Klom. And no, we didn't come for you.

MARCO

Melissa, why did yer come fer me? Why the fluff did yer come fer me?! You've gone and endangered yer lives as well as mah own, yer fool! Yer all fools!

MELISSA

And what about Princess Mirru's life? You've gone and endangered her life, too.

PIKHAUL

That's the point. She has been brought to me for execution.

MELISSA

You still don't understand! I came here because I still care about you, Marco. I don't care that you abandoned us back then and there. I forgive you. I looked everywhere for you, only to discover that you were using another crew to gather Seal Pieces! You're despicable... but... I still forgive you.

PIKHAUL

Yearning? How cruel, making someone fall for you, Marco. However, it is proof enough that you used her for my benefit. I have misjudged you.

MARCO

I... ne'er stopped lovin' yer, Melissa, from that first moment I left ya. Pikhaul may have saved my life by giving me a mechanical eye and a metal arm when Keith went too far, one day, but... I have a confession to make. I regret helping Pikhaul with his mission! I did this, originally, for justice in a legal way. Pikhaul is powerful but he has given me nothing but pain. I carried this all out because this is what I believed in... but I honestly can say... I regret it all! I never wanted to hurt you, or my Ma, or anyone!

PIKHAUL

I retract my statement. Execution of the entire Nova crew is in order!

PIKHAUL looms over MARCO, suddenly, as if to teleport, a pistol present.

MARCO

Smaz, sir knigh'... Nova... I'm sorry.

A gunshot. MARCO falls to the floor, dead. Silence.

MAIN

You... you bastard!

PIKHAUL

You seem to want to play a foolish game in which I have all of the cards in. Come, your execution is nigh.

BOSS FIGHT 24: PIKHAUL.

In-battle dialogue, at fight's end:

MELISSA

And now it's time for you to burn,
Pikhaul. Strapped to me are
explosives... and I'm ready to take
you to hell, with me. I'm coming,
Marco!

PIKHAUL

You wretched pirate!!!

There is an explosion and the fight ends. There is now a hole
in the side of the fortress, everyone knocked down. PIKHAUL
isn't present.

MIRRU

Klom, the explosion freed us from
the Pikcrystal cuffs! And I don't
see the emperor, at all! I think my
luck's finally changing.

PIKHAUL appears out of the smoke.

MIRRU (CONT'D)

...Or not.

PIKHAUL

Sky-High Melissa, bounty of 22,000
Gold Pieces. Dead. An ant crushed
by her own weight.

PHOENIX

That was one hell of an explosion!
Your body should have been ripped
apart, Pikhaul.

PIKHAUL

And it would have been, too, if I
didn't have a magical ability. Oh
yes. My body is made of goo. I am
liquid. Aqueous! You can't simply
kill me.

SMAZ

Dead after death... after death!

PIKHAUL

Ahahaha! You think I care, little
pup? Whilst Melissa was the ant,
you are the lion in my elaborate
plan. You run around tearing things
up, defeating opposition, but in
the end a thorn in your foot causes
you to cry like a baby.

MAIN

You do like to talk, don't you?
Seal Piece. Now.

PIKHAUL

Idle demands. You can't kill me. I have nothing to fear. I think it's time I left for the seal shrine. After all, my plan has involved twelve years of setting up. It's none of your concern, but I thank you for dealing with all of the Seal Piece beasts when I could not.

KLOM

And what makes you think we'll let you leave? You tortured me, man! You put me in darkness. Now I'm gonna show you it's Klom's time to shine!

KLOM suddenly grows to gargantuan size, blowing the top off the fortress.

PIKHAUL

Is his body made of hard light?
What the fluff *is* that?!

KLOM

I am KLOOOOOOOOOOOOOOOOM!

KLOM smacks PIKHAUL and half of the fortress away, sending PIKHAUL down to the solid earth, below.

KLOM (CONT'D)

Klom do good?

PHOENIX

Klom do bad. He had the Seal Piece and you sent him flying away from us. That's where you Fies are different to us, foxes. *We* think.

SMAZ

I will levitate us down.

SMAZ does so. PLAYER arrives at the bottom of the fortress. JAY BEE is there.

KIM

Jay Bee? You look hurt... I can cure you!

JAY BEE

Don't bother, dawg. I'm done for. My legs are to shiz and my vision's like disco lighting. This was a suicide mission, man.

SMAZ

Then we are to leave you here,
fighting Pikhaul's police and
robots until death?

JAY BEE

I'll hold down... the... fort. Go.
Get... princess Mirru... back to
the south... across the bridge.

KLOM

Looks like I'm protecting ya,
darling princess.

MIRRU

Well, then you're protecting me
here. Like fluff am I going with
these bastards after what they've
done to me!

KLOM

Ah fluff it, I'll help you take
down your royal enemies, then. See
ya later, homies!

ALIZA

Pikhaul fell onto the other side of
the bridge. We cross it and we can
find him.

LIONE

And our prison ship is on the other
side, waiting for us to head
straight to the shrine once we're
done.

MAIN

We've gone all the way around the
world, huh? Let's find Pikhaul.

PLAYER can save their game. Story continues once they leave
the area and head across the bridge. A metallic kyote blocks
their path. CARLOS!

CARLOS

A vile dog to the bitter end.

SMAZ

Impossible! Carlos?

CARLOS

It is I, Carlos, reconstructed by
Emperor Pikhaul after my broken
body washed up on the shore.
Pikhaul is far more forgiving and
ambitious than the king ever was.
(MORE)

CARLOS (CONT'D)

I owe him my life, and by that I
live to serve him, such as stopping
you all here.

SMAZ

You traitor!

CARLOS

No, *YOU* are the traitor, Smaz!

FIGHT vs. CARLOS. In-battle dialogue at fight's end:

CARLOS (CONT'D)

I feel... a storm coming!

AERA

Yeah, and it's me!

AERA appears and uses an attack which defeats CARLOS. Fight
ends.

SMAZ

Aera, I thought... I would never
see you, again. How on Yarth did
you survive?!

AERA

It's good to see you too, Smazzy
boy. And yes, my magical power of
speed was able to propel me towards
land, beneath the stormy waves.
What kept me going was-

PHOENIX

The thought of the seal shrine's
treasure, right? Lemme tell you,
it's not as fancy as you think.

AERA

No. Smaz kept me going.

PHOENIX

Come again?

AERA

I realise, now, that I stopped
fighting for treasure back at
Bandroe. I started fighting for
more important things.

SMAZ

I am unsure... of what to say...

PHOENIX

Vomit and get it over with.

SMAZ

Aera, I... my stomach is scrunching up as I go to say this... I think I have feelings for you.

Suddenly, the prison ship flares overhead.

PHOENIX

And that's one well-timed prison ship to cut the tension. Wait, no, the prison ship!?

If VARSH has been obtained:

[LIONE]

What's that crazy Varsh up to?! Unless he's being forced to drive the ship...

After:

KIM

I sense the Hudokai on board. Pikhaul has stolen the prison ship! He's heading for the seal shrine!

MAIN

Damnit! We have to get there, NOW!

AERA

I came here by a little boat. We can use that.

MAIN

A little boat?! That thing has oars! There's no way we'll make it in time! Max'll take up all the room.

MAX

Say that again, buddy, and I break your neck.

LIONE

We've no choice. It's a small boat, or no Hudokai, no prison ship and no take down of the Cult of Kai.

PLAYER resumes control. Story continues once they reach the seal shrine, once more, by the little boat, and head inside the shrine. Pikhaul is waiting.

PIKHAUL

I wanted you all to witness the last seal piece creature revealed, before you take it down for me.

A light explodes, revealing a crystalline monster, short and pointed. However, in PIKHAUL's place is a person that resembles SMAZ. ROVE.

CRYSTALINE

Who summoned me?

PIKHAUL (AS ROVE)

It was I.

CRYSTALINE

Then it is you I shall take the life from.

AERA

It can't be!

CRYSTALINE

Ah, master, I didn't recognise your voice.

SMAZ

Father!

PIKHAUL (AS ROVE)

Smaz Ugonih... my son.

SMAZ

Father... no. I disowned you as a father the day you killed my mother. I loathe your existence. I despise your being. I HATE YOU, Rove Ugonih!

PIKHAUL (AS ROVE)

Well, we all go through that phase at some point.

MAX

So that's Smaz's father? Yeah, I can see his hatred. You turned your back on your family, Rove. Those who do that are bastards.

PIKHAUL (AS ROVE)

Oh come, now, I didn't turn my back on Smaz. No, I guided him! You've proved your worth and did what I instructed you to do all those years, ago, Smaz; 'If you wish to find me, located the Seal of the Seas'. So off you trotted under the guidance of Marco, collecting all of the Seal Pieces for me and battling the monsters. Excellent. Now that the fourth piece is in place, you can die.

SMAZ
You... used ME?!

PIKHAUL
Yeah. Isn't it great? Now, as your master, seal piece beast, destroy these runts!

BOSS FIGHT 25: CRYSTALINE.

Story continues once it is defeated.

PIKHAUL (AS ROVE) (CONT'D)
The last of Rove's seal piece monsters defeated, protecting the reopening of the portal no more.

KIM
Something isn't right. I don't think that's Smaz's dad, Rove.

PIKHAUL transforms back.

PIKHAUL
No, I just used my gooey magic to reshape my body to look like Rove. The beast would have attacked me, otherwise, and I needed you to defeat it.

MAX
I get it, now. Socking devious little fluff. Somehow, the four Seal Pieces come together to open a portal to another dimension. That's how M.Bandroe came here by accident. He wants to open that portal.

AERA
It must lead to an infinte amount of Yarths in an infinte amount of dimensions...

SMAZ
This does not make sense. If you are not my father, then where is he and why do you remember such events with my mother?

PIKHAUL
That was me. I posed as Rove. Your father passed through this very portal, years ago, having opened it... and I found myself crossing from another dimension. Once crossed, I gained a magical ability.

KIM

I think the large Hudokai infuses some of its power with another person when they cross that portal... it explains so much.

SMAZ

But not how I have a magical ability.

PIKHAUL

That's because you never did, Smaz. Once someone has passed through, the magic stays with them through their children. Rove is in another dimension.

SMAZ

The Seal Pieces were created by my true father? He created those monsters out of his magical power in order to stop anyone from opening the portal, again. The monsters were sealed within the pieces and the portal was sealed away from those pieces. I finally understand.

PIKHAUL

But you don't! I may have used my ability to gain emperor status, it may have gotten me onto the Reality Council, but it never got me home. I was stuck here, thanks to your father. Stuck in the three galaxies of the council. And now I can finally go home...

PHOENIX

He doesn't seem so bad.

PIKHAUL

And rule ALL versions of Yarth with my power!

PHOENIX

You just blew your good guy status, buddy.

MAIN

You're no better than any of the Cult of Kai. You honestly think you can rule Aliza's home world and think she won't stop you?

The portal opens, a rip in the world.

PIKHAUL

If Razz could do it, I can. My
portal awaits.

PIKHAUL disappears through it. PLAYER resumes control. They
can save. Once through the portal, story continues. PLAYER
finds themselves in one large multi-coloured room.

PIKHAUL (CONT'D)

This isn't another world...

KIM

Ooooooh, I wonder if I gained a
magical power!

MAX

I get the feeling our Hudokai will
negate the effects. That and being
dead.

SMAZ

You may not discover what you have
for many years to come, if at all.
I discovered mine only recently.

PIKHAUL

Why has this happened?

ROVE

Because I won't allow it!

A muzzle extends from a white furred Kyote face. A pair of
wide, green eyes stare at Smaz. Long black hair trails down
his back, untied. A full beard. An open white shirt, with
puffy frills at the sleeve ends, and a pair of dark grey
trousers. Long, brown boots. A large scar across his chest,
from his right shoulder to the left of his stomach. ROVE
UGONIH.

SMAZ

F-Father?

ROVE

Smaz?

PIKHAUL

Rove! I should have figured you
would be the one behind this!

ROVE

As it should happen, I built a
house around the portal's original
point in this world, with my
powers. I awaited any possible day
in which you would come storming
back through here.

(MORE)

ROVE (CONT'D)

With this in mind, I created this elaborate sealing device which places the portal in this pocket dimension, rather than all over the worlds. None are open bar your one.

PIKHAUL

Blasted fool!

ROVE

I'm sorry I left you when you were too young to even remember. I was trapped in another crazy dimension, you see... with no way to come back and contact you or your mother without endangering everything. I hope you under-

SMAZ

Of course I understand. I-I can't believe it's really you... Pikhaul... he posed as you... he... killed my mother... I... I thought you were a villain I was orphaned... I... am a knight to the castle... I... I missed you!

MAX

Sentimentality over your father. How touching. Your relationship is nothing like my father's.

ROVE

I'm sure it is, if you ever listened to him. But you're a teenager, why would you?

AERA

My father called me a monster for having magical powers. Yet, it's because of my parents that I must have my ability. Smaz, after this is over, let's travel the world, together. I have my mother to find!

PIKHAUL

I'm afraid only I will be travelling anywhere. Once I kill Rove, I'll be able to continue forth.

MAIN

Not a chance, Pikhaul!

BOSS FIGHT 26: EMPEROR PIKHAUL.

In-battle dialogue half-way through:

PIKHAUL

At last, I've mortally wounded Rove! All that remains now is his life fade away.

ROVE

Smaz, listen...

SMAZ

It's not your fault, father.

ROVE

It is, really. I never got to know you properly. W-what is your favourite drink?

SMAZ

Juice. Fruit juice. But not bananas.

ROVE

I always f-found... it rather disgusting. Bananas are f-faeces, you know?

SMAZ

Only in our world.

ROVE

It's my time to go t-to... the next...

ROVE dies.

SMAZ

...Dead. Now it's time to pay you back ten-fold, Pikhaul!

Fight resumes. At the battle's end:

PIKHAUL

I said you can't beat me! And now I will head forth to the now open portal to all dimensions! I- wait, what's happening?

KIM

Now that Rove is dead, the portal is sealing itself, rather than expanding! We need to get out!

MAIN and co. escape, leaving PIKHAUL in the pocket dimension.

PIKHAUL

NO! I don't want to be trapped here for eternity! I demand-

The portal closes.

MAX

A fate worse than death - trapped
forever in a dimension of just
colour.

PHOENIX

Yeah, you like your blacks and
greys, don't ya?

SMAZ

I feel lost. The world is my oyster
and now I have no direction.

AERA

Come with me, Smaz. It's time for
you to start a new life... with me.

LIONE

It's nice that you two have found
love in your own crazy way. I'm
married only to my work. Now that
our job's done here and no doubt
Mirru will re-take the throne,
we'll be heading off back out into
space.

AERA

Thank you, Lione. You may be a more
annoying version of me, but you
really helped me find out who I am.

LIONE

A "more annoying version"?

MAIN

Drop it, Lione. It's over. I'll
just be taking these seal pieces.
We'll take them back to the ship
and put them together to make the
large Hudokai we came for. Let's
go.

Screen fades to black. The prison ship takes off, passing
across the tops of MIRRU being coronated to Queen, KLOM by
her side as her knight. The scene shifts to SMAZ and AERA,
passing into a portal and disappearing to pastures anew.

THE NEXUS (NEXUS PART 3)

The Prison Ship sits in space, the crew now with the large Hudokai and Zed Neutrino energy needed to blow a hole to the void and reach The Nexus, once again.

KIM

We're picking up a reading... a
Gear approaches!

LIONE

Ben? He's finally come after me.
Open communications.

BEN (O.S.)

(Over speakers)
Lione Burgess. Mother. You tricked
me. You left me for dead.

LIONE

Cyrril has warped your mind. I'd
never leave you for dead.

BEN

You can't stop him. Dad will get
his Hudokai and change the galaxy
under his law.

LIONE

So where's your father now, when
you need him? That's right. He's in
the void.

PHOENIX

Low blow, man. Low blow.

LIONE

Cyrril will stop at nothing. People
will die. The Cult of Kai will
ravage everything.

BEN

...So arrest him. Go in there and
arrest him. You may not be able to
stop him, but I can. Use Stasis
Hudokai. Bring him to me.

LIONE

B-Ben? I thought-

BEN

He's my dad. I will always stand by
that fact. But I've been thinking.
What he's doing... it goes against
what he taught me.

MAX

Don't argue with the kid.

BEN

Like you, Lione, he'll always be my parent, but that doesn't mean I can forgive him. I won't stop you. Do it... and I hope I never see you again, once you hand him over.

LIONE

It doesn't have to be that way.

BEN

I-it does. I'll never stop hating you, mother. Now go.

Communication ends.

LIONE

...

If VARSH has been obtained:

[VARSH]

Let it go. It will destroy you if you keep a hold of your guilt.

[LIONE]

He came to help. Ben came to help his mother. I've got to do this. I've got to take down Cyrril for him, not just me, or even the three galaxies, but for my son.

After VARSH specific event:

MAIN

This is it. This is where we take down the Cult of Kai! *Coughs violently*

MAX

The virus will take you, soon. We ain't got much time left.

ALIZA

Stop gassing and just launch the large Hudokai already, so we can explode it.

PHOENIX

Zed Neutrino ready and primed. Let's cause one hell of a huge explosion!

The large Hudokai is shot into space. A barrel of Zed Neutrino energy is shot directly at the large Hudokai. A huge explosion occurs and the screen goes white. A large black hole has appeared, sucking the Prison Ship inside.

Once inside, the hole closes. The ship appears in the Nexus of nothingness, immediately to be attacked by flying bullets.

KIM

We're under attack! The Cult of Kai has been prepared for us.

MAX

Well then, maybe it's time I became a true 'Death Bringer' and bring about death to these scoks?

PLAYER must fight flying gun turrets using the tactics script with the prison ship. Once they have been taken down, the ship lands and everyone exits. A huge metal fortress stands before them over a wasteland of what was once the Nexus.

[VARSH]

I see V.Len and the cult have crafted their own fortress. What a suitable tomb.

LIONE

Charred landscape... a dead town... a world warped by warring Hudokai. The Warden has definitely been here.

ALIZA

And he's still here. They all are. Why haven't they left, yet?

MAX

They must want something else, here... and look at that fortress! Wait, who's at the door...?

PLAYER resumes control. SLOPPY SCOCK is at the double-door entrance, with CAROLIN, GREG's one-time girlfriend.

MAX (CONT'D)

Carolyn!

CAROLIN

(Clearly not well)
Ungh... Max... is that you?

KIM

Do you two know one another? Analysis confirms she is infused with Hudokai. I can sense it.

CAROLIN

Max looked after me when Greg couldn't. Greg did this to me - he infused me with Hudokai... and now I'm dying from it.

MAX

It's not just you. Everyone's dying. The world, the universe, everything. We need to stop the cult.

CAROLIN

I tried to stop them, but my dying body held me back. Greg may be dead, but the others still live. Even my friend here, Sloppy Scock, has been unable to do anything to them... they are strong.

PHOENIX

Such an unfortunate name, Sloppy. Mercenaries like him do get about, though, don't they?

CAROLIN

When I'm gone... Sloppy... focus your Hudokai energy as an explosive.

MAX

You haven't got much time left... I- I know what I must do.

CAROLIN

That's... that's Roke's old scythe, from his partner. Roke... always told me... it can hold back death and... pass others to the... after life. Please, Max... spare me from... this... pain...

MAX

...Sit still. I'm here to help.

MAX reaps CAROLIN and she dies, her soul having passed on.

KIM

I can no longer feel her infused Hudokai.

SLOPPY SCOCK

This is it. No regrets. War is ending. This is for Foltix!

SLOPPY SCOCK runs at the door, his bodies exploding as he hits the door. His body is gone and so is the door, when the explosion clears.

MAX

Carolin helped us get in. Let's go. I don't wanna think about it.

Behind the now blown up fortress door, CAROLIN and SLOPPY SCOCK dead, is an area where the last remaining survivors stand. There are a few shops and stalls selling items and weapons to one another, as well as, in the centre, KOEL and ITAMI.

KOEL

Brarn Weylyn. So you're alive,
after all?

MAX

Dad. I-I thought maybe you'd
been... the war, months back was...

KOEL

V.Len can't take me down that
easily. LIT finally all made it
here, but not without casualties.

MAX

So it's just you and Itami, now?

KOEL

Just us. We cleared most of the
sky, but it's still a state.

MAX

We know. Our last job is to take
the fight to V.Len and what remains
of his stupid cult. Coming with us?

KOEL

I've already scanned ahead. You'll
need three keys to reach V.Len's
central stronghold. No doubt each
member of the remaining cult have
them. Going all the way through,
then all the way back...

ITAMI

It really took it out of us! I
don't even have the strength to
fight back. I just want to take a
nice long nap.

MAX

Fine. I get it. You did your bit.

KOEL

I just don't think we have the
strength to continue. As this is
the safest place to be, right now,
we're staying here for a bit. You
carry on, Brarn. Avenge Heidi, Jian
and Steve... Damnit, after
everything, you make me proud.

MAX

Will do, dad. Will do.

KOEL

Brave smile, Brarn. Brave smile.

MAIN

They died helping us. *Coughs*
We'll storm the cult's stronghold
and taken them down, one-by-one
until we reach V.Len... And then
I'll show him why people don't mess
with me!

PLAYER resumes control and must navigate the stronghold. All of the remaining cult members are scattered about and can be taken down in any order. All must be taken down before they can open the door to V.LEN.

When WARDEN reached:

MAIN (CONT'D)

Warden Cyrril War, your judgement
day has come.

CYRRIL

How cute. I'm surprised my son
wasn't able to keep you locked in
stasis.

MAIN

Your son was the one who allowed
this to happen.

LIONE

Ben doesn't want anything to do
with his adopted father, anymore.
He is disappointed in both of us.

CYRRIL

So... his will has been broken. It
doesn't matter. Now that I have
unlimited Hudokai, he can sit on
the back bench! You will all face
judgement under my new law and
Hudokai. You will all face death.
Prepare yourselves for a blood
bath!

BOSS FIGHT 27: CYRRIL WAR (4).

At the end of the fight, in-battle dialogue:

LIONE

This is the end, Cyrril.

CYRRIL

You plan to take me in? Arrested
and imprisoned for my desires?

LIONE

Ben's waiting.

CYRRIL

Even my son has betrayed me... This
is it. But I won't come quietly...
You're all coming to hell with me!

CYRRIL self-destructs using what SLOPPY SDOCK used earlier.

MAIN

That's the Warden gone for good.

FIGHT ENDS. PLAYER resumes control.

When PENNY met:

PHOENIX

Penny Greyback... I can't help but
feel it was your idea to blow up
Lione's planet.

PENNY

Oh? One of Chimera's cronies, oh
yes! The Splitter Nuke may have
crumbled part of Duskwight,
ehehehe, but it gave me the idea to
increase the scale...

LIONE

Millions died from your greed!

PENNY

What I want isn't greedy, nonono.
Aren't you interested with the
tools of destruction? Can't you see
past death and think of what
weapons can do to advance society?

PHOENIX

Yeah. It will destroy it. You're
clearly not sane.

ALIZA

She's like a crazy version of me,
if Razz was the dominant soul. What
a terrible thought... that would
definitely make you insane, Penny.

PENNY

True! I will admit my insanity,
ehehehe! But with Hudokai in my
grasp, I have created even more
powerful weapons and technology.
(MORE)

PENNY (CONT'D)
 Just you wait, wait, wait...
 V.Len's whole body is of my
 creation! Shame you won't be around
 to see it. Let me show, show, show
 you my new weaponry!

BOSS FIGHT 28: PENNY GREYBACK.

After fight, RIZUMU talks

RIZUMU
 (Determined)
 She's gone... she gave me
 nightmares! Penny reminded me of
 Razz. If the Cult of Kai are like
 Razz, I'll only feel safe once
 V.Len's gone!

PLAYER resumes control.

When GEIST is met:

MAIN
 It looks like that alternate me is
 still alive.

GEIST
 ...

MAIN
 You can't stop us. No matter how
 much Hudokai you have, as long as
 we stand together, all you cult
 members will-

GEIST
 Die.

MAIN
 W-what? I thought you couldn't
 speak!

GEIST
 W-what? I though you couldn't
 speak!

MAIN
 Don't mimic-

GEIST
 -me! All... m-my life... I wanted
 someone else's life.

ALIZA
 It's like he's never spoken,
 before.

GEIST

People beat me down... P-people
took away everything... I tried to
achieve in life...

LIONE

Life is what you make it, isn't
that right, Nova?

GEIST

But people... took away all... I
made it. N-now I just want this
Hudokai... and carve my way into...
another dimension... replace that
version of me and... start over. If
people... try to push me down...
they will face the torment I...
received... from my Hudokai powers!

MAIN

You can't replace me, if that's
what you're thinking.

GEIST

You're... going to die, soon... I
will easily replace you... and any
other you when you're gone.

MAIN

I don't think so, Geist.

BOSS FIGHT 29: GEIST.

At fight's end, in-battle dialogue:

GEIST

Maybe... you're the better version
of me... after all.

MAIN

Say hi to Greg and Foltix for me.

GEIST dies. Battle ends. PLAYER resumes control.

When V.LEN Is met, at the end of the fortress:

Everyone busts into what looks like an observatory, where
V.LEN and PHYLLIS wait. V.LEN Immediately counters everyone
and freezes them in place with Stasis Hudokai.

PHYLLIS

You thought you would surprise us
one last time when WE have all this
magnificent Hudokai? Idiots! This
Stasis Hudokai will keep you frozen
long enough for V.Len to achieve
the secrets of life beyond life.

V.LEN
 (To NOVA et al)
 Foolish ilk. It's laughable,
 watching your feeble efforts
 against one who has all the Hudokai
 imaginable. Now stay in stasis as I
 awaken Rettam Krad...

V.LEN turns to his pulsing ball of Hudokai energy within the room's centre.

PHYLLIS
 The Hudokai is ready, Mr. Len.

V.LEN
 Excellent. Greg's Hudokai infusion
 techniques, combined with Penny's
 ingenuity has made me omnipotent...
 fused with all the Hudokai... my
 body is ready to be ripped apart...
 not that I have much of a body...

PHYLLIS
 It will be a shame to see all my
 mechanical work torn apart, but
 it'll be worth it to see you ascend
 to existence, itself, Mr. Len!

V.LEN
 I couldn't have done this all
 without you, Phyllis. There will be
 a place for you beyond death, as a
 part of me.

PHYLLIS
 Ballin'.

V.LEN
 (To the skies)
 Rettam Krad, I summon you! Smell my
 Hudokai energy! Awaken!

A monstrous form is shown as the camera zooms up and out of town, made seemingly of darkness.

V.LEN (CONT'D)
 He is coming... I will finally
 achieve my dream.

KIM breaks out of stasis.

KIM
 Stasis Hudokai can't hold the power
 of a Gear for long.

V.LEN
 It doesn't matter. You're too late,
 now.

(MORE)

V.LEN (CONT'D)

My decaying body, forced into
robotism for years, can finally
live eternal.

MAIN

I don't care what your plan is,
whether it is to use the Hudokai to
fuse with some ancient living being
or not, we've come here to stop
you.

V.LEN

You of all people should understand
the want to live longer, when your
body is so close to death...

MAIN

And what of it? *Coughs* The M4
Virus will kill me... and that's
exactly why I must take you down
with me.

LIONE

That and... well, the destruction
of everything, most likely.

PHYLLIS

Sure, you can flap your mouths
right now, but you can't do
anything with your bodies locked in
Stasis, so it's best you put on
some Noctane and the Baby Fish, and
just chill to the end of
everything.

KIM uses her power to break everyone out of the Stasis
Hudokai's effects.

RIZUMU

Thank you, Kim. You freed all of
us! V.Len's a nasty nasty. Blergh!

PHYLLIS

Oh. Well, I'll just use Stasis aga-

MAX launches his scythe at PHYLLIS and knocks the Stasis
Hudokai away from her and V.LEN.

PHYLLIS (CONT'D)

The Stasis Hudokai! What the fluff
did you go and do that for?!

V.LEN

Strong enough to break out Hudokai,
but you're all so naive.

(MORE)

V.LEN (CONT'D)

We are in the void, a place between all dimensions where the rips and black holes of the universe lead before they collapse. We are at the centre of the universe, the centre of a supermassive black hole where creation began! In the centre of a supermassive black hole there's a quasar - a giant version of a sun, or a star. What if I were to launch all manner of Hudokai into it?

PHOENIX

That'd be one hell of an explosion. That would be genocide to everyone and everything.

[VARSH]

I guess our atoms will become dark matter, once again. We'll return to our very start... nothingness. My mind's racing. I-I think I'm ready for that tranquilizer, at last, Phoenix.

PHYLLIS

Our atoms will become the dark matter that will fuel the future.

V.LEN

And what if the being, the one where Hudokai comes from... the one which dark matter originates... what if he were to collide with the quasar?

ALIZA

Dark matter is everywhere, though. Even if Rettam Krad collides with the quasar, nothing would happen. Only Hudokai has condensed enough dark matter to cause a reaction.

V.LEN

Precisely.

ALIZA

I'm confused.

V.LEN

And finally... what if both Hudokai and Rettam Krad collided with the quasar at the same time?

KIM

Everything will burn... apart from Rettam Krad.

(MORE)

KIM (CONT'D)

Given the supernova and black hole existing in the same place at the same time, time travel would be possible, but only for the event horizon.

MAIN

Come again?

KIM

Rettam Krad would be able to time travel...

V.LEN

And so... Rettam Krad comes closer, millions of years locked within the void, hidden from site, and I will fuse my Hudokai-infused body with his... and then launch myself into the quasar, beneath this town, and time travel eternally!

MAIN

So that's your scheme! You'd become immortal... living forever across all of time whilst the universe's future burns around you!

V.LEN

And because of my new dark matter form, I will be able to create a new universe, one in which I am God... forever.

MAIN

That's sickening! All this time...

PHYLLIS

It isn't sickening, Nova. No imagination, that's your problem! Mr. Len will be able to right all the wrongs in his new universe. Even the wrongs you committed. He will be existence. He will be everything. Life eternal.

V.LEN

I'll gain the life I've always deserved. No more decaying body! All I have to do, now, is wait. Rettam Krad approaches. Once he's close enough, his form will merge with my Hudokai-infused body. I will then fire myself from Penny Greyback's cannon... and into the quasar.

MAIN

Hell no! We won't let you! You may have every type of Hudokai fused into your body... you may have caused a chain reaction... you may have condemned my life before everyone else's... but I sure as fluff don't intend for you to succeed in your scheme!

V.LEN

Then I'll show you one last horror before life crashes down around your eyes and death takes a hold.

MAIN

Bring it!

FINAL BOSS FIGHT 30: V.LEN AND PHYLLIS.

V.LEN removes his cloak and reveals his mechanical body, twisted and feeding off the dead bodies of other people, trying to sustain his own life.

V.LEN

Phyllis! Keep me energised until I can merge with Rettam Krad.

PHYLLIS

Sure thing, Mr. Len! Show them a hell worse than amateur "Cramlet"!

V.LEN

Nova, are you ready to be, or not to be? Hahahahaha!

The fight starts. PHYLLIS floats in the air in a mechanical ball, restoring V.LEN's health every now and again. PHYLLIS can be defeated to stop the curative properties.

Upon PHYLLIS's defeat:

PHYLLIS

It is up to you, now, Mr. Len. I've done all I can. On the downside, no more Klawcalot bars. On the upside, no more exercise. Leverne... I'm coming home...

Once V.LEN reaches a certain amount of health, he will transform and begin phase 2 of the fight. In-battle dialogue:

V.LEN

Rettam Krad! Come unto me!

(To NOVA et al)

I hope you're prepared for your assimilation into dark matter. Goodbye Phyllis, hello universe.

There is a quake and V.LEN fuses with RETTAM KRAD, becoming a huge, mechanical, dark version of V.LEN. If PHYLLIS is still alive, she will explode as the fusion occurs, delivering her final line. The fight continues.

At the fight's end, in-battle dialogue:

V.LEN (CONT'D)

I... I will never end... I am eternal! My will is to stay on forever... Rettam Krad won't stop, now! He has awoken... he will destroy the quasar even after de-merging with me... you can't stop my will, now... Ahahahahahaha! Urrrrrrgh!

V.LEN dies and the fight ends. There is a brief moment of silence as the mechanical pieces fall from RETTAM KRAD, still heading towards the quasar.

KIM

V.Len was correct... I may feel more human than ever, but that dreaded feeling of the end is coming...

ALIZA

That just proves you're much more of a little girl than the Final Gear.

MAX

Rettam Krad is closing into that fluffing quasar. I don't wanna be floating around in space, watching as everything dies around me.

PHOENIX

Nothing but explosions... and then nothingness. That's no freedom. That's not what I fought for.

LIONE

Damn it! How to we stop a force that strong?

MAIN

We don't.

Two endings may now occur, depending on the options chosen throughout the game. If MAIN's alignment is more 'evil', the first ending is chosen. If it's 'good', then the second ending occurs.

If MAIN's alignment is EVIL:

LIONE

We don't? Have you gone- Nova? Are you... all right?

MAIN

(Coughing)

Damnit, Lione... no... no, I'm not.

KIM

The M4 Virus has almost completed it's take over... I don't want to lose you like I did Tom!

PHOENIX

Once Rettam collides with the quasar, it won't be just Nova you'll lose. Everything'll go boom.

MAIN

(Coughing)

This is it... this is the end...

MAX

Don't go now, you scock. Hold on!
At least go down with the universe.

MAIN

Haha, you always... were the bitter one, Max. Next... you'll say I died on purpose... just to rub it in your face that...

MAX

That I can't die, yeah.

ALIZA

Nova, I'm sorry. I'm so sorry that you received my fate... Blake's angry, too.

MAIN

This is my fate... not yours. It's what I deserve for being a selfish punk.

LIONE

Sure, you chose to be nasty when you didn't need to be, but in the end, you're more a hero than you ever were before. V.Len's defeated.

MAIN

Lione...

LIONE

Yeah?

MAIN

Shut up.

MAIN dies at that point, his energy leaving his body.

PHOENIX

He's gone. Hold your heads up high, guys. This is one explosion we can't miss.

[VARSH]

Here's to the end.

MAX

Here's to the end of EVERYTHING.

There is a huge explosion and the screen fades to white. It eventually fades to black. Nothing but black. MAX floats into view, just floating in nothingness.

MAX (CONT'D)

Nothing. Absolute zero. When Nova died, I realised I'd been motivated by him for the last year or so. So, Koel was my dad. It was Nova that got me going. He helped me look to the future. Now there is no future to look to, only nothingness... And myself for company forever. Maybe I can build a new universe? Fluff yeah!

OR, if MAIN's alignment is GOOD:

LIONE

We don't? We just watch the universe dissipate into chaos?

MAIN

No, you just have to watch me save everyone. I'm going to take V.Len's place... and merge with Rettam Krad!

ALIZA

You'll be propelled across time, your body ripped apart!

MAIN

(Coughing)

Maybe this way... maybe this way I'll live a while longer...?

MAX

Always trying to one up me, eh? I can't die, so you want to live forever, is that it? Tsk, typical Nova.

MAIN

My armour can absorb Hudokai,
temporarily. It's what Greg said,
way... *cough* way back. With my
Hudokai, I'll save the universe...
cough and rebuild it how it was,
exactly as it is now. Everything
and everyone the same.

PHOENIX

You're really going to do it,
aren't you? You damn fool. You go
free us all from this nightmare...
then come and see us, all right?

MAIN

And you, Lione, I... I know...
cough I know we've had our
differences, but... *cough* thank
you for believing in me.

LIONE

You're a changed man, Nova. Just...
Don't screw this up.

KIM

Look after us, Nova. I'll miss you.

[VARSH]

Here's to the end.

MAIN

You'll see me again. Thank you.
Thanks, everyone.

MAIN launches himself out of PENNY GREYBACK's cannon,
determination on his face as he whizzes towards the
unstoppable RETTAM KRAD, on collision with the quasar - the
shining star in the centre of the Nexus sky and the centre of
the universe. MAIN disappears into the darkness of RETTAM
KRAD, his body morphing just in time as RETTAM collides with
the quasar, a supernova exploding everything in existence
into nothingness. The screen goes white. The Dark Matter
theme plays as it shows all of the main cast going about
their daily lives, no dialogue occurring.

ALIZA is with BUDGIE and MALKA in Sector 6, on Earth 2400.
MAIN watches as ALIZA, BUDGIE and MALKA board a gondola and
travel off across the canal. ALIZA spots him, on land. MAIN
turns and walks away.

PHOENIX is with VARSH on planet Yin, in the library. PHOENIX
is in LEO's old clothes. He is a member of The Astrology
Group. A large bookcase falls on VARSH, seeming to crush him.
PHOENIX jumps to the rescue and blows up the book case. VARSH
is okay. MAIN is seen watching on. Both notice him. MAIN
walks away.

KIM is at the Reality Council, dragging in a criminal. She throws him down in front of the new leader, a seemingly alive DUNKAN! DUNKAN gets off his seat and embraces KIM, who is now in a Galactic Preservation outfit. MAIN watches on. As KIM spots him, he walks away, fading into nothingness.

MAX is with KOEL on planet Canary, the Black Wolf Pirates nearby, having fun in the snow. MAX and KOEL seem to be talking. MAX walks away, stops, notices MAIN watching on, turns around and runs to KOEL and the crew. MAIN walks away.

LIONE is elsewhere on the same planet, at her fake grave stone. A new one has been placed next to BEN's - CYRRIL WAR's. BEN is next to her, at CYRRIL's grave. They both turn to look at one another, pause, and then BEN walks away. LIONE turns back at her grave stone, only to find MAIN there. She runs to him, but he turns away and walks into nothingness, fading away. LIONE stops and notices a new grave with the name 'NOVA' on it. She smiles.

Credits roll.

END OF GAME.

CREDITS**HUDOKAI: DARK MATTER SCRIPT****SCRIPTS:**

The Nexus - Lee Janes and Edgar Duncan,
Spectrox Spacestation - Lee Janes and Edgar Duncan,
Biorhythm - Edgar Duncan,
Final Gear - Lee Janes,
Reality Council - Edgar Duncan,
Chimera - Edgar Duncan,
Genesis - Edgar Duncan,
Transcendence Alliance - Alexandra Stewart,
Galactic War - Edgar Duncan,
Out of Depth - Edgar Duncan,
Sea of Seals - Edgar Duncan.

All scripts were edited by Edgar Duncan.

ARTWORK ON SCRIPTBOOK:

Original HUDOKAI title and concept art by Elvis Matthews,
Main cast portraits, Cyrril and Blake - Redeyereaper,
Nova in blue armour, Rizumu and Tom - Elizabeth Duncan,
V.Len, Varsh and Ben - Alexandra Stewart/Jen Li,
Francesco - Lewis Phoenix Jackson,
Pixel artwork - Edgar Duncan.

VOICE WORK:**MAIN CAST:**

Nova (Main) - Chase Johnson,
Lione Burgess - Claire Alexander,
Aliza Legion - Elizabeth Duncan,
Kim Silver - Elizabeth Duncan,
Max Judge - Sean Clarkson,
Phoenix Fox - Gianni Matragano.